

**THE TEXT IS FLY  
WITHIN THE BOOK  
ONLY**

# **TEXT CUT BOOK**









q786.7 B92 920233  
Buck  
Choir Accompaniment.

## **Keep Your Card in This Pocket**

Books will be issued only on presentation of proper library cards.

Unless labeled otherwise, books may be retained for two weeks. Borrowers finding books marked, defaced or mutilated are expected to report same at library desk; otherwise the last borrower will be held responsible for all imperfections discovered.

The card holder is responsible for all books drawn on this card.

Penalty for over-due books 2c a day plus cost of notices.

Lost cards and change of residence must be reported promptly.



**Public Library**  
**Kansas City, Mo.**

21 Dec '37	27		
22 Dec '38	11		
17 Jan '39	10		
DEC 9 '37	67		
APR 29 '38	33		
SEP 24 '43	2		
MAY 6 '46	2		
APR 22 '47	XS 1		
AUG 27 '48	80		
MAY 5 '50	06		
SEP 21 '50	80		
4 '50	10		
MAY 3 '51	25		
MAY OCT 30 '51			
SEP 9 1950			
OCT 14 1951			



ILLUSTRATIONS  
IN  
CHOIR ACCOMPANIMENT  
WITH  
HINTS IN REGISTRATION.

---

A HAND-BOOK

*(PROVIDED WITH MARGINAL NOTES FOR REFERENCE)*

FOR THE USE OF ORGAN STUDENTS, ORGANISTS, AND THOSE INTERESTED IN CHURCH MUSIC.

BY  
DUDLEY BUCK.

---

NEW YORK:  
G. SCHIRMER,  
1892.



TO  
SAMUEL P. WARREN,

*Organist of Grace Church,*

NEW YORK CITY.

Through whose artistic and critical encouragement the following pages were brought to a conclusion, this work—as a tribute of professional respect, as well as of personal friendship—is dedicated by

THE AUTHOR.





# CONTENTS.

	Page
PRELIMINARY REMARKS, . . . . .	1
CHAPTER I.	
General Principles of Registration as applied to Accompaniment, . . . . .	4
CHAPTER II.	
Accompaniment of the Chorale, or Plain "Hymn Tune," . . . . .	13
CHAPTER III.	
Of adding and withdrawing Stops during Performance, . . . . .	20
CHAPTER IV.	
Accompaniment of Quartet Choirs, . . . . .	28
CHAPTER V.	
Accompaniment of the Chant, . . . . .	51
CHAPTER VI.	
On "giving out" the Tune, . . . . .	58
CHAPTER VII.	
Accompaniment of Solo Voices, . . . . .	68
CHAPTER VIII.	
Obligato Accompaniment, and use of Solo Stops, . . . . .	78
CHAPTER IX.	
Adaptation of Piano and Orchestral Accompaniment to the Organ, . . . . .	90
CHAPTER X.	
The Swell Organ, . . . . .	109
CHAPTER XI.	
Interludes, . . . . .	118
CHAPTER XII.	
Exceptional use of Stops, . . . . .	131
CHAPTER XIII.	
The Staccato Touch, . . . . .	140
CHAPTER XIV.	
Thorough Bass and Playing from Score, . . . . .	150
CHAPTER XV.	
Accompaniment with Orchestra, . . . . .	157
CONCLUDING REMARKS, . . . . .	172



## PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

---

TO learn how to be a good choir accompanist is by no means an elementary study. In fact, the pupil should possess a fair technical command of the instrument before making a special study of accompaniments. Given a reasonable degree of talent for acquiring execution, and nothing is more certain than that a good teacher will qualify such a pupil to play, satisfactorily, compositions written for the organ.

Technique  
necessary.

Mere organ studies, however, do not qualify a pupil as accompanist; for the organ student can, at least, give his undivided attention to the effects he is producing upon his instrument. The matter is rendered more complex when that instrument is to be properly handled *per se*, and at the same time properly subordinated to the various conditions of vocal accompaniment.

Organ studies proper,  
not sufficient.

Increasing power of execution does not, then, necessarily bring with it increasing ability to accompany well. This does not alter the fact that a good technical foundation is indispensable, for the natural gift in accompaniment can not develop without it. It simply argues a different and varied application of the technique acquired; which new application will be found to be deducible from the nature and requirements of the voices to be accompanied, rather than from the nature of the accompanying instrument.

Application  
of technique.

It is necessary then, at the very outset, for the student to have some idea as to what constitutes good accompaniment abstractly considered.

What constitutes  
good accompaniment.

It is difficult to define this, and yet even inexperienced singers instantly and instinctively realize whether they are well accompanied or not. If we analyze their feelings, we shall find that the sensation is twofold: that of *freedom* on the one hand, that of *support* upon the other; or the lack of both in case they are badly accompanied.

The sense of freedom on the part of individual singers arises from the fact, (1) that the accompanist does not hinder by his performance their own natural delivery of the piece as to manner or style, breathing, etc.; and (2) does not overpower, or, in technical language, "cover" them.

Where the nature or difficulty of the passage to be executed requires the employment of greater power on the part of the accompanist (as in passages of difficult intonation, climax passages, and the like), that support is at once at hand in case of good accompaniment, as though singer and accompanist were guided by the same thought. This is the real secret which can not be taught—the actual anticipation, on the part of the accompanist, of what the singer desires and needs.

Usual course  
of study

Students of the organ, while pursuing their studies, must necessarily confine themselves to organ-playing, not accompanying. Through pecuniary reasons, or otherwise, the pupil generally leaves the teacher before the subject of accompaniment is even theoretically touched upon. Nor is a teacher to be blamed for not expending time upon this subject when the pupil's technique is first to be assured to him.

The next step therefore is the assuming of an organ position. The young incumbent's stock in trade (so to speak) usually consists of a certain number of organ compositions, which he may play very well, and yet accompany the simplest tunes badly. The chances are that he has few, if any, theoretical views on the subject. His first steps, then, are made at hap-hazard, and, as experience shows, often result in deeply rooted faults, even where a great natural gift may exist.

Amateur or-  
ganists.

Another class, by far more numerous, is that of the amateur, who is generally occupied in some mercantile (or at least not musical) capacity throughout the week, "presiding" at the organ on Sunday. Now, we have very many accomplished amateurs, but, taking the whole country into consideration, as a general thing the case is worse, for the technical foundation is, as a rule, quite deficient. The ambition of this class is ordinarily limited by the desire "to play *well enough to play in church*," quite innocent of the fact that to do this really *well* implies an ability reaching somewhat beyond the requirements of the service proper. The heart-rending treatment which the organ, as an accompanying instrument, not unfrequently receives at their hands is all too common. Yet when we consider the whole country, and the fact that comparatively few of this class have (outside the larger cities) any opportunity to listen to good models, the churches have cause to be grateful to them. In their case, the "spirit is indeed willing" if the technical ability is weak.

Purpose of  
this work.

To assist, as far as he may be able, those among both of these classes who would give this important subject the special attention it deserves—to point out at least the right direction—is the object which the author has proposed to himself in this work. He does not for a moment imagine that it can supply the place of good personal instruction, but simply hopes that it may be found useful in connection with such instruction, and also serve as a guide to those who can not command a competent teacher to direct their studies.

How to use  
this work.

About all that can be accomplished upon paper is to give a series of hints and suggestions, *which must be improved upon, added to, and infinitely varied* through gradually acquired practical experience and unremitting diligence on the part of the student, if a practical result is to be attained.

Influence of  
successive  
chapters upon  
previous mat-  
ter.

For convenience' sake, the subject under discussion is divided into separate heads, to each of which a chapter is devoted. The nature of the subject, however, is such that it is impossible to treat any one of these heads with any thing like completeness within the limits of the chapter specially assigned to it. The reason of this lies in the extremely close relationship which exists between some of these subdivisions, whereby much that is said of one will measurably apply to others. On this account, it will be well for the student to understand at the outset that, as he proceeds in the perusal of this work, he should strive to apply a new principle or idea which a new chapter may contain to the completion of a principle advanced in some former chapter. Thus, while clearness of comprehension is promoted by these subdivisions, it must be the student's aim to make one section complete the other, and thus, at least measurably, obviate the author's shortcomings. To aid in this, frequent references to other chapters have been introduced.

The author has endeavored in all cases where he has advocated the use, or counselled the avoidance, of a given manner of accompaniment or registration, not to make it the simple assertion of an opinion, but to give the "*reason why*." He believes it to be the only way by which the student can deduce truly general principles, and thus make the work available to his own requirements.

It will be noticed that nothing is said concerning the accompaniment of anthems. It was deemed unnecessary to make such a special heading, as the accompaniment of a somewhat elaborate anthem may bring into play the principles advanced in the majority of all the chapters given. If the various forms of accompaniment are well understood, their possible union in one and the same piece will not be found difficult.

Of Anthems

In the examples and illustrations that follow, a medium-sized organ is assumed, as being generally within the reach of those using this work, and in most cases one of two manuals.

Preliminary  
requirements

It is further assumed that those making use of this work are familiar with the elements of Harmony, at least to the extent of a knowledge of intervals, the ordinary progressions of chords, etc.

# CHAPTER I.

---

## GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF REGISTRATION AS APPLIED TO ACCOMPANIMENT.

For what  
class this  
chapter is in-  
tended.

A FAIR knowledge of registration, or the appropriate use and combination of stops, properly belongs to the acquirements assumed to be already possessed by students desirous of giving especial attention to the subject of accompaniments. It is of the first importance, however, to take as little for granted as possible in a work of this kind. To the experienced accompanist, and measurably to those of less experience but of great natural gifts, it not unfrequently seems strange, on the one hand, that others should not accompany properly; on the other hand, it seems to them as if they had *always known* the essential principles which they now practice. For such as these this book is not intended, much less this chapter, but for the great majority who are uncertain how to proceed and desirous of a guide in the right direction.

Our present  
standpoint.

Besides this, our present point of view differs somewhat from that of the various organ schools. The problem is not merely that of ascertaining the effect of a stop or combination of stops, considered as an *organ effect*, but as to its use or value as a *means of accompanying the voice*. We therefore propose to devote our opening chapter to the general consideration of this subject. The subsequent chapters, dealing with particular forms of accompaniment, will doubtless contain more or less repetition of ideas here presented. Reiteration, in a matter as complex as this, can, however, only result in fixing the attention upon the points at issue.

In what sense  
Registra-  
tion may be  
taught.

It is the author's conviction that registration, in any complete or elaborate sense, can not be taught, but that it may be learned. If this seem paradoxical, a simile drawn from the practice of a sister art—Painting—may serve to make this clear.

A comparative beginner in this latter art, whose master instructs him how to apply certain colors to a given painting, could doubtless reproduce his work were the same subject given him and the same colors and shades of color supplied him. Under changed conditions, he would be helpless. What then is the course pursued? The student must learn to mix colors, and produce his own shades through experimental knowledge of the general principles which govern the process. These general principles will still apply, to the changed conditions he is sure to meet with in his own work. They afford him a sure criterion of judgment as to how to proceed when removed from his master's advice and counsel, and implant within him that germ which it is his own responsibility to develop.

Marking Re-  
gistration for  
given Pieces.

Thus with the organ. A master may carefully mark given pieces as to the use of certain stops. The student takes it to another instrument, and the effect is found to be quite different, and in most cases unsatisfactory. The tone-color does not suit the new conditions. With the painter it is not the mere knowledge how to manipulate the brush, nor with the organist how to

manipulate the keys, but behind that must lie a knowledge of general principles of combination which can be adapted to varying circumstances. The student of accompaniments has, moreover, the double difficulty to contend with, that different voices (individuals) and classes of voice (male or female) require different modes and degrees of support, in addition to the constant differences among the instruments themselves.

These *general* principles, then, can be *taught*—their infinite modifications, through which alone they are made to apply to particular cases, must, after all, be *learned*, and that through experience and experiment after the pupil has left the master. That “whatever sounds well is correct” may be essentially true, but it is manifestly a poor rule to follow. For that which sounds badly to the trained and cultivated ear is not unfrequently listened to with complacency by the uncultivated. This is proved, in turn, by the wretched combinations we are sometimes called upon to endure in our churches—combinations inconsistent with the very nature of the instrument, as well as with place and occasion. Neither is this confined exclusively to small towns and out-of-the-way places!

General principles only are useful.

The organ manual-compass usually extends from  $CC$  to  $a^3$  (thrice marked  $a^*$ )—namely,

Of Compass.




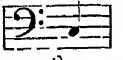
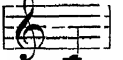
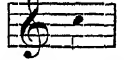
The older instruments only to  $f^2$ —some of the modern ones extend the compass also to  $c^4$ .

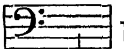
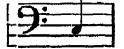
This compass is seen to be much less than that of the pianoforte. On the other hand, the organ possesses manual stops which *sound* one and two octaves higher as compared with the vocal notation; also those which give the lower octave. This, taken in connection with the pedal organ (which in the largest instruments contains stops which produce the second octave lower), gives to the organ a compass (that is, to the ear, irrespective of the *number of keys*) actually much greater than that of the pianoforte.

It is evident that for purposes of accompaniment, we must, first of all, employ stops which are in unison with the voice as to pitch, as well as agreeing in quality. Such stops are those of eight feet.

Stops of eight feet

By this expression is meant a stop whose lowest tone  is produced by a pipe eight feet long.


As the scale ascends, the length of the pipes decreases, the length being reduced one half for each octave.† Thus the tone  in a stop whose initial tone is  $CC$  (actual pitch) is given by a pipe of four feet length.  is given by one of two feet, and  by one of one foot. From this point the reduction goes on to the extreme limit in fractions of a foot, a matter which concerns the organ-builder, but not the player.

It will be seen from the above that a four-foot stop will necessarily form the octave to the eight-foot; a two-foot will give the octave to the four-foot, or super-octave, etc. Thus, with a four-foot stop, if the key represented by  be touched, the tone heard will be 

\* For a full explanation of this manner of indicating pitch, see the excellent work entitled, “A Primer of Modern Tonality,” by John H. Cornell, page 12 G. Schirmer, New York.

† Organ-builders distinguish between *actual* and “speaking length”—that is, pipes which, for instance, appear in front of an organ, and serve for ornament as well as use, are often of greater length than the tone requires. This is adjusted by “cutting-down” in the rear of the pipe (out of sight) until the true (“speaking”) length or pitch is attained. This of metal pipes only.



as compared with vocal notation. The same key touched with a two-foot stop drawn will give  etc., etc. In the mean time the manual sixteen-foot stop gives the octave lower than written. It is well for the pupil to realize the actual effect of a simple chord played upon the manual only with sixteen- eight- four- and two-foot stops drawn. The following (a) shows the keys touched, and (b) the tones which result from this chord.

Stops of sixteen, four and two feet

Fundamental principle of Registration



The notes here placed side by side show the "doublings" produced by the various stops. The student should carefully examine so as to see which stop produces them. It will be remembered that this is simply a manual-chord without pedal-bass. This gives some conception of the reason for the power and majesty of the organ.

From the preceding we deduce as a *fundamental principle*, both in accompaniment and in the use of the organ as a solo-instrument, *the predominance of the eight-foot-tone as being in unison with the voice*. The violation of this principle more frequently leads to bad combinations in accompaniment than the selection of unsuitable *qualities* of tone for a given piece. The stops of high pitch are comparatively valueless in accompaniment unless they rest upon the eight-foot tone as a foundation. They then add brilliancy to the effect, and become indispensable for such purpose.

When four-foot tone may be added.

To know when it is proper to add four-foot stops to an eight-foot accompaniment, it is simply necessary for the student to realize the following conditions:

1. Whether the eight-foot tone is so firmly established as to warrant this addition. The expression, eight-foot tone, is here to be understood as applied to the voices as well as to the accompaniment itself. If the voices are powerful enough to firmly establish this, the effect of the octaves added by means of the four-foot stops will always be good; especially if the character of the piece is of a cheerful nature. For brilliant effects, with a chorus of sufficient power, stops of two feet become necessary. These are the Fifteenth,\* or Super-octave, the Piccolo, etc.

Characteristics of low and high tones.

2. Sounds of low pitch have the greatest "travelling quality" so-called. Thus the pedal tones of the organ or the double-basses (*contrabassi*) of an orchestra may be plainly distinguished *outside* the building within which the sound is produced, when the ear can not detect either melody or harmony. At a reasonable distance from the production of the tone—as within the audience-room—the stops or instruments of high pitch assert themselves in the most unmistakable manner. They can not be covered by those of lower pitch. It is this characteristic which should constantly be remembered in accompaniment, for if the preponderance of the four-foot tone be too great in proportion to the voices, they cease to blend together. It is this reason which causes organ-builders to place fewer stops of high pitch, and still fewer of low (sixteen-foot) tone, in their instruments as compared with the standard eight-foot tone.

Balance, as regards the voices.

Notwithstanding this fact, it still remains for the student to adapt the proportions to the voices he has to accompany; for though the balance of the instrument may be correct within itself, the balance as regards the voices will constantly vary. In the accompaniment of solos, duets, quartets, etc., especial care should be exercised as to the introduction of four-foot stops,

\* Fifteenth—so called because the octave being represented by the eighth degree above a given tone, the following octave (ascending) falls upon the fifteenth degree. Thus the name represents the pitch of the stop in relation to the unison-tone.

for here the *preponderance*\* of the upper octave can easily show itself, unbalancing the proper effect. When the voices to be accompanied are more numerous, this can not so readily occur. Much will depend upon the voicing of the stops in question as to their use or omission.

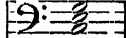
When voices are sufficiently powerful to easily sustain four-foot tone, in fact to require it, the addition of sixteen-foot tone to the manuals becomes desirable. This addition is specially useful when dignity and solidity of tone are required. As the tone of the sixteen-foot stops lies *below* the voice, their use can not so easily be abused as in case of a preponderance of four-foot tone; as the latter will then cease to assimilate with the voice. Used without the four-foot stops, however, the sixteen-foot manual-tone would frequently have a tendency to obscure the harmony, through the too prominent assertion of the lower octave. When the four-foot stops are added to those of sixteen and eight feet, the eight-foot standard tone retains, so to speak, its equilibrium, by means of the opposite relations of pitch created, on the one hand, by the four-foot stops, and by those of sixteen feet upon the other.


Sixteen-foot tone; when to be added

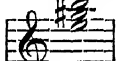
The use of Mixtures or Compound Stops (which give several tones to each key struck) is only justifiable in accompanying a very powerful choir, large chorus, or a whole congregation. A possible exception to this may be the use of the Swell Mixture, when the Full Swell is drawn as accompaniment to comparatively few voices. This on account of its relatively mild effect. Even in this case, it should not be long continued.

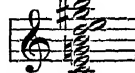
Mixtures.

Although it does not lie within the scope of this work to enter into any exhaustive treatment of the *nature* of the stops, yet it may here be said that nothing will aid the acquirement of a good registration more surely than a knowledge of the stops from this point of view. The student should inform himself as to their various shapes, lengths, whether of metal, wood, or both, and, their characteristics being familiar, their use will far more readily be acquired.† As to the Mixtures, it is absolutely necessary to have such knowledge of their nature as to comprehend the reason why they may be used with many voices, but not with few. This reason is entirely apart from their relative *power*, as will be seen. The Mixtures produce what would ordinarily be understood as discords. If the pupil would realize this, let him draw the Great

Organ Dulciana, holding this chord:  To this add the Twelfth, and the following tones

are heard in addition:  Two of the tones thus heard—namely, *B* and *D*, are seen to be foreign to the chord held on the manual. The Twelfth and Fifteenth together would constitute a simple Mixture of two ranks of pipes. Other Mixtures would also give to the above

fundamental chord the tones:  so that with certain stops drawn, the following con-

glomeration of tones is actually produced: 

It has been found that a musical tone, especially one of comparatively low pitch, gives not only its own fundamental sound, but also, in a faint way, certain others lying above it. These are called harmonic tones, and give brilliancy to the effect when they abound. These natural harmonics do not assert themselves sufficiently when produced by unison or octave organ-pipes

Harmonic tones.

\* It is to be understood that it is not the *perception* of the four-foot tone by the ear which constitutes a bad effect, often quite the contrary, but a *preponderance* of the same.

† The best work for this purpose is that entitled, "The Organ and its Construction," by Ed. J. Hopkins. London: Robert Cocks & Co.

(they are best heard in stringed instruments); therefore organ-builders supply this lack by adding certain ranks of pipes to sound the tones required. Thus, with Mixtures of four or five "ranks," so-called, we have four or five distinct tones respectively on touching *one key* of the manual.

*Felt, rather than heard.* It is evident that if these foreign tones should be distinctly heard, the effect would be detestable, but they are so modified by proper voicing\* that when all the sixteen-eight-and-four-foot stops are drawn they may be said to be *felt*, in added brilliancy and solidity, rather than *actually heard* as to the intervals in question. It was this fact which led Berlioz (whose knowledge of this particular subject was limited), in his famous treatise on "Modern Instrumentation," to remark that "it remains to be explained how that *which is not heard* can produce a good effect." This is witty, but the fact remains; as the student can readily ascertain at the instrument by comparing the registration—"Full with and without Mixtures." All the instruction necessary to fully elucidate this point (which is altogether beyond the scope of this chapter) may be found in Hopkins' large and admirable work, Chap. XXIV., page 147. (See second note, bottom of page 7.)

For our present purpose, it is sufficient to call attention to the fact that the characteristics above mentioned forbid the use of Mixtures with voices, except where great power and brilliancy are required, and where the number of the voices precludes the possibility of the unison (eight-foot) tone being obscured in any sense. They require all the foundation and octave stops to have been already drawn. If otherwise used, Mixtures annihilate all vocal effects.

*Tone qualities.* In our modern instruments, we now find four qualities of tone—namely, Diapason, Flute, Reed, and String tone. This latter, as of comparatively recent introduction in this country, is usually lacking in the older instruments.

*Diapasons.* The Open Diapason has, or should have, that broad and resonant quality which makes it truly the foundation of the organ. Its quality is sometimes, and with justice, described as "organ-tone," not merely on account of its giving this foundation, but also because it resembles nothing else. No other instrument has this quality. The other classes of stops mentioned, as their names indicate, bear more or less resemblance to the orchestral wind instruments, except the string-toned stops, which only under certain conditions resemble the stringed instruments of the orchestra.

The term "open" as applied to the Diapason denotes literally that it is composed of open pipes—that is, without a stopper or plug at one end, as in case of the Stopped Diapason. Its name, however, *does not* denote one fact—namely, that it is always made of metal (the Diapason of sixteen feet in the Pedal Organ excepted), while the Stopped Diapason is usually made of wood.

In its relations to the voice, the Open Diapason is the most valuable of all stops. This is on account of its full tone as a means of support, and especially on account of what may be termed its "*neutral tint*" as to quality—agreeing, as it does, with voices of all kinds, and entering readily into combination with all other organ-stops.

*Principal; Fifteenth.* The Octave and Super-octave to the eight-foot Diapason are respectively the Principal and the Fifteenth. These have the same *quality* of tone, but are far more self-asserting as respects use with voices than the Open Diapason, on account of their higher pitch. For this reason, it may happen that when the vocal power is sufficient to warrant a slight degree of increased brilliancy in the accompaniment—in other words, an addition of four-foot tone—the addition of the

---

\* Especially where duplications and reduplications of the fundamental occur, *that* tone is strengthened in the Mixture against a weaker power in the other intervals given.

Principal or Octave may be found somewhat too radical. As a compromise to this, we have Flutes of four feet which admirably answer this purpose and give a more delicate octave.

We have used the terms Principal or Octave as synonyms for the same metal stop of four feet. The name "Principal" has come into general use in England and America, as indicating this particular four-foot stop, in the following way: In tuning the organ, "the temperament is first set" in this stop—that is, it is itself first tuned as perfectly as possible. *To it*, as a standard, are subsequently tuned all the remaining stops; those of the Pedal Organ included. The selection of this stop arises from its standing, as it were, midway in pitch between the extreme high and extreme low compass of the instrument, and possessing throughout its range the firm diapason quality. It is evident, then, that it is, in a sense, *the principal stop to the organ-builder*. The selection and use of this name are, however, to be regretted, for the names of stops should have a special significance *to the player*, to whom it is *not the principal* stop. Similarly, the word *Diapason* is derived from two Greek words signifying literally "through all"—that is, the scale. In organs where the compass of *each* stop "goes through" the scale, this name has manifestly no significance as applied to the stop in question. Neither does it give any idea of the relation of the stop to the instrument as a whole. The Germans have a far better system, as it is logical. Thus they name our Open Diapason the *Principal* of sixteen or eight feet, as the case may be. It *is* the principal stop. The English "Principal" then becomes the "Octave," etc.

Derivation of the words "Principal" and "Diapason."

The Flutes of an organ constitute one of the most valuable subdivisions of the instrument as a means of accompaniment. Of less power than the Diapasons, the mellow and pervading tone of the eight-foot Flutes adapts itself admirably to accompaniments where the more incisive quality of the Diapasons would be too positive, while the four-foot Flutes add a clear brilliancy often better suited to the voice than the more positive Principal of four feet. To give such an accompaniment a slight shade of the "metal tone," together with a slight increase of power, the Dulciana of the Great or Choir Organ is frequently added to the eight-foot Flutes. This still leaves the flute quality predominating, but shades it with a slightly sombre tint which harmonizes well with the voice. Such characteristic effects, especially when the change intended is but slight, are of vastly more significance in our organs of comparatively recent construction and improved voicing than is the case with the older instruments. These latter, while often possessing many stops of sweet quality, are generally very deficient in contrasts of tone, so that such an addition as the above would scarcely be perceived. For this reason, more stops have usually to be drawn in case of an old instrument than with a modern one. This more particularly affects solo-accompaniment, and is unfortunate, for the assemblage of an increased number of poorly-voiced, uncharacteristic stops, although somewhat increasing the power, does not improve the quality, but has quite the contrary effect.

Flutes.

Slight changes of Registration in our older Organs.

A special use of the eight-foot Flutes may here be noted as used in combination with the Open Diapason of eight feet, or with string-toned stops, and especially valuable in accompaniment.

Flutes combined with Diapasons.

The addition of an eight-foot Flute to an eight-foot Diapason does not seem to materially change the *power*, but it materially changes the *quality*. The Diapason still asserts its superior strength, but the tone of the Flute seems to envelop and soften it; and, while it thus deprives the former stop of a portion of its incisive character, it gives it—as has sometimes been said—a "velvety quality." Thus, in such pieces as require a full, mellow, but not powerful accompaniment, the eight-foot Flute serves to mediate between the positive tone of the Open Diapason

and the voices. This characteristic is observed in a still more marked degree when the Flute enters into combination with string-tones (of which later).

**Stopped Diapasons.** The Flutes we have had in mind in the above remarks were "open" Flutes. The Stopped Diapasons, however, whether of wood or metal, deserve to be classified here from the player's standpoint, on account of their essentially flute-like quality, especially in modern instruments. Compared with the "open" Flutes, they differ to such an extent that they afford the organist opportunity for pleasant contrasts of tone within the flute quality itself.

**Reeds.** The Reed-stops differ from all others in that their tone is not produced by the resonance of a pipe, but by the vibration of a small tongue of metal. In our medium-sized two-manual Organs they generally comprise in the Great Organ the Trumpet of eight feet, and occasionally the Clarionet in addition. In such case, the compass of the latter stop rarely goes below four-foot C.

In the Swell Organ we find the Oboe (or Hautboy) and the Trumpet (or Cornopean); the latter name being given when of large scale and powerful intonation. If the Organ has three manuals, we find the Clarionet placed upon the Choir Organ.

**Tuning.** All of these stops, while of the most decided and agreeable character if well made, are, by the very nature of their construction, very sensitive to change of temperature. Hence they are the first to get out of tune in any organ. Their value is so great in producing variety in accompaniment, that all organists in our smaller cities and towns where there is no organ-builder resident, or where a professional tuner's visits are few and far between, should learn to *tune* and *clean* the reeds themselves. This is very easily acquired by asking for such instruction whenever an experienced tuner chances to be present, who will doubtless willingly give the desired information. This will give the organist constant use of these stops if he so desires, whereas it otherwise often happens that they remain unavailable for a long period, or are used in a condition which makes their effect intolerable to a sensitive ear. In many places, more especially in our smaller towns, we find lady-organists. To them the above advice does not apply. A lady's dress is, unfortunately, an insuperable barrier to tuning, as it would imperil too many pipes in arriving at those to be tuned.

**Use of Reeds in harmonic accompaniment (Simple Chords).** The eight-foot reeds of the Swell will rarely be found available for an accompaniment in full chords at a less degree of power than *mezzo-forte*; the four-foot reeds of the Swell scarcely ever, except when the Full Swell is employed; the four-foot reed of the Great Organ never, except when the Full Organ (or at least Full without Mixtures) becomes necessary. The extremely pungent character of modern reeds renders a careful use of them necessary, and they should not be used long continuously, but rather to heighten the effect of given passages. They are eminently useful for solo effects (of the organ), but when used in the accompaniment of solos, more especially of the female voice, they require particular treatment. This will be discussed under the head of "Obligato Accompaniment." It is usual to add a Stopped Diapason to the reed to give it more "body" or fullness. This is specially advisable when employed in accompaniment. It is not to be denied, however, that, in case of many finely-voiced modern reeds, used in *obligato* accompaniment, the reed alone will produce the most characteristic effect. We have reeds of sixteen, eight, and four feet in our largest church-organs, and they are even made of thirty-two-foot tone.\*

---

\* We have, at present, but one specimen of a thirty-two-foot reed in a church-organ in the United States, so far as the author is aware—namely, in the Jesuit Church of Chicago.

In addition to the stops of this class previously mentioned, we find the following in the larger instruments: In the Great Organ—the Trumpet of sixteen feet and the Clarion of four feet. In the Swell—the Vox Humana of eight feet, the Double Trumpet or Contra-Fagotto of sixteen feet, and Clarion of four feet. In the Pedal Organ—the Trombone of sixteen feet and the Trumpet of eight feet.

Additional  
Reeds in large  
Organs.

Besides these, we occasionally find (in the Swell or Choir Organ) the Euphone of sixteen feet or Cor Anglais (English Horn) of eight feet. The first of these gives, in its Tenor range, a very beautiful imitation of the orchestral Bassoon. These are so-called “free” reeds, an explanation of which (in contradistinction to the other so-called “striking reeds”) can not be entered into here. (See Hopkins’ work, previously referred to) A “Cabinet Organ” reed would be a familiar specimen of the “free” species. The two stops above named are unfit for purposes of accompaniment, except, and that rarely, in its obligato form. The Oboe (Hautboy) of the swell is sometimes divided into two registers, called respectively Oboe (or Oboe Treble) and Bassoon Bass. In such case they form but one stop of complete compass when drawn together, the name being derived from the fact that the orchestral Bassoon is the natural bass of the orchestral Oboe.

The string-toned stops comprise the Gamba, eight feet (Great Organ); the Salicional, eight feet (Swell Organ); the Violin, Violina, or Fugara, four feet (Swell or Choir Organ); the Geigen-principal (Violin Diapason), of eight feet; the Keraulophon, eight feet (Choir Organ); the Violone, sixteen feet, and Violoncello, eight feet (Pedal Organ). The former stop\* is usually made of wood, but when made of metal it is frequently called the *Contrebasse* or Contra-Gamba. These stops differ in degree of “stringiness,” the Gamba having the most characteristic quality in this respect as a rule. Lastly, the Dulciana (Great or Choir) may, from the *organist’s standpoint*, sometimes be included in this list. Strictly speaking, it does not belong to the string-tones. It may, however, be considered as the connecting link in quality between the string-tones proper and the Diapasons. Where an organ is of sufficient size to possess several string-toned stops, the Dulciana is usually voiced with less of that quality. In small two-manual instruments which possess no string-tone on the Great Organ (although they may have one on the Swell), our modern builders frequently give the Dulciana a somewhat decided string quality.

String-tones.

The Dulciana  
as related to  
String-tones  
and Diapasons.

Less radical than the reeds, but still of very marked quality, the string-toned stops are extremely valuable for purposes of accompaniment. They do not “pervade” nor “carry” tone to a distance like an Open Diapason, but without this power they are nevertheless quickly *felt* by voices, their crisp quality apparently giving a very distinct sense of the accompanying harmonies.

General characteristics of the “String-tones.”

Their characteristic string quality, as resembling the stringed instruments of the orchestra, is best heard in comparatively slow, and especially in chromatic progressions. In fact, the speech of these stops is essentially slow. Trills are always to be avoided, except with several assisting stops and some of higher pitch. Their voicing and quickness of speech have been much improved of late years, but the above still holds good. On this account, they are usually employed in combination with Stopped Diapasons or Flutes of eight feet, which “help them to their speech,” as it is termed, and also serve to unite their quality with that of the voices to be accompanied, as with the reeds.

The four-foot string-tone, usually placed only in the Swell in organs of moderate dimensions (Violin or Violina), is rarely satisfactory in accompaniment, except where the Full Swell may be employed. The upper octave of string quality (above the voices) which this stop gives, although very effective in organ solo combinations, does not readily harmonize with solo voices or the

Four-foot  
String-tone.

\* The *Violone* is spoken of.

accompaniment of a quartet. At a short distance from the performer, its tone seems to be heard side by side with the vocal effect, but not *blending* with it.

Contrast;  
application of  
principles.

If it be desired to contrast one quality of tone with another, the pupil may feel safe in making any combination whatever to this end, if he will but bear in mind the fundamental rule respecting *predominance* of the eight-foot tone. Perhaps the most striking contrast the organ possesses is that of reed tone upon one manual and flute tone upon another. This *generally* proves most effective when the reed lies lower than the flute-part, or, in other words, when the reed is assigned to the left and the flute quality to the right hand. A simple inversion of this will produce a combination of quite different effect. String and flute tone also contrast excellently in this manner. It is only in accompaniments of a certain kind—those in which the accompaniment contains a melodic significance of its own, independent of the voices—that such tone contrasts are particularly available or even desirable.

The Quintadena.

A very beautiful stop of eight feet, introduced in the Swell Organ by some of our builders, is the *Quintadena*. It is somewhat string-like in quality, and, as its name implies, gives a fifth or “quint” as a quite perceptible harmonic in connection with any given tone of its scale. This compound effect is produced from one pipe, and not from separate ones, as in case of the Mixtures. On account of the strong harmonic referred to, the Quintadena is unsuited to accompaniment, unless well covered by an independently balanced combination. Used in this manner, it may be employed to “brighten” an accompaniment.

Very beautiful solo effects may be obtained from it in conjunction with a Flute, four feet, and Tremulant *ad libitum*.

It rests with the student to make himself familiar through actual experiment with the various shades of tone color referred to. He will find them differing in degree in every instrument, but, however varied their quality or pitch, they must all be subordinated to the one simple law of eight feet or unison predominance—by closely observing which, he can not go astray, and experience will teach him the possible exceptions.

In most of our modern instruments the length (eight feet, etc.) is marked upon each stop. Besides this, the student should learn to distinguish them instantly by ear.

## CHAPTER II.

### ACCOMPANIMENT OF THE CHORALE, OR PLAIN "HYMN-TUNE."\*

#### EXAMPLE 1 (AS WRITTEN AND SUNG).

*Hamburg, L. M.*

King - doms and thrones to God be - long, Crown him, ye na - tions, in your song;

Adapted from a Gregorian chant by L. MASON.

His won-drous name and power re - hearse; His hon - ors shall en - rich your verse.

#### EXAMPLE 2 (AS PLAYED).

*a.* *b.* *c.* *d.* *e.* *f.* *Ped.*

\* We purposely use the word "hymn-tune"—"hymnody," etc.—in this work, as the "psalm-tune" would, logically speaking, be a chant. The psalm is, in the absence of metre, essentially a prose composition, and we either chant prose or set it in anthem form. The hymn—even if derived from the psalms—is a metrical composition in the strict sense.



**Syllabic repetition** THE preceding familiar tune has been selected as a specimen of certain *syllabic repetitions of the same chord*. (See measures 4-5 and others.) The idea has prevailed in many quarters that such repetitions in the voices should not be repeated upon the Organ, but held out a time equal to the value of the notes were they tied together. This is very objectionable when the voices are silent, as all rhythmic flow is thereby destroyed. In accompanying the voices, this may be less objectionable, but had better be avoided as disturbing the rhythmic relation between player and singers.

**True manner of performance.** The true manner of performing such passages is by a compromise, as given in No. 2—*c* and *e*. The Bass and Alto, by sustaining *F* in octaves, so bind the passage together that the strict *legato* effect is preserved, while the repetition of Soprano and Tenor notes keeps the rhythm intact. Attention is also called to the fact that the motion occurs in one outer part (Soprano), and one inner (Tenor), while the sustained tones bear the same relation. (See Alto and Bass.) This combination of motion and repose gives both smoothness and distinctness as results.

**Doubling the Manual Bass.** Example 2, *a*. Omitting the pedal part throughout, and playing the tune through once upon the Swell Organ, would constitute the simplest form of "giving out the tune" so-called. Should this be adopted, it will be noticed that the latter half of the tune is essentially the repetition of the first eight measures. A change of effect for this latter half can here be produced (without affecting the simplicity) by doubling the bass, or playing it in the lower octave, the right hand carrying out the three-part harmony, thus :

EXAMPLE 3.



While thus played through, the Great and Pedal Organs are supposed to be already prepared. The following (Example 4) shows the ending as first played through upon the Swell, and the beginning of the voices (chorus or congregation) accompanied on the Great Organ.

EXAMPLE 4.

Beginning  
the tune after  
"giving it  
out."

Manual.

Pedal.

N.B.—Gr to Ped.

At N. B. it is to be noted that the Great to Pedal Coupler is drawn simultaneously with the *second* half note. In this way the sixteen-foot tone of the Pedals is heard upon the first part of the measure, and the loud

eight and four feet of the Great Manual on drawing the coupler with the latter half of the measure. This not only serves to mitigate the abruptness of the change from the Swell to the powerfully registered Great Organ, but it also serves as a sort of signal, enabling choir and

congregation to begin more promptly together. This occurs during the time allowed for the ♪ (last note of previous examples—compare with No. 4 at \*.)

The exact reverse of the manner of beginning the tune advocated in Example 4 is sometimes heard after the tune has been played over once upon the Swell. Example 5 illustrates this.

## EXAMPLE 5.



Here it is seen that instead of the Pedal entering upon the first half of the second measure, the Great Organ enters abruptly upon the second half of the measure with the upper note of the harmony alone. This is very objectionable except in the rarest cases, but it is far too frequently heard in our churches. It is illogical, in that the foundation should come first and not the superstructure. The chord should be built up from its fundamental tone to be agree-

Another manner. Objections to the same.

able to the ear. As it is, it sounds like a continual advertisement of the fact that the accompanist expects the choir's intonation to be faulty, and that, *before they begin to sing*, they must be assisted. In such large Episcopal churches as have a double choir, one on each side of the chancel, an exception in this regard may perhaps be excusable at times; especially in responsive and unisonous chanting. This is more particularly for the benefit of the choir farthest removed from the organ or accompanist. The constant recurrence of this mode of commencement in successive verses of a hymn is extremely unmusical, and had better be entirely avoided.

We will now suppose the tune to proceed as in Example 2, the Pedals being employed throughout. It will be noticed that they are here played an octave lower than the vocal bass notation. The sixteen-foot pedal-stops, speaking an octave lower than written, thus sound two octaves distant from the vocal bass. The eight-foot stops of the Pedal and those of the Manuals (coupled to the Pedal) give the single octave lower than the vocal bass, while the fingers on the Manuals give the actual unison with that part. It is this treatment of the Pedals which, in tunes of this class, gives a strong and solid foundation suitable to the support of a large chorus. This also justifies the employment of stops of high pitch, Mixtures, etc. In tunes of another class, it will be found that another principle obtains, which will be considered elsewhere.

Use of Pedal-stops in the lower octave.

Example 2—*a, c, e*. The notes here repeated are *not to be struck staccato*. The finger should not leave the key, but the key should be allowed to come up with such promptness as to ensure the quick closing of the wind-chest valve (*pallet*), thus cutting off the tone, which is instantly resumed by the succeeding fall of the finger. This requires some practice to ensure distinctness and smoothness combined.

Touch.

Example 2—*b, d, f*. Supplementary harmonies are here added, as will be seen by comparison with Example 1. This is not obligatory, but when judiciously and naturally employed is effective. Care must be taken not to make such additions when the compass runs low, as they then have a tendency to obscure the harmonic progressions.

Supplementary Harmonies.

The apparent consecutive octaves in the bass (last measure but one) are here unobjectionable

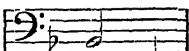
Consecutive Octaves.

because the four-part harmony is complete and correct, and the effect is simply that of strengthening the bass. Here, too, the Pedal ceases to be played in the lower octave, and springs a sixth, thus:



the Pedal compass not possessing the low B flat, but the pupil should note that afterward it

Pedal changes.

does not return thus:  This is on account of a better (more natural) harmonic

progression. Care should be exercised, where such alterations are necessary, to make them in such a manner as may least violate the natural flow of the bass, considered melodically by itself.

Two more specimens of this kind of treatment follow. The pupil should carefully compare them with the vocal score, which may be found in almost any collection of tunes.

## EXAMPLE 6.

Federal Street. L. M.



H. K. OLIVER.



At *a* and *c* the rhythmic repetition ceases in the Soprano, as the other parts have sufficient motion of their own to preserve the rhythm intact. At *b* and *d* supplementary harmonies, already spoken of, are introduced. At *e* the passing of the sustained tone from the thumb of the right to that of the left hand is to be noted. This renders the execution of the following measure easy, which would otherwise require the following displacement of the hand.



The employment of similar substitution of one hand for the other will be found useful in very many tunes.

## EXAMPLE 7.

Boylston. S. M.

L. MASON.

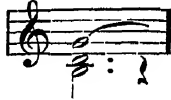


Pedals in the  
upper octave.

The Pedals should be used throughout in accompanying these tunes, not necessarily in "giving them out," and both feet should be employed, without which no strict legato can be preserved. In this last example, it is perhaps better not to play the Pedals an octave lower than written. This is partly on account of the limited upward compass (for it will be remembered that the higher the compass the greater the necessity for a deep and solid foundation in choral tunes), and partly depends upon the size and quality of the Organ. In all cases where the Pedals are played *as written*, the left hand must omit the Bass, playing only the Tenor. This forms one of the simplest introductions to obligato pedal-playing, and can not be too strongly recom-

mended as a habit. Experience, and a good ear, can alone determine whether the Pedals should be used in this manner or in the lower octave. When the chorus is very powerful, the lower octave is preferable. When it is only of medium power, the obligato form is better. As an organ effect, considered by itself, the obligato form is nearly always preferable.

At *b* it will be noticed that the Soprano *G* is held throughout the measure, while the other parts cease thus:


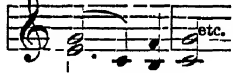


Sustained  
upper tone,  
(Soprano.)

This exceptional effect will sometimes be found of use when choir or congregation become unsteady either in time or tune. This is more likely to occur in tunes of higher compass than this; but the principle holds good, and can be introduced occasionally at other points than the middle of the tune, but not at the beginning of the same. (See remarks following Example 5.) The single tone in this illustration is heard only as the singers pause for breath, and the resumption of the chord in the following measure acts as a powerful accentuation, especially through the re-entrance of the Pedals, steadying the voices in both respects above noted.

At *c*, attention is called to a means of producing an absolute legato effect frequently resorted to in accompanying slow movements upon the organ. The passage written in the voice

Of the strict  
legato.

parts as  is played as if written thus:  the motion passing from above to below the Alto note (*E*) which remains stationary.

In all tunes of this class, as, in fact, in all organ-music, great expertness in changing fingers upon one or more keys, as a preparation for notes that are immediately to follow, is absolutely necessary to a good legato style. This qualification forms a part of the technique presupposed in approaching the study of accompaniments. (See beginning of Preliminary Remarks.) Still, for the benefit of those who may be lacking in this respect, the following exercises are given here. They should be practiced at an extremely slow tempo at first, special care being taken that the finger-pairs fall simultaneously upon the keys.

### EXAMPLE 8.



### EXAMPLE 9.



### EXAMPLE 10.



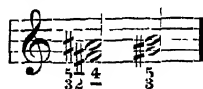
## EXAMPLE 11.

L H (with 4 feet stops)

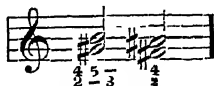


Change of  
fingers upon  
the sharp  
keys

When the change of fingers occurs upon the sharp keys with the fingering  $\frac{5-4}{3-2}$  or  $\frac{4-5}{2-3}$  it is impossible for the finger-pairs to fall quite simultaneously. In such cases, *in ascending passages, the lower finger of the two is first shifted*, followed instantly by the upper, thus:



On the contrary, *in descending passages the upper finger shifts first*, thus:



One more example follows to illustrate distinctness in repeated notes or chords while preserving a strict legato. After having become familiar with Chapter III., it will be advantageous for the pupil to return to Example 12, and again practice it with reference to registration. Further examples of this class may readily be found in every church-book.

## EXAMPLE 12.

BLUMENTHAL.

(?s double.)

*p* Sin - ner, rouse thee from thy sleep, Wake, and o'er thy fol - ly weep; Raise thy spir - it dark and dead.

*Ped. ad lib.*

Je - sus waits his light to shed. Wake from sleep, a - rise from death, See the bright and

*p* liv - ing path: *mf* Watch-ful tread that path: be wise— *p* Leave thy fol - ly, seek the skies.

Character-  
istics of the  
best Chorales.

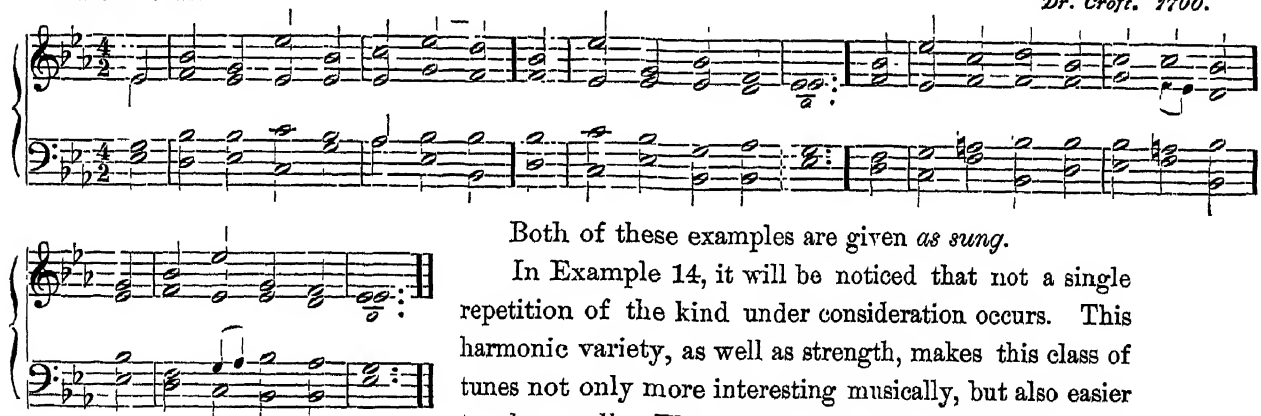
The tunes thus far given have been selected solely to illustrate the reiteration of the same chord, so common in many tunes popular in America. The German chorales, and the better class of English choral tunes, will be found rarely to contain these repetitions, being infinitely richer and stronger in their harmonies. An example of each follows.

## EXAMPLE 13.

*"Allein Gott in der Höh' sei Ehr'."*

Examination of this example shows at once the almost constant progression of the melody without syllabic repetition, producing a new chord to every syllable of the text. Compare this with the fifth measure of Example 1, the first measure of Example 6, etc. The student should not forget that the above notation ( $\frac{4}{2}$ —the ecclesiastical, so called) does not make the tempo slower, but, if any thing, rather quicker.

## EXAMPLE 14.

*London. C. M.**Dr. Croft. 1700.*

Both of these examples are given *as sung*.

In Example 14, it will be noticed that not a single repetition of the kind under consideration occurs. This harmonic variety, as well as strength, makes this class of tunes not only more interesting musically, but also easier to play well. They agree with the character of the organ, and simply require good legato-playing, the tones which are common to any two chords *not being repeated*. It will be further noticed that the English tune is written without pauses (∧). A slight (breathing) pause does, however, take place at the end of each line of the four-line stanza, but trifling as compared with the German chorale. This arises partly from the custom, prevalent in Germany, of singing a long hymn continuously, but with an extremely short interlude (or modulation to the following phrase) *between the lines*, not between the stanzas. The interlude, coming in this place, has the practical object of insuring unity between congregation and accompanist—the congregation singing the melody only. Thus a fresh start is obtained, no unimportant matter when a large congregation is singing with full voice. It may be interesting to the student to compare this simple church-setting of Example 13 with Mendelssohn's more elaborate harmonization, he having introduced this ancient melody as the first chorale in "St. Paul."

## CHAPTER III.

---

### OF ADDING AND WITHDRAWING STOPS DURING PERFORMANCE.

THE above subject is here introduced before proceeding to the consideration of more elaborate forms of accompaniment, as it comes into play to a good extent with the plain choral-tunes, and is indispensable in properly rendering music of a more varied character.

Combination Pedals. Modern organs, even the smaller ones, are usually provided with more or less "combination-pedals" for bringing on and taking off the more powerful stops. Some instruments (generally of the larger class) are, instead of this, or in addition thereto, appointed with "pneumatic knobs or buttons" placed between the Manuals. These, when touched by the thumb, accomplish the same purpose.

No matter how well provided an instrument may be in this respect, the effect produced is that of a *fixed combination*, and, especially in case of small or medium-sized instruments, is decidedly radical in its character—that is, the relative power passes at once from *piano* or *mezzo-piano* to *fortissimo* and *vice versa*. On the other hand, the accompanist may desire but a slight increase or decrease of tone, or it may be that he wishes to gain or reject a certain *quality* of tone not included in the stops affected by the combination-pedal.

Freeing the Hands. For these reasons, the organist can not dispense with studies which teach him how to free the hands alternately, if it be but for a moment, for the purpose of drawing on or pushing in a register. This also holds good should his particular instrument chance to be extraordinarily provided with mechanical means of registration. To gain the technique requisite to thus make free either hand at pleasure, the first thing to acquire is dexterity in substituting one hand for another upon the same or succeeding chord.

Use of the Pedals when the left hand is made free. As a matter of course, removing the left hand from the manual leaves to the feet the whole duty of providing the bass part. Here we have the best proof that some proficiency in obligato pedal-playing is indispensable, even to the pupil whose ambition is limited to playing the plainest church-tunes *well*.

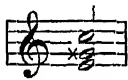


In case the pedals are being employed an octave lower than the vocal bass (see Example 2), it is generally preferable to play them *as written, while the left hand is thus removed*, that the distance between manual and pedal-tone may not be too great, and thus the blending of the two weakened or destroyed.

Substitution of Hands. In his own experience as a teacher, the author has found the following exercise to give the dexterity desired. We take as an illustration our former Example 6.

It is to be understood that no changes of stops are proposed in Example 15. For the moment, we have to do with nothing but the acquirement of such mechanical dexterity as is requisite to free a hand with which to make such changes subsequently.

## EXAMPLE 15.

The alternation of hands is here far more frequent than would be required in a tune of this class for purposes of registration, but as a study it is all the better on this account.

In the second measure, the *G* of the left hand  and of the right  Continued Legato. must be connected with each other, as also with the *G* of the first measure, so as to form together the equivalent: 

This principle must be carefully observed throughout, in order that the ear may detect no break at the change of hands. Wherever the change occurs, the left hand inserts itself *over* the right.

It is evident that the tune must be played in *close* harmony to enable it to be treated thus, and the pupil should carefully compare this exercise with Example 6, measure for measure. Here, then, we see the necessity of a knowledge of the fundamental laws of harmony as to the inversions of chords, etc., as a preparation for the study of organ accompaniments. Assuming this (see close of Preliminary Remarks), we need not give further illustrations of the manner of freeing the hands, as the pupil can himself adapt a multitude of tunes to be treated in this way as studies until the required dexterity is attained.

Premising the mode of freeing the hands to have been thoroughly acquired, we now proceed to consider the subject proper of this chapter—namely, “adding and withdrawing stops during performance.”



Principles  
of Stop-addi-  
tion, etc

## EXAMPLE 16.

LEFT HAND

Op. Org.

*Allegro*

*a* *b.* *c.*

Ped.

his right hand the following stops: at *a*, the Open Diapason, eight feet; at *b*, the Octave or Principal, four feet; and at *c*, the Twelfth and Fifteenth together. This increase of power might be carried further, but suffices to show a certain unsatisfactory abruptness of effect produced by the entrance of each stop. The same played backward, beginning with all the stops named and reducing them to the first combination, is nearly as unsatisfactory. The effect in Example 17 will be found to be much better.

## EXAMPLE 17.

Op. D. 4ft. 12th & 15th.

abruptness of their entrance, before alluded to, can be greatly mitigated, and, under certain conditions, made to produce a positively good effect. In accompanying voices, these conditions mainly arise from the *sense or significance of the vocal text*. The following illustrations will give an idea of this:

## EXAMPLE 18 (IN CRESCENDO: ADDING STOPS).

To Him be praise .....

*mf* *ff*

*Allegro.*

To Him be praise who reign - eth on high!

Ped.

## EXAMPLE 19 (IN DECRESCENDO: WITHDRAWING STOPS).

O come, let us wor - ship, and fall down.

*pp*

Ped.

19; which is seen to be essentially Example 18 in reversed order.

It will also be noticed that the simple imitation occurring in the second measure of Example 18, materially strengthens the rhythm.

In this example, we will suppose (1) the Gamba, or (2) the Stopped Diapason and Dulciana, or all three of these stops drawn upon the Great Organ. Let the pupil play the above, drawing with

Let us analyze the reason of this:

A perfectly *even* crescendo, by means of adding stops, is, of course, unattainable from the varying character of the stops themselves. It will be found, however, that the

It is intended that the student add or withdraw the stops in these examples precisely as in Example 17 (with which example we would now compare Examples 18 and 19), carefully noting the significance of the words in connection with the accents produced.

In the first place, it will be noticed that the passage rises with the natural inflection of the words in Example 18, and falls on the same principle in Example

In Example 18 we find that the improved effect (as compared with Example 16) lies in one simple fact; to which particular attention is called, as it contains the whole secret of adding and withdrawing stops properly—namely, *the stops are added or withdrawn upon the exact rhythmic accent of the piece*. Thus the added tone (by means of the added register) reinforces this natural accent, and the “too much” or “too little,” which the character of the stop itself may produce, is not so keenly felt. It is the lack of agreement with this natural accent which partly accounts for the unpleasant effect of Example 16, the stop being there drawn upon the unaccented (weak) part of the measure. Example 16 is furthermore destitute of rhythmic accent and contains no harmonic changes. The reduction of tone produced by playing Example 16 backward is only rendered more tolerable by the fact that such reduction then falls upon the accented (strong) part of the measure. As it stands, the adding of stops produces a sort of syncopated accent upon the weak part of the measure.\*

Agreement  
with the  
Rhythmic Ac-  
cent.

Besides the good effect of agreement with the natural accent of a piece, it may be ascertained, by practical tests at the instrument, that where harmonies change at the moment of drawing the register the effect is improved and abruptness lessened. Care must be taken that the added register is heard promptly with the entrance of each new chord, and not with the expiration of the former one. Where a short series of staccato chords occur, it will be found still easier to produce a good effect, whether by way of increasing or decreasing the power.

Change of  
Harmonies;  
Staccato.

In the illustrations given, a certain *radical* increase or decrease of power, coinciding with the natural accents of the measure and with the nature of the words, was intended. Thus, Example 18 adds (to the combination which begins the example) in quick succession the Open Diapason, eight feet, the Octave or Principal of four feet, and the Twelfth and Fifteenth, while Example 19 illustrates the reversed effect.

Crescendo  
and Dimin-  
uendo by reg-  
istration.

When, however, the problem proposed is to produce *as gradual* a crescendo or diminuendo as possible, and when this is to be accomplished without the aid of the Swell Organ, but by changes of registration, it is well to observe the following principles:

If we begin with a *piano* or *pianissimo* of the Great Organ—say the Stopped Diapason and Dulciana—it will be found that the latter stop may be added to the former with a less radical change of power and quality than if the order be inverted. The Open Diapason, eight feet, should not be added next. It is too powerful and radical in quality. If there is another stop of eight-foot flute-tone it should enter here. Then the Gamba or Salicional, which assimilates naturally with the stops already drawn, while it lends new power and pungency to the combination. Next the Flute of four feet. By this time a *mezzo-forte* power has been obtained, and the Open Diapason, being now added, is partially covered, and the radical character which would otherwise mark its entrance blended into that of general crescendo.

Order of  
Stop-addition,  
or the reverse.

The pupil should test this principle carefully, carrying it up to the use of the Full Organ with the manuals coupled. He will thereby ascertain that the most even crescendo is obtained by

\* The above holds good when, as in Example 16, the power is reduced while *the same chord* continues sounding. This does not necessarily apply when the chords are varied. Cases will frequently occur where reducing the power upon the unaccented part of the measure will best carry out the sentiment expressed by the words, the weakened accent receiving the weakened power.

In adding stops, however, the rule should be *invariable*—namely, add upon the accented part of the measure only, unless a strong syncopated effect is intended. This is really no exception, as in such case the composer has transferred the place of the principal accent.

selection of stops from the different manuals at the outset, and not by gradually drawing all the stops of one manual and then proceeding to the next. As a matter of course, instruments of tolerably complete appointment are necessary to produce the effects described. In small organs it is often impossible to produce other effects than those here termed "radical."

Application  
of Stop-cres-  
cendo, etc.

From the preceding remarks, it should be evident that expertness in freeing the hands from the manuals, and thus being able to manipulate the registers, will find its greatest use in pieces of larger form and more artistic character than the plain tunes. Still, even in these the organist frequently desires to change the registration, moved thereunto either by (1) sentiment of the words, or (2) the fact that, in this country, a congregation commencing a tune rarely begin it "lustily and with a good courage," but gather increasing confidence and power as they proceed. Thus the last verse of a hymn will frequently require double the support which was ample for the first verse. We again recur to Example 6 as an illustration (somewhat exaggerated) of both crescendo and diminuendo in this sense.

#### EXAMPLE 20.

With one con-sent let all the earth, To God their cheer-ful voi-ces raise;

Glad homage pay with aw-ful mirth, And sing be-fore Him songs of praise.

At the commencement of the tune by choir and congregation, we will suppose the accompaniment to consist of the eight-foot stops of the Great Organ (without reeds) coupled to Diapasons and Octave (four-foot) of the Swell, with the Pedal Organ properly balanced.

The organist frees his left hand at *a*, passing it over his right to the Great Organ registers, drawing the four-foot stops (Octave and Flute) exactly with *b*.


Here it will be noticed that the Pedal leaves the lower for the upper octave in order that the bass may not be too distant from the other parts.

At *c*, the hands shift upon the same chord, freeing the right hand to add the Twelfth and Fifteenth to the Great Organ at *d*.

"Leading-  
tone."  
Intonation.

At *e*, add Swell Reeds of eight feet (with Mixture *ad libitum*). An increase of power is preferable at this point, rather than with the entrance of the following measure, although that

measure is the climax of the phrase, and where we might naturally expect the stop to be added.

The reason of the treatment proposed lies in the fact that the Soprano note  at *e* is the leading tone to the dominant chord of G (D), and it is the tendency of voices to sing such leading tones (the major seventh of any key) a little below pitch, especially in a sustained movement. In fact, it might be preferable so to plan the order of increase as to bring on the Great Organ Twelfth and Fifteenth at this point, in order more successfully to combat this tendency, if it be found to exist, and thus secure the intonation.

At *f*, the left hand, passing to the Great Organ as at *a*, adds here the Trumpet of eight feet.


At *g*. For the three following measures, it is not advisable to add stops of greater power or higher pitch, as the tune here reaches the lowest point of its compass, and a range where female Soprano voices are particularly weak. In fact, this third strain would better serve as an illustration of diminuendo.

At *h*, the Great Organ Bourdon, or Open Diapason, of sixteen feet may be added. This does not materially add to the power already attained, but to the solidity of tone. In the use of manual-stops of sixteen feet, in accompanying choirs, great care and judgment must be exercised. This will be more particularly considered in treating of the accompaniment of the chant, although it also applies to the choral tunes.

Sixteen-foot  
Tone

The addition of the Double Diapason at *h* not only enriches the combination already arrived at, but also, by strengthening the foundation, justifies the addition of the Great Organ Mixtures at *i*.

The doubling of parts in both hands in this and the following measure is not to be considered as consecutive octaves. The four-part harmony is pure. The balance of the tune,

namely,  had better be treated in diminuendo. Such a reduction

of the Great Organ may be effected thus: at 1, Mixture off; 2, Trumpet off; 3, Open Diapason, sixteen feet off (or Bourdon); 4, both Twelfth and Fifteenth off, the Swell being meantime closed. Should there be reason for a more sudden diminuendo, the following would answer: 1, Mixture and Trumpet off; 2, Twelfth and Fifteenth off; 3, Open Diapason, sixteen feet, or Bourdon off; 4, Swell Reeds and Mixtures off. In rapid diminuendos, stops may be removed on both the accented and unaccented parts of the measure. (See note, bottom of page 23.)

In church-playing, custom seems to have sanctioned beginning the tune by allowing the pedal-tone to be heard first before the chord is taken upon the manuals. The custom of slightly prolonging the pedal-note at the close of a piece prevails to a still greater extent. This seems to be justified on the ground that it is satisfactory to the ear to hear, at the last moment, the fundamental tone upon which the piece has been built up. In doing this, care must be taken to shut off the Pedal Coupler so that at the last moment the sixteen-foot tone only is heard. If stops of higher pitch (belonging to the Pedal Organ itself) have been drawn, they must be retired before the sixteen-foot tone ceases.

Pedal-note be-  
fore and after  
the tune.

Occasionally when a sort of "dying-away" effect, partly of the echo description, is desired from the Organ after the voices have ceased, it can be effectively accomplished thus:

Exceptional  
close.

## EXAMPLE 21.

\* Voices cease here

Gr. *f*

Swell open *mf*

1

3

Close Sw. very gradually, and reduce stops of Sw. and Ped. Org. to *pp*

2

The left hand shifts to the Swell which enters unheard at 1, being covered by the Great Organ. At 2, the Pedal to Great Coupler should be withdrawn. This can only be done here by means of a pedal

expressly for the purpose, with which nearly all modern instruments are provided. If the student's instrument unfortunately lacks this, the left hand must quickly remove the coupler before taking the chord upon the Swell. This treatment not unfrequently comes into play most usefully in accompaniment itself.

Referring to Example 16 and the remarks that follow concerning diminuendo by means of stops, a few words may not be out of place here respecting an apparently similar instance in Example 21 at "3." Important differences will be detected on closer examination.

1. The chord is here sustained upon the Swell and not upon the Great Organ. The local position of the Swell Pipes within the Organ and their relative power produce far less abruptness in reducing the stops than in case of the Great Organ.

2. In Example 21, the sustained tone is supposed to come at the end of a piece where the rhythm has become firmly established, and the reduction of stops on the first beat of each measure serves to maintain that rhythm to the close.

3. The diminuendo of the Swell itself, by means of the Swell Pedal, both helps the rhythm, and, properly managed, checks possible abruptness.

## EXAMPLE 22.

Gr. *f*

Coupler off

This ending is given as nearly as may be expressed in notes, and may be termed the "downward roll," as the effect to be produced is not that of a measured arpeggio.

The chord must, as it were, sink away suddenly and disappear, leaving only the momentary prolongation of the pedal-tone. To this end, the fingers must be

removed with rapidity and great precision.

This and the former example are given as illustrations of certain means employed to avoid an abrupt close, such as is produced by simultaneously taking hands and feet off the instrument, and are effects peculiar to the Organ. On the other hand, multitudes of examples might be cited where the abruptness of close referred to is precisely the effect to be sought for as characterizing the composition. One illustration of this will suffice.

## EXAMPLE 23.

Allegro

Ho - san - na in ex - cel - - sis.

*ff*

In examples similar to this (the ending of the "Sanctus" of Mozart's Requiem Mass), any prolongation of tone, through a hold upon the pedal or otherwise, would be manifestly out of place.

The dexterity (which it is hoped this chapter will assist the student in acquir-

Judgment  
in application  
of means.

ing) might be carried to such a degree that a change of combination or effect might be possible in nearly every measure of a moderate movement. It must not be forgotten, however, that a realizing sense of varying conditions—in a word, good taste—governs the use of these means. This is the real artistic law, and no written studies, illustrations, nor even hearing good model performances, can teach it if the germ be not latent in the pupil. Thus it is a matter of course that effects like Examples 21 and 22 are not to be appended to the end of every or every other composition.

It now remains for the pupil, according to the measure of his talent, to make practical the hints that are contained in this chapter, by such practice as shall enable him to free either hand in all compositions of moderate difficulty and tempo.

## EXAMPLE 21.

\* Voices cease here

Gr. *f*

Swell open *mf*

1

3

Close Sw very gradually, and reduce stops of Sw. and Ped Org to *pp*

2

The left hand shifts to the Swell which enters unheard at 1, being covered by the Great Organ. At 2, the Pedal to Great Coupler should be withdrawn. This can only be done here by means of a pedal

expressly for the purpose, with which nearly all modern instruments are provided. If the student's instrument unfortunately lacks this, the left hand must quickly remove the coupler before taking the chord upon the Swell. This treatment not unfrequently comes into play most usefully in accompaniment itself.

Stop and  
Swell diminu-  
endo

Referring to Example 16 and the remarks that follow concerning diminuendo by means of stops, a few words may not be out of place here respecting an apparently similar instance in Example 21 at "3." Important differences will be detected on closer examination.

1. The chord is here sustained upon the Swell and not upon the Great Organ. The local position of the Swell Pipes within the Organ and their relative power produce far less abruptness in reducing the stops than in case of the Great Organ.

2. In Example 21, the sustained tone is supposed to come at the end of a piece where the rhythm has become firmly established, and the reduction of stops on the first beat of each measure serves to maintain that rhythm to the close.

3. The diminuendo of the Swell itself, by means of the Swell Pedal, both helps the rhythm, and, properly managed, checks possible abruptness.

"Downward  
roll"

## EXAMPLE 22.

Gr. *f*

1

Coupler off

This ending is given as nearly as may be expressed in notes, and may be termed the "downward roll," as the effect to be produced is not that of a measured arpeggio.

The chord must, as it were, sink away suddenly and disappear, leaving only the momentary prolongation of the pedal-tone. To this end, the fingers must be

removed with rapidity and great precision.

This and the former example are given as illustrations of certain means employed to avoid an abrupt close, such as is produced by simultaneously taking hands and feet off the instrument, and are effects peculiar to the Organ. On the other hand, multitudes of examples might be cited where the abruptness of close referred to is precisely the effect to be sought for as characterizing the composition. One illustration of this will suffice.

## EXAMPLE 23.

The musical score is for a piano accompaniment. It is in 3/4 time, marked *Allegro*. The key signature has two sharps (F# and C#). The melody is in the right hand, and the bass line is in the left hand. The lyrics are "Ho - san - na in ex - cel - sis". The score includes a forte (*ff*) dynamic marking. The notation shows various chords and single notes, with some notes beamed together. The piece ends with a double bar line.

In examples similar to this (the ending of the "Sanctus" of Mozart's Requiem Mass), any prolongation of tone, through a hold upon the pedal or otherwise, would be manifestly out of place.

The dexterity (which it is hoped this chapter will assist the student in acquir-

Judgment  
in application  
of means.

ing) might be carried to such a degree that a change of combination or effect might be possible in nearly every measure of a moderate movement. It must not be forgotten, however, that a realizing sense of varying conditions—in a word, good taste—governs the use of these means. This is the real artistic law, and no written studies, illustrations, nor even hearing good model performances, can teach it if the germ be not latent in the pupil. Thus it is a matter of course that effects like Examples 21 and 22 are not to be appended to the end of every or every other composition.

It now remains for the pupil, according to the measure of his talent, to make practical the hints that are contained in this chapter, by such practice as shall enable him to free either hand in all compositions of moderate difficulty and tempo.



## CHAPTER IV.

---

### ACCOMPANIMENT OF QUARTET CHOIRS.

Opposition to  
Quartet  
Choirs ; their  
musical limi-  
tation

At a recent clerical convocation, one of the reverend delegates remarked, in effect, that " America was the only country on the face of the globe where churches entrusted their songs of praise to four individuals." This is unfortunately the fact, although the true reason for deprecating it does not lie *merely* in the theological idea which the speaker had in mind ; for, it might be replied, that many of our denominations delegate their prayers to one individual, who may or may not represent the aspirations of his hearers. At all events, opposition to quartet choirs may be based upon purely musical grounds. Quartet singing *alone* narrows down the scope of much good music composed for church service, and excludes the possibility of much contrast in musical effect. It suffers especially from being incapable of those large, dignified effects which are within the scope of even a moderate-sized chorus. We do not propose, however, to argue the much-discussed topic of Quartet *versus* Chorus Choirs. We have simply to deal with the fact that the former exist, and, whatever the signs of the future may be, they unfortunately form at present the majority.

Difference  
of treatment  
required

To accompany them properly requires different modes of treatment, and this treatment (as a matter of study) finds constant use in the accompaniment of Anthems. The class of tunes especially appropriate to Quartet use requires far more dexterity in handling the instrument than the plain Chorales. It is evident that when only four voices are employed, individual defects or weaknesses are easily noted. Thus it becomes here the peculiar duty of the organist to conceal or overcome the same, as far as may be, through his playing. On the other hand, individual singers have individual merits as well as defects. These merits of voice and style need to be placed in a favorable light, so as to be recognized as such, and to this end a good accompanist contributes much. Neither does singer nor player, in thus presenting the best points of his or her talent for the benefit of the sanctuary, necessarily do any thing out of consonance with the place or occasion. A large majority of the individuals who constantly have the quotation, " Sing with the spirit," upon their tongues, fail to complete the text, " and with the understanding also." Thus the conditions of accompanying a few voices, in music of a more elaborate character than that already considered, become a matter of far greater intricacy. This is true to such an extent that we must content ourselves with but comparatively few hints, where we would gladly say much under less varying conditions—trusting that the pupil's talent may be such as to bear much fruit from but little seed here sown.

*N. B—It must not be forgotten that much that is classified, for convenience' sake, under other heads, will be found to bear upon the subject of Quartet accompaniment with nearly the same significance as the suggestions which immediately follow.* Classification

It is useless to attempt to draw the exact line which shall divide tunes suited to Quartet from those adapted to Chorus Choirs. It will depend largely upon the training and natural voices of a given Chorus Choir as to how far its repertory may encroach upon that of the Quartet. In general, however, the *character* of the tune may be said to govern this quite as much as the relative difficulty. Thus the following example, although simple, is essentially a quartet tune, and would lose rather than gain in character if sung by a chorus:

EXAMPLE 24 (AS WRITTEN AND SUNG).

Far from my thoughts, vain world, be-gone, Let my re-lig-ious hours a-lone:

From flesh and sense I would be free, And hold *dim* com-mun-ion Lord, with Thee.

BEETHOVEN

We now give one of the many possible forms of accompanying the above, that the reader, having it before his eyes, may consider with us the points that follow:

EXAMPLE 25.

Sw Org. *p*

Gt Org.


*f*

stops, ad lib

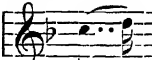

*cres* Sw. Reduce stops. Sw

16 feet

Variation  
of the Accom-  
paniment  
from the writ-  
ten form of  
the tune.

At *a*, comparing Examples 24 and 25, we see that the Soprano begins thus : 

which thematic bit is repeated frequently in different forms throughout the tune. Now, few Sopranos will give this and its repetition with perfect accuracy as to time in every instance

(nor is it necessary), but will make it sometimes  and again  approx-

imately. In a word, even the practised accompanist will find a difficulty in passing from the note *c* to *d* precisely with the singer, but may still be holding the *c* when the singer passes to *d*, or, on the contrary, may anticipate the voice.

Although a slight matter in one sense, and frequently unperceived by the player seated at the keys, yet the farther off in the building (that is, reasonably so) the critical listener is removed, the more apparent becomes the discrepancy.

The treatment given at *a*, Example 25, will wholly obviate this, and the other points in the tune where the same principle obtains will be easily recognized by comparison with Example 24.

A subdued accompaniment is, of course, assumed, whereby the *melodic* difference with the Soprano is not perceived, while the *harmonic* support to the voices remains the same.

"Pedal  
abuse."

At *b*, we call attention to the pedals being unemployed, and the bass played upon another manual with a register (or registers) of eight feet. Here a few words as to what may be termed *pedal abuse*.

A young organist, especially if he has begun to acquire some pedal execution, seeing the pedals and their stops before him, is very apt to think that they are there for use, and accordingly uses them (that is, the sixteen-foot stops) *all the time*. This is very faulty, especially in Quartet accompaniment, besides being opposed to all principles of contrast. These deep basses, continuously employed, weary the ear, and impart a heaviness to the performance which should by no means characterize it. Besides, these low tones are of incomparable effect when they are introduced *after* a certain continuance of eight-foot tone.

Employment  
of eight-foot  
Manual Stops  
in the lower  
octave instead  
of the Pedal.

In addition to this cessation of all pedal tone, it must also be noted, and practically tested, that many of the eight-foot stops used in the lower octave (thus giving the sixteen-foot tone as compared with the vocal notation) will have a much better effect in Quartet accompaniment than using the pedal sixteen-foot stops *as the notation stands*, and an infinitely better effect than the same employed in the lower octave. The reason of this will be found in the fact that the eight-foot stops of the manual, employed in the lower octave, give a more delicate foundation than the sixteen-foot stops used in the upper (pedal) octave. The eight-foot stops have weight enough to serve as a foundation in tunes of this class. They assimilate better with the single bass voice, which by this treatment is left to move freely within its own octave. Lastly, they are more definite in their quality, viewed as a means of accompaniment of this class of tunes. There is no objection to the use of the *pedal key-board*, for convenience' sake, in such cases, provided that the manuals are coupled with it and the sixteen-foot stops withdrawn.

Manual-bass  
in octaves.

At *c*, the left hand gives the octave instead of the single tone, in order to assure the intonation of the bass voice. The fall of the diminished, following the perfect, fourth (*a—e* and *f—c* #) is somewhat difficult, especially if the voice be ponderous, or if the singer has a cold—is "out of voice," etc.

This leads us to speak of a more radical mode of assistance in such a case as that presupposed, and is to be taken as an exception.

EXAMPLE 26.



Here the right hand plays the accompaniment upon the Choir Melodia (or the Great Organ Dulciana or Stopped Diapason). The pedals are coupled to the Choir or Great Organ with a soft Pedal Bourdon or Dulciana, sixteen feet, drawn. At the critical points *a* and *b*, the organist places his left hand upon the Swell which has a reed-stop drawn (Oboe or Trumpet of eight feet). The entrance of this new quality of tone will almost always restore a wavering intonation—otherwise the case is hopeless. It is to be understood that the entrance of the reed tone is to be qualified as to power by the use of the Swell-Pedal, so that its entrance be not too abrupt. Once heard, however, the reed tone must, for the sake of symmetry, be carried through the phrase, as far as *d*, Example 25.

At *e*, Example 25, the Pedal sixteen feet may be added preliminary to the following crescendo. Coming here upon the unaccented part of the measure, it forms no real exception to the principles laid down for adding stops. Here it gives, thus drawn, a melodic figure, namely, besides not being open to the objection which occurs when stops of higher pitch are added against the rhythmic accent.



At *f*, compare with Example 24. The moving quarter-notes in the accompaniment do not here conflict with the Soprano, as they belong to the same chord.

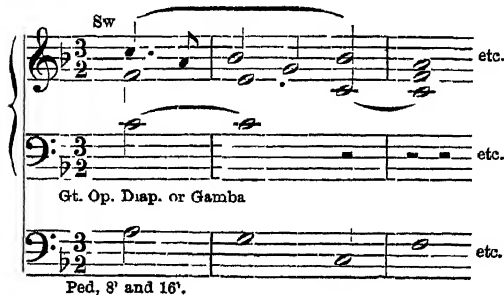
At *g*, it will be noticed that the accompaniment sustains, while the melody moves.

At *h*, the accompaniment moves (within the chord), while the melody sustains. Such treatment is preferable in many cases to actual progression with the voices, often lending both fulness and steadiness to the effect.

Turning to the third strain of Example 24, it will be seen that the Tenor voice repeats seven times the tone *C*, and that in a sustained movement. This is simplicity itself to the eye, and at an easy part of the Tenor compass. It is none the less true that many of our Tenor friends find just such a prolongation of a given tone difficult to sing in tune—the difficulty probably lying in the shifting harmonies around them while they have the inner part. Calling the singer's attention to this will not unfrequently cause him to *sing it worse* through nervousness. The accompanist may help him thus :

Assisting  
the Tenor in  
intonation.

EXAMPLE 27.



or the Great Organ stop may be first introduced later. If immediately before the *B $\sharp$* , the cadence must be completed. (See Example 24.)

Again recurring to the third strain of Example 24, we find what may be termed a *natural* crescendo and diminuendo. There may be other shades of expression elsewhere, but in nearly every tune of this class we find some one strain where the crescendo and decrescendo seem the only natural expression

Of adapta-  
tion of Words  
to the Music.

of the phrase. Such is the third strain of Example 24. We would call the attention of

students to the fact that where such crescendos or decrescendos occur—and as a rule, with exceptions, they will be found when voices rise to a higher part of their compass—all adaptations of words to such tunes must follow suit and increase in emotional intensity. As regards accent, the words must yield to the music in every case, for the simple reason that the music *can not* yield to the words. We may vary inflection and accent to a good degree in reading without materially injuring the sense. On the other hand, the musical phrase, as it stands written, is inflexible. The rule to be deduced from this is a simple one—"See to it that, in adaptation of words to tunes, or tunes to words, they *do* agree." A "Long-metre" tune and "Long-metre" verse may even agree perfectly as to general sentiment, the number of notes may coincide perfectly with the number of syllables, and yet be faulty as to accents common to both. This fault, which unfortunately can not be wholly rectified in the setting of our hymns to music, might be greatly modified for the better if organists and choir-directors would but give more time and thought to the subject. This comes, properly enough, under the head of "Quartet tunes," as the discrepancy alluded to will be more frequently noticed and felt in tunes of this class. Example 24 may be considered a good adaptation. Sentiment of words and style of music certainly agree, but we will give the second verse of this hymn, and it will be seen that the adaptation is not perfect. For brevity's sake, we simply give the melody.

## EXAMPLE 28.

\*



2. My heart grows warm with ho - ly fire, And kin - dles with a pure de - sire  
To see thy face, to taste thy love, And feel thine in - fluence from a - bove.

Relations of  
Musical Ca-  
dences to  
punctuation  
of text

At \* the music makes a complete cadence, closing in the tonic. This corresponds literally with the period in punctuation. But neither period nor comma occurs in the text at this point, so that the sentiment expressed is equivalent to "My heart kindles with a pure desire to see thy face," etc. It is the so-called half or dominant cadence which is here wanted in the music to make it approach a true rendering of the text; and yet the above is by no means so aggravated a specimen as many that occur. This is the fault into which some uneducated (and therefore "would-be") composers fall in setting the words of the *Te Deum*—"To Thee, Cherubim and Seraphim continually do cry," with a complete cadence (period), or a "deceptive" one to the minor, as if it were a matter of *grief* instead of a declaration that "Cherubim and Seraphim continually do cry, Hallelujah!" etc.

The young accompanist, who really wishes to excel, will find in the words themselves most useful hints as regards adaptation and registration.

Several tunes of "quartet" character follow, which it is hoped will find practical use, as well as illustrate the subject.

## EXAMPLE 29.

L. M.

Sopr. 1 O Thou to whose all - search - ing sight, The dark - ness shin - eth as the light,

Alto. *p*

Tenor. 4. When ris - ing floods my soul o'er-flow, When sinks my heart in waves of woe,

Bass.

Org. *Swell* *a* *b* *Man* *Ped.*

Search, prove my heart, it looks to Thee, O burst its bonds, and set it free.

*cres. ed accel.* *f* *rall.*

Je - sus, thy kind - ly aid im - part And raise my head, and cheer my heart.

*sf* *pp*

*c* *d* *e* *f* *Gr* *g* *h*

*Ped.*

Arr from WEBER

D B

*Example 29, a.*—The accompaniment given in the first and second measures is preferable to playing the voice parts literally, as it allows the Soprano perfect freedom of utterance in these two measures. The registration should at first be very light, just enough to secure the intonation: Swell, Stopped Diapason, and Salicional, for instance, or the latter only. If the Swell contains a divided Bourdon (which should always be the case if the Swell has a sixteen-foot stop allotted to it), the “Bourdon-Bass” should also be drawn. As the division of the stop occurs at “four-foot C” (first bass note of Example 29), the sixteen-foot tone will not be given by the Bourdon Bass

Value of a  
divided Bour-  
don in the  
Swell Organ.

during the first two measures, as the downward compass of the divided stop begins with the half-step below this note. At the G (third measure), a delicate sixteen-foot tone will make itself heard in the bass only, and, coinciding with the change of harmony to the dominant seventh, is of extremely good effect. This can not be produced if the Bourdon is undivided, as the stop would then affect the whole manual range. This division of the Swell sixteen-foot stop is exceedingly valuable in soft effects where a low bass is required, producing a more delicate tone than the pedal-stops of sixteen feet.

At *b*, the Pedal sixteen-foot tone enters for two measures to assist the crescendo. It also offers opportunity to free the left hand if necessary, although the Swell Pedal may furnish sufficient crescendo here. For the contrary reason, the Pedal ceases during the last two measures of this strain.

At *c*, the Pedal again resumes, giving the left hand ample opportunity to add stops preparatory to and during the coming crescendo.

Balance in  
crescendo  
obtained  
through a cer-  
tain use of  
Swell Pedal.

In this connection, the pupil should become expert in the following exercise, which will be often found useful in passages of this kind. Suppose the Swell half open, the right hand upon the key-board, the left upon the register to be added to the first combination. As the stop is drawn, simultaneously meet it with the Swell Pedal, *closing* the Swell more or less in proportion to the power of the stop added. Reeds will require the most on account of their quality. Thus the closing of the Swell balances to a good extent the addition of the stop or stops, and affords subsequent opportunity for further crescendo by means of the Swell Pedal. Of course every advantage that can be afforded the rhythmic entrance of stops, according to the suggestions of Chapter III., must here be employed.

At *d*, the remarks governing the form of accompaniment at *a* hold good.

At *e*, the Great to Pedal Coupler is drawn—the Great Organ having been previously prepared with, say Open and Stopped Diapasons, and possibly Flute, four feet. At this point, it is evident that the bass only will be affected by the Great Organ (through the Coupler), making clear the chromatic progression of the bass. Should a very sudden and powerful crescendo be required, drawing the stops might be reserved until this point, *e*. The Swell would then be opened rhythmically, and the stops likewise added on each of the four beats of the measure, thus:



At *f*, the Pedal Organ may be strengthened by the addition of the powerful Double Diapason, sixteen feet.

Climax and  
Diminuendo.

At *g* occurs the climax. The left hand passes to the Great Organ at the last quarter-note of the previous measure, and at *g* takes a full chord. This chord is not to be held out as its notation would indicate, but is to disappear at once in a "downward roll." (See Chapter III., remarks under Example 22.)

At *h*, the right foot closes the Swell instantly upon the conclusion of this "roll" (which must be cut short), while the left hand shuts off the Pedal Double Diapason, and reduces the Swell rapidly to *piano*. This may seem a good deal to do within the limits of one or, at the most, two measures. The movement, however, is slow, and no great amount of practice will make such a diminuendo seem like child's play upon an organ with which the player is familiar. The effect is certainly excellent if smoothly done.

It must not be forgotten that these are not effects in *solo-playing*, but that the voices continue meantime, and do not make any thing like so sudden a decrescendo. Consequently they aid in equalizing the effect to the listener at a distance. On the one hand, they cover possible abruptness in the accompanimental treatment; on the other, the accompaniment yields to the purely vocal effect, the climax-point once passed.

Qualifying effect of the Voices upon the Accompaniment.

The mental conception of how a given organ combination sounds at a distance from the keys—whether in vocal combination or by itself—must be acquired by every good accompanist. Some instruments “carry over,” as it is termed, when the pipes produce their true effect at some distance from the instrument. Of such organs it is safe to say, that in many pieces of a soft character, voices and accompaniment only sound perfectly balanced (to the congregation) when the accompanist hears but an occasional note of his instrument or literally nothing.

Conception of organ effect remote from the player.

## EXAMPLE 30.

*S. M.*

1. A charge to keep I have, A God to glo - ri - fy,— A nev - er - dy - ing soul to

2 Arm me with jeal - ous care, As in thy sight to live; And, oh! thy ser - vant, Lord, pre -

save, And fit .. it for the sky: From youth to ho - a - ry age, My

pare, A strict .. ac - count to give. Help me to watch and pray, And

*Ped.* *Ped.* *Rit.* *p* *rit.* *pp* *p* *p* *d* *pp* *e* *f* *Man.* *Ped.*



Arr from BEETHOVEN.

call - ing to ful - fil, O may it all my pow'rs en - gage, To do my Mas - ter's will

*mf poco animato* *rall.*

on thy - self re - ly, As - sured if I my trust be - tray, I shall for - ev - er die.

*mf* *pp* *h*

Ped. Ped. Man.

The accompaniment to Example 30, as here experimentally given, leads to the following comments:

Accent. The registration, as in the previous example, should be quite subordinate to the voices at the beginning of the tune. At *a*, it will be noticed that the Pedal enters on the accent of the first full measure, and not on the previous quarter-note. This is in order to help the accent, with which the tune may properly be said to begin.

In the second stanza, we have an illustration of that disagreement (already alluded to) between the accent of the musical phrase and that of the words. This is too frequently allowed to occur in adaptation of hymns to music. (See comments to Example 28.)

The natural accent of this stanza is, "Arm me with jealous care." As forced by the music, it becomes, "Arm *me*," etc. This, as an expression of individual feeling, might possibly be allowed to remain in this instance. At all events, it may easily be rectified, by letting the voices begin with the full measure, thus:

Arm me with jeal - ous care, etc.

This, on the other hand, would give an impossible accentuation for the first verse. Where such discrepancies occur, the tune should be carefully examined to see if a slight omission, like the previous instance, will not help the case.

At Example 28, it will be noted that the cause of disagreement was a *harmonic* one—produced by the complete cadence of the music to an unfinished sentence of the text. In Example 30, the disagreement is purely *melodic*—produced by simple accentuation.

At *b*, we have a crescendo, accomplished both by the Swell Pedal and by the addition of stops to the Swell, if desired. The left hand is freed for this purpose by taking the passage in close harmony. This is a good example of what we have termed "natural crescendo." (See comments on Example 24, but following Example 27.) It will be observed that this particularly suits the sentiment of the first stanza—the second to a less degree.

At *c*, the Pedal ceases, together with the harmonies of the right hand. Here the peculiar acceleration (*not of tempo*) of the voices, by means of notes of lesser value, is such that the execution of this passage by good singers will sound at once freer and more concise, if virtually unaccompanied. The organist has, meantime, an opportunity to reduce the Swell combination.

Without  
accompani-  
ment.

At *d*, the organist merely *supports* the voices, not playing their parts in unison. It is simply absurd to attempt to follow voices in a passage like this. The combined result would very rarely be a united one, nor, if it were so, would the effect be as good. The voices should be left in absolute freedom as to melodical progression, but supported harmonically. Singers who can not execute such a passage in tune, etc., without having their parts literally played (rehearsals possibly excepted), have no business to sing such tunes at all. Even the four voices must not execute the first half of this measure slavishly in time. The Tenor must adapt himself to the Soprano as in a duet, and Alto and Bass watch, and listen carefully to the other two parts.

Of Support  
without play-  
ing the voice-  
parts

At *e*, the chord is taken in the accompaniment in preference to the single (bass) tone, on account of the slight break, made by all the voices here taking breath in anticipation of the coming phrase.

At *f*, the crescendo effect will have to be principally accomplished by the voices, as the Swell has now been reduced to *pp* as to stops, as well as closed. Besides this, the same soft accompaniment is required in the following phrase. Upon a three-manual Organ the half measure preceding *e* (with the following chord) may be taken upon the Choir Dulciana. While the Choir Organ is thus employed, a few stops may be added to the Swell, which is resumed at, and can thus support, the crescendo of the following phrase. In this case the line, "My calling to fulfil," may again be played upon the Choir Organ, and the Swell resumed at *g*.

At *g*; if the Organ has but two manuals, stops may be added to the Swell, not only upon the accent of the measure, but also upon each of the three quarter-notes. (See Example 29, under *e*.)

At *h*, the decrescendo at the close of the previous phrase having been accomplished by gradually closing the Swell, the organist has now opportunity to reduce the stops likewise. He may even shut off the most powerful stop (of the combination supposed to be drawn at present) at the beginning of the previous measure, as the tone *E* is doubled and can be omitted from the Tenor-part.

The voices had better be left to themselves here, for reasons virtually similar to those stated at *d*.

The single *piuississimo* chord introduced in this measure (*h*), is for the purpose of insuring (not restoring) the intonation. This the soft manual-bass already aids to a good extent. In such cases the accompanist, one of whose first requisites is a good ear, must listen intently, and if the voices are not in the most perfect tune, such a chord is, of all things, that which he must avoid introducing. A bad case of "out of tune" is not supposed, but a "suspicion" of a downward tendency. Should such occur, the comparative remoteness of the accompanying bass—especially with a soft-manual Bourdon—renders this less noticeable. The possible means by which an accompanist may help singers in case of false intonation will be considered subsequently under the head of the Swell Organ. (Chapter X., page 116.)

Intonation

## EXAMPLE 31 (7s DOUBLE.)

*Andante Moderato*

1. Sav-iour, when in dust to Thee, Low we bow th'a-dor - ing knee, When, re-pent-ant, to the skies Scarce we

*p* *cres - ed accel.....p*

3 By thine hour of dark des-pair, By thine a - go - ny of prayer, By the pur-ple robe of scorn, By thy

*Andante Moderato*

Sw *p* *acc.* *1. 2. 3.* *pp*

Mau *Ped.*

lift our streaming eyes, Scarce we lift our stream-ing eyes; O, by all thy pains and woe, Suf-fered

*all.*

wounds, thy crown of thorns, by thy wounds, thy crown of thorns; By thy cross, thy pangs and cries, By thy

*a* *Ped.* *Man.*

Arr. from R. FRANZ.

once for man be-low, Bending from thy throne on high, Hear our solemn lit - a - ny, . . . Hear our solemn lit - a - ny.

*cres. e poco accel.* *pp* *rall*

per-fect sac-ri-fice: Je-sus, look with pity-ing eye, Hear our solemn lit - a - ny, . . . . . Hear our solemn lit - a - ny.

*f* *g* *h* *Adagio.* *e* *cres. e poco accel.* *f* *pp* *i*

Ped. Man.

*Example 31.*—The accompaniment here begins in close harmony. This form was necessitated by the wish to begin with eight-foot stops only, without pedals, and thus to avoid the stretch of a tenth (A flat to C), which would occur in the third chord of the first full measure. The pedals are supposed to be coupled to the Swell, and possibly to the Great Organ Stopped Diapason; if a three-manual Organ, to the Choir Melodia in preference. No Pedal-stop is supposed drawn at first. (In this connection, see again Example 25, note *b*.)

At *b*, Example 31; the right hand assuming the harmony, the left passes quickly to the Pedal Bourdon or Dulciana of sixteen feet, which is drawn at *c*.

As the opening registration was very light, and the Swell is now closed from the diminuendo preceding *b*, stops may be added respectively at the figures 1, 2, 3, together with a crescendo, by means of the Swell Pedal. Whether an addition at 1 or 1, 2 (without that at 3) will or will not prove sufficient, depends upon the voices accompanied and the character of the instrument employed. The Swell is quickly closed at the *pianissimo* following 3.

At *d*, the right hand again assuming the harmony, the Swell-stops can be reduced, if necessary, for the accompaniment of the solo voice which follows.

At *e*, the Pedal resuming (now with the sixteen feet already drawn), enables the left hand to add stops at the points *f* and *g*.



At *h*, the diminuendo begins immediately after striking the chord. It must be gradual, however, and may terminate with the "downward roll" previously referred to. In such case the lower B flat may be added to the chord. Care should be taken if the "roll" is here introduced, that it terminates promptly with the voices.

At *i*, the following manner of closing is suggested, as good in many cases of a *pianissimo* ending where the voices have been heard without accompaniment immediately previous.

*Pianissimo*  
sixteen-foot  
ending.

During the preceding rests the organist reduces the Swell to Stopped Diapason only. The Swell is, of course, wholly closed. The *right hand* plays the low E flat, the left resting in

readiness upon the Bourdon register of the Swell. This stop is drawn simultaneously with the sixteenth note that follows. As the voices die away, the Stopped Diapason is shut off, leaving the Bourdon to linger alone for an instant. The effect of this addition of sixteen-foot tone and

subsequent withdrawal of eight feet may be thus expressed:  The notes played are those of Example 31. In some organs, it might be preferable to take the Bourdon at once, which would then be played: 

### EXAMPLE 32 (8s AND 7s DOUBLE).

*Con moto*

1 Sav - our, source of ev - ry bless - ing, Tune my heart to grate - ful lays Streams of mer - cy, nev - er ceas - ing,

*p* *cres* *f*

2. Thou didst seek me when a stranger, Wand'ring from the fold of God; Thou, to save my soul from dan - ger,

*Con moto.*

Sw *p* *a* *Gr.*

Ped. Sw. Ped.

Call for cease - less songs of praise. Teach me some me - lo - dious mea - sure, Sang by rap - tured saints a - bove;

*dim.* *p* *mf*

Didst re - deem me with thy blood: By thy hand restored, de - fend - ed, Safe thro' life thus far I've come:

*c* *Sw.* *mf* *a* *p* *e*

Man. Ped.

D. B.

Fill my soul with sa - cred plea - sure, While I sing re - deem - ing love, re - deem - ing love

And, O Lord, when life is end - ed, Bring me to my heav'n - ly home, my heav'n - ly home

*p* *cres.* *f* *dim.* *p*

*f* *Gr* *Sw* *g* *pp*

*Ped Sw* *Mau*

*Example 31.*—In the beginning of this tune, the Pedal Bourdon is supposed to be coupled to the Swell.

At *a*, the Great to Pedal Coupler is to be drawn. If the Organ possess no mechanical means of doing this, the harmony easily admits of three parts being here played by the right hand, thus freeing the left for this purpose.

At *b*, both hands change to the Great Organ, which must be registered not to exceed *mezzo-forte* (that is, *mezzo-forte* as accompaniment for four voices), and coupled with the Swell.

At *c*, on removing the hands from the Great Manual, the Pedal Coupler to the same is removed. The accompaniment then returns to the Swell for the decrescendo and the following phrase.

At *d*, the Pedal is used to end the phrase, but, it will be remembered, is coupled only with the Swell.

At *e*, the vocal bass is supported by the manual octaves, the Pedal being reserved for the following crescendo.

At *f*, close harmony is employed, at which point the Pedal Open Diapason, sixteen feet, is added for the coming *forte* passage, and the Pedal to Great Coupler added. The hands then pass to the Great Organ, the asterisks \* \* \* denoting a sudden reduction of stops of both Great and Swell. The manner of accomplishing this has already been treated of. The left hand can be spared for the purpose, as will be seen.

The Pedal Open Diapason, sixteen feet, is also shut off at the beginning of the fourth measure of this phrase.

At *g*, the *left hand* passes to the Swell at the moment the last chord is played upon the Great Organ. This is an application in accompaniment of Example 21, Chapter III.

Lack of space forbids our accompanying the following tunes with suggestive comments. If, however, we have been successful in making clear the points at issue in the examples thus far given, the student should now experience no difficulty in finding a suitable form of accompani-

ment and mode of registration for them. It should not be forgotten that the form of accompaniment given in the previous examples is by no means the only correct one.\* It is just this possible elasticity of treatment which makes the study interesting, profitable, and artistic.

Recapitulation.

To recapitulate: besides considering the character of the voices to be accompanied, and the characteristic virtues or vices of the particular instrument at his command, the accompanist should carefully observe the sentiment of the words, their accent and varying inflections. This last item furnishes, in almost every case, a key to the required manner of performance. This is the reason why so many persons of limited execution, but of true æsthetic taste, really accompany *well*, and would accompany *better* if they possessed more technique. This is to be acquired by organ studies proper, and forms the broad foundation upon which the whole structure must rest.

This also solves the mystery why so many players of marked executive attainments are rather dreaded than desired as accompanists by singers.

Mental requisites

In Art, as in other matters, "union is strength"—that is, union of technique with taste. Technique, if lacking, may in most instances be acquired under proper instruction. Taste, if latent, must develop itself. It can not, properly speaking, be taught, but only influenced. The first requisite to its development is an active mind, and, as far as our work is concerned, complete freedom from the idea that the mere notes control the manner of an accompaniment in Church Music.

In the musical service of the church, the Organ is supposed to accompany and support the voices, not the voices the Organ. Too many of our accompanists seem to be laboring under the delusion that the latter relation is the proper one. In this connection, it may be said that *in a crescendo* the effect is often good when, *for a moment*, at a climax, the Organ exceeds due proportions as an accompaniment, but it must instantly subside.

The normal condition in an accompaniment must be artistic subordination, and is especially to be observed in accompanying a quartet of voices.

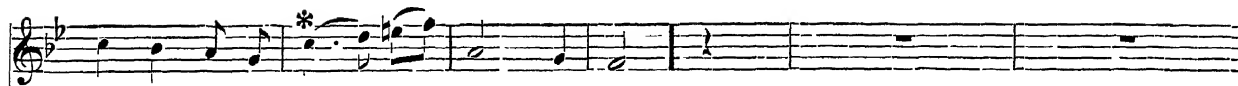
#### EXAMPLE 33 (8s AND 7s).

*Con moto Moderato*

Je - sus, who on Calv'ry's moun-tain, Poured thy pre-cious blood for me, Wash me in its heal-ing

*Con moto Moderato.*

\* In the following examples, the accompaniment given is, with few exceptions, merely the compressed voice parts. It does not then govern the *form and manner of execution*, which is left to the performer to adapt after the manner of the previous examples.

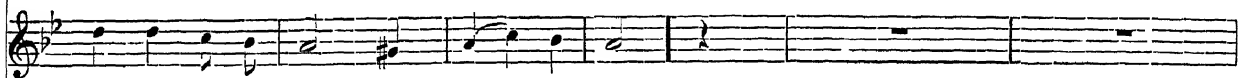


foun - tain, That my soul .. may spot - less be.

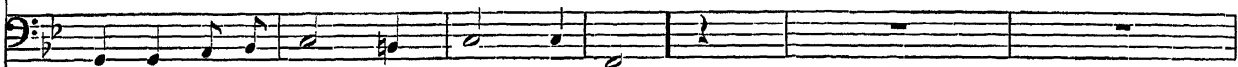


*dim* .....

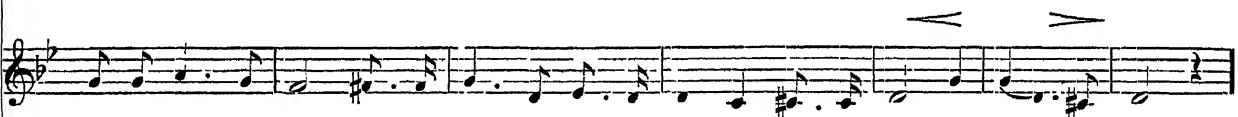
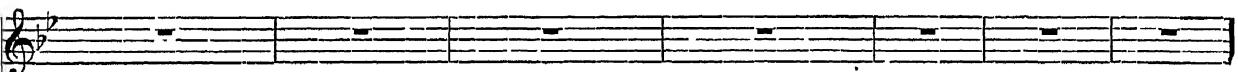
I have sinned, but oh! re - store me, For un -



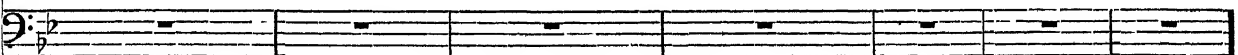
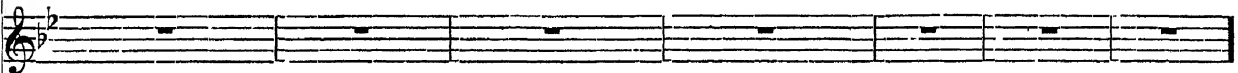
foun - tain, That my soul may spot - less be.



\* Accompaniment should not move with Soprano.



- less thou smile on me, Dark is all the world be - fore me, Dark - er yet e - ter - ni - ty!



Man.



*mf* *p*

In thy Word I hear thee say - ing, "Come, and I will give you rest," Glad the gra-cious call o -

*mf* *p*

In thy Word I hear thee say - ing, 'Come, and I will give you rest,' Glad the gra-cious call o -

*cres*

bey - ing, See I has - ten to thy breast. Grant, O grant thy Spir-it's teach-ing, That I may not go a-stray,

*cres.*

bey - ing, See I has - ten to thy breast. Grant, O grant thy Spir-it's teach-ing, That I may not go a-stray,

*f* *dim* *p* *D B*

Till the gates of Heav-en reach - ing, Earth and sun are passed a - way A - men, A - men.

*f* *dim* *p*

Till the gates of Heav-en reach - ing, Earth and sun are passed a - way A - men, A - men

*Gr.* *dim* *Sw*

## EXAMPLE 34.

*f* *Con Spirito.*

1. Hail to the Lord's a-noint-ed, Great Da-vid's greater Son; Hail, in the time ap-point-ed, His reign on earth be-gun. He

*f* *mp*

2. He shall descend like showers Up - on the fruitful earth; And love and joy, like flowers, Spring in his path to birth: Be -

*Gr. mf* *Sw.* *Gr.* *Sw.* *Gr. to Sw.* *mp*

comes to break op- pres-sion, To set the cap-tive free; To take a-way trans-gres-sion, And rule in e - qui - ty. He

*cres.* *f* *mp*

fore him on the mountains Shall peace, the herald, go: And righteousness, in fountains, From hill to val - ley flow. To

*mp* *sw*

comes with succor speed - y, To those who suf - fer wrong, To help the poor and need-y, And bid the weak be strong .To

*mf*

Him shall pray'r unceas - ing, And dai - ly vows as - cend: His kingdom still in - creasing, A kingdom without end: The

*mf* *Gr.*

give them songs for sighing, Their darkness turn to light, Whose souls condemn'd and dying. Were pre-cious in His sight

tide of time shall nev-er His cov-e-nant re-move, His name shall stand for-ev-er, That Name to us is love

*p* *D.B.*

## EXAMPLE 35 (L. M. 6 LINES).

1. As pant-ing in the sul-try beam, The hart de-sires the cool-ing stream, So to thy pres-ence,

4. Ah why, by pass-ing clouds op-prest, Should vex-ing tho'ts dis-tract thy breast? Turn, turn to Him in

*p* *Moderato*

Lord, I flee, So longs my soul, O God, for thee, A - thurst to taste thy liv - ing grace, And

ev - ry pain, Whom suppliants nev - er sought in vain; Thy strength in joy's ec - stat - ic day, Thy

see thy glo - ry' face to face. pass'd a - way. A - - - men, A - men.

A - - - - - men.

hope, when joy has pass'd a - way. A - - - - men, A - men.

A -

## EXAMPLE 36 (8s AND 7s).

1. Bless'd be thou, the God of Is - rael, Thou, our Fa - ther, and our Lord,

*mf*

2. Thine, O Lord, are power and great - ness, Glo - ry, vic - tory are thine own,

*Con Anima*

*mf*

Bless'd thy Ma - jes - ty . for - ev - er, Ev - er be.... thy name a - dored.

*p* *cres.* *ff*

All is thine in earth and hea - ven, O - ver all thy bound - less throne.

*p* *cres.* *f*

D. B.

In closing this chapter, a few words may not be amiss respecting an accomplishment which is extremely useful in quartet and solo accompaniment, but is unfortunately but little cultivated.

Transposi-  
tion.

We refer to Transposition.

When four persons constitute the choir, it would seem necessary that each one should always be "in voice." This, however, is rather the exception than the rule, especially in winter-time in our variable climate.

The organist should be able to assist the singers in performing their duty under such, to them, trying circumstances.

Let a Soprano or Tenor (these two voices more especially, except in case of Alto or Bass solos) come to church with a slight cold. The transposition of a given piece a half step lower may, under such circumstances, insure the performance of it *in tune*, when otherwise the result would be lamentable.

Ascertaining the Pitch required by certain voices

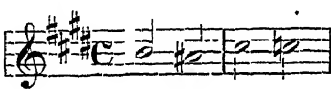
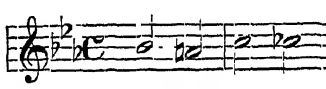
Again, let two quartet choirs of apparently equal ability as to vocal compass, quality of voices, etc., perform the same tune in the same key, one will frequently (perhaps we may say usually) harmonize better together than the other.

Now, transpose the tune a half step higher or lower for the inferior quartet, and the result is that it frequently sounds as well or better than the first quartet. This shows that a *certain* key fits a *certain* tune for *certain* voices. To discover this key is the duty of the organist in tunes of this class. It may very likely be the case that the key as written is the proper one, but the *fact* remains to be ascertained. This principle also obtains in accompanying congregational singing, many of the tunes at present in vogue running too high for true congregational use.


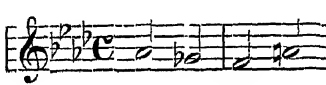
It can hardly be expected of the average accompanist that he qualify himself to transpose long and intricate anthems, abounding in modulations, etc. This requires an expert harmonist and much routine; but to transpose such examples as have here been given requires comparatively little study.

Mode of Practice in Transposition

The proper way to begin this practice is to take keys where the notes themselves do not change—that is, where they retain the same degree of the staff. As an example, transpose a piece in E major to E flat major. The “accidentals” which may occur in the piece to be thus transposed will then be simply reversed—that is, sharps will become naturals,\* naturals will become flats, and *vice versa*.

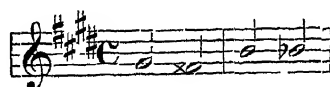
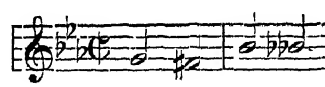
Thus:  equals 

and

EXAMPLE 37.  equals 

Double sharps will become single sharps, and double flats single flats, and *vice versa*.

#### EXAMPLE 38.

 equals 

Sufficient dexterity to easily command the above and similar transpositions is alone a great assistance to the voices under the conditions stated. Having conquered these thoroughly, the student may proceed to the more difficult transpositions, such as C to B, E to F#, etc.

Transpositions of more than a whole step will rarely, if ever, occur in Church Music.

---

\* In some modern works, the term “cancel” is used to denote this character, ♮, and commends itself as a more precise definition of the effect produced. See Cornell’s “Primer of Modern Tonality,” page 19, paragraph 19. G. Schirmer, New York.

## CHAPTER V.

---

### ACCOMPANIMENT OF THE CHANT.

IN the chant we have our simplest form of musical expression, and likewise of musical execution, as far as mere notes are concerned.

The matter becomes far from simple, however, when the player seeks to accompany the chant expressively—that is, in a manner suited to the varying sentiment of the words. By this is not meant a continual change of registration as a means of musical display, but the production of such variety as may truly aid in developing an intelligent rendering of the text. A long canticle is frequently sung to a very simple form of notes, involving the repetition of the same perhaps a dozen times or more. As the character of the words usually changes more or less during this time, it would seem that nothing would be more natural than to vary the accompaniment to suit. Such is not the case, however, with the majority of players. On the contrary, the average organist is more apt to increase the monotony of the musical repetition above alluded to than to aid in concealing it. To mitigate this monotony is certainly an important part of the organist's mission in chant accompaniment.

Variety in  
Chant Accom-  
paniment.

We can only explain this tolerated monotony, often met with among players of sufficient execution and considerable taste in other forms of accompaniment, upon the following hypothesis.

The music is indeed simple, but the ever-varying adaptation of the words to it requires an absorbing attention on the part of the player. Thus such accompanists are tied down to the notes to about the same extent as the beginner who is uncertain of the notes themselves, except by giving them the closest attention.

To get rid of this hindrance, only one cure is possible. The organist must so nearly know the words by heart as to feel himself sufficiently at ease to vary the accompaniment as desired.

Familiarity  
with Words;  
importance of

This is not difficult in the ordinary canticles (having the Episcopal service in mind), but if the entire "Psalter for the Day" is chanted, it would imply a good deal of labor. Yet the case of chanting the Psalter is precisely the one where a varied accompaniment is most desirable, on account of the length and variety of the individual psalms. An actual committing to memory is not necessary, but a thorough familiarity is absolutely indispensable, at least in case of the ordinary canticles.

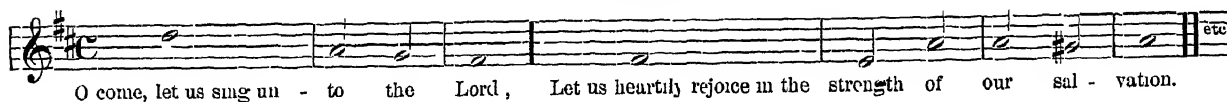
The organist, being then familiar with the words, is at liberty to apply to their proper rendering, and to the support of the voices, any of the means of accompaniment given in the



preceding chapters. We thus avoid giving more than a few musical examples under the present head.

The two constituent parts which make up a chant are the "recitative notes" and the "spoken tones."\*

## EXAMPLE 39.



The first and fourth measures of the above example illustrate the former, and the remaining measures (especially those containing half-notes) the latter.

Faults in  
Chanting.

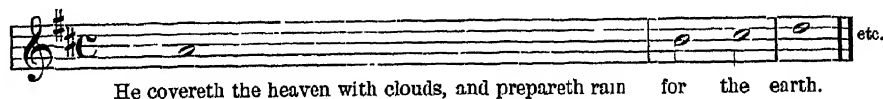
The faults most frequently met with in chanting are two in number: 1. Attempting to *sing* the chant. In a certain sense, chanting is not singing at all, but reading to given tones. 2. Hurrying the recitative and retarding the "spoken" (half) notes. Good chanting will always invert this mode of procedure, at least measurably. The recitative tone, with its comparatively long sentence, should not be hurried beyond the time a good reader would give it in reading promptly, and with no attempts at factitious declamation. On the other hand, no choir will easily fall into the fault of giving the "spoken" tones too rapidly. Except in our best choirs, under competent leadership, these spoken tones are almost invariably taken too slow.

When and  
where the Or-  
ganist may as-  
sist a proper  
performance.

The nature of this work precludes the idea of here introducing a treatise on the nature of the chant, and the manner of its performance as a vocal work. It will, however, be noticed from the above remarks that during the performance of the recitative (see Example 39, Measures 1 and 4), it is impossible for the accompanist to assist the voices as to precision of utterance. He can support the intonation and the legato effect, nothing more. The case is quite different at the "spoken" tones. Here the organist can not only greatly assist the onward progress of the chant by a prompt and energetic manner of playing, but if the singers become unsteady at any period during the performance of the canticle, these are the points where he may be able to restore them to unity among themselves and the true tempo.

We give one more example covering this point.

## EXAMPLE 40.



It is evident at a glance that while the choir recite the words, "He covereth the heaven," etc., the organist can simply sustain the chord. No repetitions of the same with the voices could help the singers, or aid in steadying them. At the words, "for the earth," the organist can, however, control rhythm and accentuation to a good degree.

Steadying  
effect of pedal  
entrance.

In cases of unsteadiness, the entrance of the pedals upon the "spoken" tones (premising that the pedals have not been used during the previous recitative) is one of the best means of

\* In the Gregorian tones, so called, we have also the "*intonation*," consisting of two tones prefixed to the first recitative. Among various works treating of these ancient melodies, the student will find one easily accessible with most excellent examples—namely, the Episcopal Hymnal, edited by the Rev. Dr. J. I. Tucker, where will be found a short, succinct explanation of the Gregorian Chant, and its manner of performance.

restoring or securing unity of performance. For this reason, among others, the pedals should occasionally be kept in reserve. In this connection, what has been said of "pedal abuse" (see Chapter IV., Example 25, Note *b*) is particularly applicable if the choir is not large. It has been seen that, in accompanying voices, the eight-foot tone must prevail as being in unison with the voices. If greater brilliancy is required, the four-foot stops are next added. Only in case of a chorus is the sixteen-foot tone to be added to the manual in chords, unless possibly in accompanying a quartet, when the four voices sing in unison. In the chant, it is sometimes advisable to double the intervals of the chord as written. This should only be continued for a measure or two, and the effect of thus filling up the chord in the left hand will be that of drawing a stop of sixteen feet equal in power to the original combination. Thus the sixteen-foot effect is temporarily produced by the fingers without drawing a stop, and will emphasize the words when fittingly employed.

Doubling  
the Intervals  
of a chord, in-  
stead of add-  
ing Stops of  
Sixteen-foot  
tone.

## EXAMPLE 41.



{ O speak good of the Lord, all ye works }  
 { of his, in all places of ... } his do - minion. Praise thou the Lord, O my soul.

Example 41 represents the latter half of a Double Chant. The first three measures are accompanied upon the Swell or Choir Organ. At the fourth measure, the Great Organ enters with pedals, and the chords "filled out" during the words, "Praise thou the Lord." With the words, "O my soul," the pure four parts are resumed.\* The small notes represent the tones added by the player, the large notes the vocal parts. The additions to the left hand produce the sixteen-foot effect. Those to the right hand simply aid the fulness and balance the left.

If the chord had chanced to lie lower in the left hand, the sixteen-foot effect would have been still more perceptible.

It is evident that "consecutive octaves" abound in such cases, but so they do whenever stops of different pitch are added to an eight-foot combination, and the fingers execute but four strict parts. When, however, the four parts are themselves correct, the effect of such additions is simply that of strengthening or enriching the harmony. In Example 41, "consecutive fifths" may also seem to occur between measures 4 and 5 in both hands. Careful examination will show

Apparent  
"consecutive  
octaves and  
fifths."

that the progression is not really  but thus:  We here extract the following from Hopkins' excellent work upon the organ (see second note, Chapter I., page 7) as bearing upon the preceding matter:

"The organ should be used in a somewhat different manner when any sixteen-foot manual stops are drawn, otherwise the excellent effects which that class of stops are especially calculated to produce will be to some extent obscured. The omission of all 'Doubles,' as a rule, from the

Of adding  
the Sixteen-ft  
Manual Stops.

\* Doublings of this kind should rarely, if ever, occur on the "spoken" tones, except as a resolution of the preceding recitative chord as above. Employed on the spoken tones, such treatment would tend to obscure the harmony.

manuals of English organs, until of late years, rendered it compulsory on organists to invent a sort of substitute for them *in effect*; for it was found that the organ-tone lacked the requisite gravity and dignity, however numerous the unison-stops might be. Performers on that instrument, therefore, had to lay aside the purer and more strict style of playing, as being 'ineffective,' and to fall back upon the system of keeping some eight or nine notes down at a time, to draw from their instruments any thing approaching a broad and massive character of tone.

"Latterly,\* the serious omission above adverted to has been supplied, by addition to old organs, and by incorporation in new ones. The care already hinted at, as being required in playing on an instrument possessing so valuable an acquisition, consists in not adopting so full a style of playing when the sixteen-foot stops are drawn as when they are not. The former is viewed as rather a complicated *substitute* for the latter; and if *both* are had recourse to simultaneously, the one is most likely to destroy the effect of the other. A very charming contrast may, however, frequently be produced in accompanying a chant or choral, sometimes in four parts *with* the Doubles drawn, sometimes in about six *without* them."

Difference  
between  
drawing a  
"Double"  
Diapason and  
doubling the  
Chord.

While these remarks are very true, it must be understood that the author has the English choirs in mind, which are largely composed of boy Sopranos and Altos. To our, comparatively few, large chorus choirs of mixed voices, these remarks would also apply. The voices of boys, from their peculiarly penetrating quality, and, moreover, from the fact that they are strong just where the female compass is weak, require a fuller accompaniment than the same number of voices in a mixed chorus.

The "filling in" the chord which we have illustrated is, of course, quite a different effect from that of using a sixteen-foot stop *throughout* a whole chant, and can readily be employed when it would be inconvenient, if not impossible, to continue playing in four parts and add a "Double" for a measure or two. A *continuous* "filling in" of the chords would prove very objectionable, for it must be remembered that *all* the stops drawn give the added tones; while in case of a "Double" added to an eight- and four-foot combination, this stop *alone* gives the lower octave, and has been voiced by the organ-builder (that is, if he has done his duty) to blend in this connection.

Support  
during the  
"Recitative."

Where many words occur upon the recitative tone (as in Example 41, "O speak good of the Lord," etc.), it is sometimes useful to give the voices additional support towards the close, especially if the sentence be subdivided by one or more commas, as in this instance. This may be accomplished by the reservation and re-entrance of the pedals as previously mentioned. In this instance, we wish to reserve the pedals for the culminating phrase, "Praise thou the Lord!" The additional support may be given thus:

#### EXAMPLE 42.

O speak good of the Lord, all ye works of his, in all places of his do - minion: Praise thou, etc.

Sw. without Pedals. *cres.* Gr. both hands. Ped.

\* The first edition of Hopkins' work was published in 1855.

The recitative is here given in  $\frac{3}{4}$  measure, in order to represent, as nearly as possible, the equal division of the sentence recited. At "all ye works," the left hand changes to the Great Manual. At "in all places," the octave is added. In some cases, the single tone (without adding the octave) will be found sufficient for the purpose intended. It is by such apparent trifles as this that a good accompanist will often control the crescendo and diminuendo of his singers—they instinctively feeling what he desires of them. Technique on the part of the player is not so much demanded here as taste.

EXAMPLE 43.



This arpeggio indicates, as nearly as may be, a frequently employed form of beginning the chant. Each note of the chord is to be held down as the arpeggio rises, and the notation does not exactly indicate the manner of performance, which may be *ad libi-*

The Arpeggio in commencing a Chant.

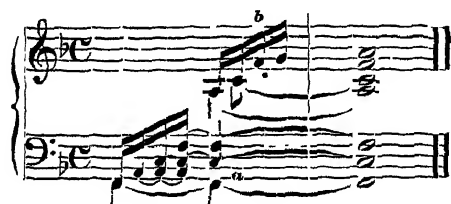
*tum*. As to the speed at the beginning, it must not be so rapid but that the "building up" of the chord may be clearly distinguished. On the other hand, it must be equally removed from a sluggish, rhythmic addition of note to note. The term "upward roll" best characterizes the effect. In this connection, see Chapter III., Example 22, and the following remarks.

The practical advantage of this mode of beginning is to help a choir to commence the first recitative promptly together. Singers soon accustom themselves to seize upon the culmination of the arpeggio as the point where the voices are to enter, and in chanting much depends upon beginning simultaneously.

The form of the arpeggio may also be varied so as to introduce passing notes. By this means, other inversions of the chord may be led to. Thus, in Example 43, the arpeggio leads to the fifth of the chord.

Other forms of the Arpeggio.

EXAMPLE 44 (LEADING TO THE THIRD).



EXAMPLE 45 (LEADING TO THE OCTAVE).



At *a*, Example 44, it should be noticed that the lower third in the bass is not held, as the arpeggio resolves itself into the chord proper. This is on account of the doubled third which occurs in the full chord. This is sufficient to balance the chord without the low *A*, which would only tend to obscure it. This also applies at *a*, Example 45.

In Example 43, the higher tone arrived at (*c*) as the culmination of the arpeggio sustains the addition of the lower tone by way of balance. Besides this, the chord thus created contains a *triple* fifth and tonic of eight-foot pitch without considering the pedal tonic of sixteen feet.

At *b*, Example 44, the octave (*F*, last note but one of the arpeggio) is not held down. This is in order that the diatonic leading of the passage to the upper third may be distinct.

At *b*, Example 45, *A* is the last note held down for the same reason.

This "upward roll" may also be introduced at other points than at the beginning of the chant. This, if employed, will generally occur at a change from Swell or Choir to the Great Organ. An illustration of this is the last measure of Example 42. In such cases, the arpeggio must be executed with greater rapidity than is usually employed at the beginning of the chant. It will also be noticed that the arpeggio leads to a doubling of the chord as spoken of under Example 41. For this reason, this form is best adapted to strong registration and words of relatively jubilant character. Expert organists sometimes add chromatic passing tones to the arpeggio. These should not be attempted unless they can be executed with absolute neatness and precision.

Ornamen-  
tation some-  
times intro-  
duced.


As the double chant is divided into two equal portions, of seven measures each, each of which divisions takes in a verse in its performance, the central point between these two halves is termed the "*mediation*" of the chant. In antiphonal (responsive) singing the second half is performed by the second choir or division of voices. In chants of a slightly more elaborate character than usual, organists sometimes introduce at the mediation a slight ornamentation of the accompaniment, as it were connecting the two divisions of the chant. This may be the more appropriately introduced if the *harmonic* change between the two sections is of a decided character. To do this well, *extempore*, naturally demands an expert harmonist, otherwise it had better be omitted, or at least studied out (written down) carefully in advance. As to the choir, they must (through rehearsal or usage) not be taken by surprise, but be sufficiently accustomed to wait a moment, and—listen. If the passage is properly performed, they can easily tell when to "come in." Thus they gain a moment to breathe—no slight advantage in a long chant in case of a quartet choir, or where the canticle is not sung antiphonally—and the re-entrance of the voices gives added effect.

When best  
employed.

This treatment must be sparingly used; by no means at every repetition, even when found in print, as it sometimes is. It is, perhaps, best suited to the opening verse and to the "Gloria Patri." All trills and unseemly runs or flourishes should be avoided. A good example follows, taken from a (MS.) "*quadruple*" chant. The first half only is given.

#### EXAMPLE 46.

The musical score for Example 46 consists of two systems. The first system is for 'Gt Org. ff' and 'Sw. mp'. It shows a vocal line with 'Voices in unison' and 'in harmony' parts, and an organ line with 'Gt Org. ff' and 'Sw. mp' parts. The second system is for 'Gr Org. ff' and 'Sw. mp'. It shows a vocal line with 'Voices unison or harmony' and 'in harmony' parts, and an organ line with 'Gr Org. ff' and 'Sw. mp' parts. The score is by Henry Wilson.

The execution of the passage thus introduced at the "mediation" is about equivalent to the addition of one more measure, the additional measure being performed in the time of the "spoken-tone" measures; thus:  or with a slight *rallentando* at the close. The rests indicate the pause made by the voices. This passage may be played either

upon the Swell, leading to the *ff* of the Great Organ, or upon the Great Organ at once with the commencement of the small notes. The latter is preferable if the next phrase is to be sung in unison.

It will be seen from the preceding remarks that the proper accompaniment of the chant is to be derived from the sentiment of the words, and this to even a greater degree than in case of quartet and other tunes. While chants differ in musical character, yet their extremely simple structure gives them such a general family resemblance that we are forced to look to their varied *treatment* if we would gain the best possible effects from their performance. In this way, no part of the church service is more impressive.

The *Gregorian* chants, so-called, are usually sung in unison or in alternate unison and harmony. They require no different treatment as to manner of accompaniment from the Anglican single or double chants. When sung in unison, they, of course, admit of strong registration, and here it is permitted the organist to show his skill in varied harmonization of the unison melody. To do this properly requires more than a knowledge of the *modern* system of harmony, as these ancient melodies are founded upon the old Greek (so-called ecclesiastical) scales, which in many respects are foreign to our present system. Thus, many of our modern chromatic progressions are totally opposed to the simple and dignified nature of these venerable melodies, and, if employed, utterly destroy their characteristic effect. (See note, page 52.)

Gregorian  
Chants

In chant accompaniment, especial care must be taken to preserve continuity of organ-tone throughout the whole canticle, no matter how often the player may change the registration, or pass from one manual to another. The reason of this may easily be perceived, if we allow a choir to chant several verses without accompaniment. Frequently, recurring little breaks will be noticed, produced by the punctuation, and by the singers pausing to take breath. This the organ smooths over and conceals. A momentary pause of both voices and organ (sometimes introduced in such cases as "for He cometh—for He cometh to judge the earth") is exceptional, and does not affect the general principle.

Continuity of  
Organ-tone.

## CHAPTER VI.

### ON "GIVING OUT" THE TUNE.

PLAYING over the tune before the voices begin, or "giving it out," as it is generally called, is susceptible of a great variety of treatment. In fact, it is only limited by the size of the instrument and the taste, invention, and skill of the player. We have elsewhere alluded to the simplest form for this purpose—namely: playing the tune over upon the Swell without pedals, and with a combination of greater or lesser power as the music to be rendered may require.

Solo treat-  
ment.

In this chapter, we propose to speak of but two methods of giving out the tune. Both of these will illustrate the treatment of the melody as a solo, and the obligato treatment of the pedals—the latter at least to some extent, if not strictly so employed.

In the following example (47), the voice parts are given for the purpose of comparison with the form of accompaniment given in Example 48; also the words of one verse as a key to the general sentiment.

#### EXAMPLE 47 (AS WRITTEN AND SUNG).

*Andante Moderato.*

*p*

No change of tune shall ev - er shock My firm af - fee - tion, Lord, to Thee;

*mf*

For Thou hast al - ways been my rock, A for - tress and.... de - fence to me.

*Arr. from H. HERZ.*

## EXAMPLE 48 (AS GIVEN OUT).

The musical score for Example 48 is presented in two systems. Each system consists of three staves: a top staff for the Swell, a middle staff for the Choir or Great Organ, and a bottom staff for the Pedal. The key signature is one flat (B-flat), and the time signature is 3/4. The first system begins with a Swell staff marked 'Sw.' and a Choir or Great Organ staff marked 'p Ch. or Gr.'. The Pedal staff has markings 'a b' and 'c'. The second system begins with a Swell staff marked 'Sw. mf' and a Choir or Great Organ staff marked 'h'. The Pedal staff has a marking 'g'. The score includes various musical notations such as notes, rests, and dynamic markings like 'p' (piano) and 'f' (forte).

*Example 48.*—The registration is here supposed to be nearly as follows: in the Swell, the Oboe and Stopped Diapason; in the Choir (or Great Organ, if the instrument possess but two manuals), the Dulciana or Stopped Diapason. If the Swell Cornopean or Trumpet eight feet were the Solo-stop, we should wish *both* Dulciana and Stopped Diapason as accompaniment.

In the Pedal Organ, the Bourdon sixteen feet is the only stop drawn.

At *a*, the sixteen-foot tone only will be heard.

At *b*, the Pedal to Choir (or Great) Coupler is drawn, thus giving both the sixteen- and eight-foot tone to the bass on the second beat of the measure, while the manuals enter upon the third beat. The difference between the beginning of Examples 47 and 48 should be noted. This is merely optional, but if the commencement, as in Example 47, be preferred, the first note of the melody should be played alone, the harmony entering with the first full measure.

At *c*, it will be noticed that the pedals do not follow the melodic form of the vocal bass, but descend to the lower octave. This is caused by the fact that the melody being given expressively, and as a solo upon the Swell, obliges the right foot to occupy itself with the Swell Pedal throughout the tune. Consequently, the left foot alone must execute the Bass part.\* The imperfect legato which will thus arise, from the use of but one foot, is only justified on the ground that the melody is being treated as a solo, expressively, and *must* receive the first attention; further by the strict legato of the left hand upon the second manual.

Pedal lower octave employed.

At *d*, comparison of Examples 47 and 48 will quickly show that the part played by the left hand, in accompanying the Swell Solo, is virtually no other than that of reproducing the

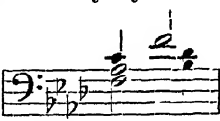
Two-playing.

\*The technical management of the right and left foot under such circumstances will be spoken of later. See Chapter X.



Alto and Tenor parts—the Bass being allotted to the pedals. This is a species of “trio-playing,” differing only from the usual acceptance of this term in organ-music proper, in that it is not written in three strict parts for the three sets of keys, one part to each—namely: two manuals and pedals. The student should carefully note *what* has been added to the Alto and Tenor parts (as given by the left hand), both by comparing our two previous examples and by trying the effect practically upon the organ. When the pedals, as here, are employed in the lower octave, such additions are useful, because they give the accompaniment a better blending harmonic quality considered independently by itself.

Continuance  
of Rhythmic  
Motion in  
Accompani-  
ment.

At *e*, note the progression,  in the left hand. This, it will be seen, differs considerably from the voice parts as to melodic form and progression. Its explanation is found in the peculiar effect (see Example 47) given by the motion of Alto and Tenor, alternately or together in quarter notes, in nearly every measure throughout the tune. Such motion must always be preserved in the accompaniment to the solo-stop, nor must added harmonies be allowed to obscure the progression of such motion.

When the  
Pedals ex-  
ecute the Bass  
“as written”

When circumstances allow us to free the right foot from the Swell Pedal in solo treatment, the Bass part should be executed by the pedals *as written*. The Alto and Tenor parts may then be usually played in their integrity by the left hand, thus giving us four pure parts, with the pedals treated *obligato*. This can always be done when the solo is played upon a string-toned stop of the Great Organ instead of reed, and accompanied upon the Choir Organ. The same is true of such a solo upon the Choir Organ, either with the Clarionet (reed) or string-toned stop accompanied upon the Swell or Great Organ.

At *f*, Example 48, the melody note need not be repeated, owing to the decided harmonic change (of chord) beneath it. Chapter II., Example 6, has already illustrated this principle in choral accompaniment.

Change of  
Manuals.

At *g*, both hands may pass to the Swell Organ, omitting the pedal part. This is nearly equivalent to a change of registration, and good in this case on account of the similarity existing between the first and third phrases of the tune. The change is here made to the manual which has borne the melody from the first. A change to another manual, differently registered, and for the duration of one phrase, is apt to sound too radical in pieces of such brief length, and savors of unworthy affectation. There are, however, some few exceptions to this, which a decided change in the character of the music will indicate. Such exceptions will usually suggest themselves in tunes of somewhat greater scope.

Of the use  
of the “Tre-  
mulant.”

It may here be said that if the “Tremulant” (or “Tremolo”) has been used with the Oboe in performing the first half of the tune, it is not advisable to continue it at *g*, where both hands play the full harmony upon the Swell. The effect of this mechanical appliance (the Tremulant) differs very widely among our organs. It is either *good*, when it beats quickly and promptly, or insuperably bad, when it beats slowly and hesitatingly. The Tremulant is generally abused by being used too frequently, and in passages not suited to it. If an organ possess a fair *Vox Humana*, it may be used in four-part harmony with the Tremulant drawn, and with good effect *if continued but a short time*. This is less advisable with the other reeds.

The shutting-off of the Tremulant (assuming it to have been used in Example 48) may be accomplished thus:

## EXAMPLE 49.



The right hand here takes the chord upon the Swell at *a*, the pedal note being prolonged to support it. Simultaneously with this, the Tremulant is shut off by the left hand, which is thus made free. The slight break which the phrase permits at the double bar also aids to make this change easy.

Both hands unite upon the Swell (now without Tremulant) at *b*.

The Tremulant, thus shut off, had better not be resumed again during the remainder of the tune with the entrance of the voices so speedily approaching.

At *b*, Example 48, the solo treatment is resumed, the left hand returning to the Choir (or Great) Organ.

Before leaving this example, we would call attention to the fact that none of the tones given by the solo-stop, in Example 48, are found *in actual unison* with the same tones in the accompaniment. This individualizes the effect of the solo-stop, especially if it be a reed, and the student should endeavor always to treat his accompaniments to a given solo-stop in this manner.

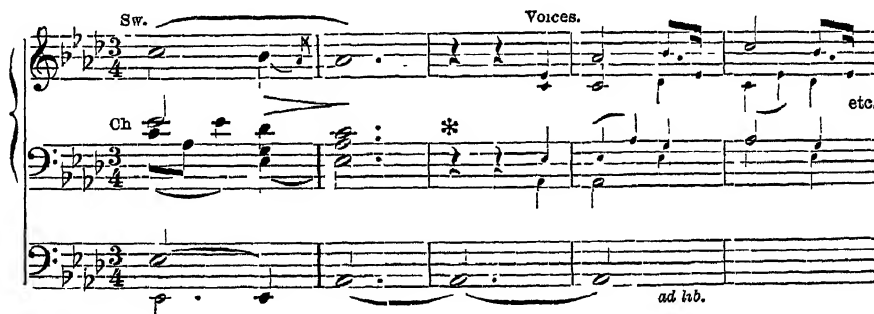
Unisons between Solo-stop and Accompaniment.

The above is doubly true when the Tremulant is employed, as the "shaking tone" and the firm organ tone mutually injure each other if they thus meet.

The change from "giving out" the tune to accompanying it may, in case of Example 48, be made thus :

Change of Registration after "giving out" the Tune.

## EXAMPLE 50.



At the first quarter rest (\*) the reed is shut off, leaving, for the moment, the Stopped Diapason only. At the second rest, another stop is added to the Swell (but not a reed), and the pedals may be coupled with the Swell; the pedal tone, which consists of the Bourdon, sixteen feet, coupled to the Choir, meantime continuing.

In reference to the solo upon the Swell, it is evident that the accompaniment upon the Choir or Great Organ can not follow the different shades of expression given by the solo-stop. In other words, the Choir or Great Organ can not increase or diminish the power of a set combination. For this reason a relatively weak power should be employed, which may be somewhat too weak to well support the Swell crescendo when at its height. On the other hand, it has at least this advantage, that it will not be too loud when the Swell is used in diminuendo. Much depends upon the player's skill in management of the Swell in such case.

Balance of Accompaniment to a Swell Solo-stop.

## EXAMPLE 51.

(Gr.) (Org) (Solo.) (Sw)  
 Hark! the her - ald an - gels sing. Glo - ry to the new - born King! Peace on earth.—and  
 mer - cy mild, (Gr) *f* God and sin - ners re - con - ciled, God and sin - ners re - con - ciled  
 MOZART.

This example, like No. 47, gives the voice parts for the purpose of comparison with the following Example 52. It furthermore gives certain *ornamentation* for the organ (small notes) which is not added, but belongs to the original composition, and is essential to its rhythmic flow. It will be observed that the sentiment of the hymn is that of triumphant joy. This is still more evident in the succeeding verses. This justifies the following treatment and registration :

## EXAMPLE 52.

Gr. *f* Sw. *f*  
 Sw. *mf* Ped. *f*  
 Gr. *c* Sw. *mf*

The registration is here supposed to be, Great Organ Diapasons and Trumpet of eight feet (possibly four-foot Principal or octave also); Swell Diapasons of eight feet, with reeds of eight feet; Pedal Organ, sixteen and eight feet, coupled to the Swell.

At *a*, the theme is given out in the lower octave as compared with Example 51, or at "tenor pitch." It is this which, in connection with the registration, gives it dignity, as this middle compass is full-toned and characteristic in most stops.

The accompaniment is again seen to be the reproduction of the Alto and Tenor parts (as in Example 48), with the addition of certain complementary tones to give fulness to the harmonies of the first and second measures more especially.

The new feature in Example 52 is that the accompaniment lies above the melody. On this account, stops of four feet can rarely be added to the Swell (with an eight-foot combination upon the Great Organ) in accompaniments of this kind, as they would extend such accompaniments another octave higher than the melody. If, however, the Great Organ combination contains a comparatively strong four-foot stop, one or two four-foot stops of mild intonation may be added to the Swell. It may be well for the student to realize the *actual effect* thus produced by the performance of Example 52 with this combination. The following represents the tones actually heard:

Accompaniment above the Melody.

EXAMPLE 53.

The series of tones at \* is obtained from the Swell four-foot stops which are coupled with the pedals.

The accompaniment lying higher than the theme, a careful use of the Swell Pedal is at times necessary to subdue the accompaniment to such a degree that the attention may not be called off from the melody proper, and unduly attracted to the melodic progression of the Swell itself.

Aid of the Swell Pedal in this form of Accompaniment.

Measures 3 and 4, as far as the letter *c*, Example 52, illustrate this. For this reason the use of one foot obtains here, as in Example 48, except in case of modern instruments provided with either a "balanced" or a so-called "ratchet Swell Pedal." This will be referred to later.

At *b*, Example 52, the figure assigned to both hands in Example 51 is given to the left hand alone. This represents the proper balance, as the melody is now played an octave lower than as given in Example 51.

At *c*, both hands pass to the Swell Organ to represent by diminished power the relation of the solo voice to the remainder of the tune.\* (See Example 51.)

At *d*, attention is called to the slightly varying harmonization as compared with Example 51. This is simply a matter of convenience to the fingers, while the variety produced by inversion of the harmony can only be desirable.

At *e*, the passage in sixteenth notes may be taken at once upon the Great Organ, thus becoming an integral part of the melody proper. It may also be played upon the Swell, if preferred, in which case it must be executed with the left hand.

\* In the performance of this tune the Solo is usually given alternately to a Soprano and Tenor voice; but in the last verse, at the words, "Hail the Sun of Righteousness!" all the voices unite upon the melody. In this case the accompaniment continues upon the Great Organ, with perhaps increased registration.





Here no "expressive" use of the Swell is required. It may remain open, the registration being properly balanced with the Great Organ, and both feet used for the pedals.

The only explanation required by the above example applies to the contrapuntal figuration of the second and fourth strains. This figuration of the accompaniment is not obligatory. The simple inversion in half notes might have been given. It, however, adds harmonic interest to the accompaniment, and forms an excellent exercise for those who are pursuing theoretical studies in connection with organ lessons, as they can use such exercises practically when written out. Only a tolerably expert harmonist should attempt this form *extempore*. In case this is done (*extempore*) in giving out the tune with the ordinary setting of the same before one's eyes (that is, with the *Cantus-Firmus* in the Soprano), it is frequently easier to play it as follows, without the previously given figuration of the accompaniment:

Contrapuntal  
Figuration

#### EXAMPLE 58.

as it stands, an octave lower.

It will be noted that the introduction of the quarter-note motion (see second strain of Example 57) requires the employment of the same motion in the co-related fourth strain. This on grounds of symmetry. Had we *begun* the tune with this motion, it would have been necessary to have continued it throughout.

Another  
form of Inver-  
sion.

Continu-  
ance of Mo-  
tion.

But one form of greater elaboration remains to be considered among the various modes of giving out tunes as solos. This is the so-called Choral Prelude, of which Bach has given us so many admirable specimens, some of extended length. These are unsuited to our church use for two reasons: First, the service of the Lutheran Church, for which Bach wrote, begins with the singing of a choral. Therefore, extended compositions, based upon the first choral for the day, could form the "opening voluntary" or organ prelude. This was logically succeeded by the choral itself sung by choir and congregation. Second, most of these chorals upon which Bach founded his preludes are but little known (unfortunately, for they are the finest extant) and rarely used in this country at present. An example of what our ordinary services might permit follows. The figuration is probably as elaborate as would be found suited to actual church

Choral Pre-  
ludes

use, although a richer figuration and more extended development furnish excellent organ study, both theoretical and practical.

Advanced students will find it an interesting and profitable task to construct forms of giving out the tune similar to the following. The choral melody (*Cantus-Firmus*) may be placed in either Soprano or Tenor, and even in the Bass. In this latter case the Pedal is usually registered with four-foot tone.

The tune "Mear" forms the subject of the following treatment. It will be understood that the Swell is not used expressively, as the nature of the tune does not require it, and the pedals require the use of both feet.

## EXAMPLE 59.

*Moderato.* *mf*

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. Sw. with Oboe. 6. 7. 8.


Ch. Melodia and Dule

Ped. Coupled to Ch.

9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16.

17. 18. 19.

In Example 59, the four preludial measures previous to the entrance of the *Cantus-Firmus* establish the contrapuntal motion which is to continue throughout, and the essential *motive* of the same may be thematically employed throughout in this kind of treatment.

In such forms, care should be taken so to construct the bass, by means of deceptive cadences, suspensions, etc., that the tune may have everywhere a continuous contrapuntal flow, and not divide itself into the too evident four sections corresponding with the four-line stanza. See in illustration of this the avoidance of the chord of G in accompanying the first two notes of the *Cantus-Firmus*; likewise the avoidance of the cadence at measure 9. Furthermore, measures 9 and 10, also 13-14 and 18-19, will show the manner of treating the pause  occurring at the conclusion of each strain in the original.

Avoidance  
of Cadences.

If choral preludes are developed at considerably greater length than Example 59, they may be appropriately used for voluntaries; more especially at the conclusion of a service where the tune upon which they may chance to be founded has been previously sung. The choral preludes of Bach furnish an inexhaustible store of models to the organ student who would try his hand at this species of composition.

In many instances, precisely the opposite treatment (as compared with the use of these forms for *actual preludes*) might find greater favor. This is the *curtailment* of tunes in giving them out. Thus, when a familiar tune is to be sung congregationally, it will often suffice for the organist to give out but a portion of it. A few measures only will inform the congregation as to the tune proposed for the given hymn. The organist can readily introduce a simple cadence, bringing the prelude to an early close, so soon as (in his judgment) the tune has been recognized.

Curtailment  
in giving  
out Tunes

This mode of procedure is particularly advisable when hymns containing verses of six or eight long lines are announced, necessitating "double tunes."



## CHAPTER VII.

---

### ACCOMPANIMENT OF SOLO VOICES.

Peculiar difficulties.

THIS subject is one of the most difficult to treat satisfactorily, with pen and ink, of all the varied forms included under the general title of this work.

In the preceding chapters, we have had to contend principally with the fact that organs differ, and with the difficulty of deducing from the examples cited such general principles as might prove of every-day use. We are now still further limited by the fact that individual voices differ in even a more marked degree than the instruments.

For this reason, we shall be obliged to content ourselves with such hints only as may be generally made useful, applied to any instrument and any voice, leaving to the student their application to particular cases.

In the Preliminary Remarks, the nature of good accompaniment was defined as that which gives the soloist a sense of *support* upon the one hand, and of *freedom* upon the other. It will, then, be necessary to see by what means the player may aid in securing these two important requisites.

Repetition of the Melody in the Accompaniment.

In ordinary accompaniments, more especially in such as have not been expressly prepared for the organ by one who understood his business, we frequently find the melody, as sung by the vocalist, continuously repeated in the accompaniment.

Now, in orchestral accompaniment—both in opera and oratorio—nothing is more common than for the first violins to move in unison with the solo voice for a while, and this even in comparatively florid passages. This, however, is justified in several ways. *First.* By the peculiarly blending quality of stringed instruments, well played, with voices of all kinds. *Second.* By the ability of good string-players to instantly follow all gradations of light and shade to a much more complete degree than the wind instruments, among which, in the present case, the organ is to be classified. *Third.* The orchestra has a conductor, while at the organ the player ordinarily sits with his back turned to the singers.

Method sometimes employed to indicate Accompaniment.

In some of our church music books, where the tune or anthem is printed upon four staves, without a special part assigned to the accompaniment, we find frequent illustrations of the repetition of the melody as spoken of. Indeed, in case of a Soprano Solo, the notes of the solo are usually continued of the *same size*, while small notes are introduced beneath it to represent the completion of the accompaniment. If the small notes alone are played, the harmony will not unfrequently be found “empty,” without some notes of the melody to complete it. The

voice, singing at the same time with the small notes played as accompaniment, does not seem to atone for this emptiness, but the accompaniment to desire its own independent (harmonic) completeness. So the average accompanist plays the melody with the voice as in the following example:

EXAMPLE 60.

(Solo.)

Praise Him with song ex - ult - - ant, His glo - - ry loud pro-claim. To Him, etc

This illustration may be somewhat exaggerated; but, if so, only enables the pupil to discern more easily the point at issue. Are the two conditions of support and freedom to the singer here fulfilled? That of support, possibly; but that of freedom, certainly not. In fact, the delivery of the singer is hampered by the melody being repeated by the player, while the accompanist is hampered by the attempt to render every note exactly with the singer. The slightest discrepancy would here be apparent. Objections to this mode.

Besides this, a registration strong enough to support not only the singer's intonation, but also to characterize the sentiment of the words, would, in the majority of similar cases, have the effect of the voice accompanying the organ instead of the opposite relation. Of this sort of accompaniment, our churches already furnish too many examples.

EXAMPLE 61.

(Solo) *Allegro Moderato.*

Praise Him with song ex - ult - - ant His glo - - ry loud pro-claim, To Him. etc.

In the above example, the two middle parts (Alto and Tenor) of Example 60 are seen to have become the two upper parts of the present Example 61, with a supplementary part added below them. Thus, the harmony is complete in itself, while it will be seen at once that the voice is well supported harmonically, and yet left at perfect freedom to execute the passages assigned to it. See, in this connection, remarks under *g* and *h*, Example 25, page 31. Example 61 is supposed to represent an episodic solo in the midst of an anthem. If, then, any thing which has preceded renders the *entrance* of the solo voice uncertain, the accompaniment may be modified thus:

EXAMPLE 62.

(or thus:)

a b

The accompaniment then continues as before.

It must not be understood from the preceding remarks that three-part accompaniments may not sometimes prove of excellent effect, the solo voice representing a fourth part in the harmony. Such accompaniments require to be planned with care.

How to modify and improve the previous Accompaniment.

Three and two part Accompaniment.

They will generally be found written out, so as to require no adaptation on the part of the player, and are useful in producing variety of effect when preceding or succeeding a fuller accompaniment. In the example which follows, a specimen of momentary *two-part* accompaniment also occurs at the second N. B.

## EXAMPLE 63.\*

Relative motion between Voice and Accompaniment.

It is to be noted that in Example 61 the rhythmic motion is maintained by the solo voice itself. On this account, the accompaniment may well contain less motion, although, in this particular case, it will be found to possess its own rhythmic steadiness, if played alone. Where the solo voice momentarily pauses, as at the beginning of the third measure, there the motion increases in the accompaniment.

Students who possess the requisite knowledge of harmony, predicated of them in the Preliminary Remarks, will be surprised to find how little study, comparatively, will enable them to improve, modify, and adapt accompaniments according to the principle here advanced. In this way, their own task in performance will be simplified, while the soloists will receive both the support and the freedom which they desire.

Should students not possess the elementary harmonic knowledge referred to, the author can only hope that they may gain from this book such an idea of what they have yet to learn that they forthwith address themselves to the task. No one can become even a respectable accompanist without a theoretic foundation to some extent. The day is happily passing by for the phrase to be accepted: "He (or she) plays well enough to play in church."

Apparent "obligato."

The form of accompaniment in Example 61 may, in some respects, be termed *obligato*. It is not strictly so, in that it has no real melodic significance of its own, but simply conforms to the requirements of the solo as to harmonic support. It is, then, "*obligato*" only in the sense that it is wholly distinct from the voice part, and has its own harmonic independence without calling upon the voice to complete the same, as at Example 60.

The true *obligato* form will be considered under its own especial head.

Unison of the Voice and Accompaniment.

We have spoken of motion in the accompaniment as contrasted with, and avoiding motion which may occur in the solo voice. We now give a good example of both of these points, together with an illustration of a case where the accompaniment may appropriately move in unison with the voice.

\* "*Dies Irae*" Special Hymns in Anthem form, D. B.—G. Schirmer, New York.

## EXAMPLE 64.\*

HENRY WILSON.

*Andante non troppo.*

Sop'r Solo

Like as the hart de-sir-eth the wa-ter-brooks, So

Organ.

*pp* *a* *b* *c*

*con moto.*

long-eth my soul af-ter Thee, O God, So long-eth my soul, etc.

*a* *etc.*

At *a*, the first two measures establish the quarter-note motion which is to prevail throughout the solo.

At *b*, the entrance of the solo voice with this motion renders it possible to dispense with the same in the accompaniment for a measure or two. Were this lack of motion to continue too long, the rhythmic accent would suffer, as the progression of the voice alone would not atone for continued lack of motion in the accompaniment. For the time being, however, the solo voice is by this means thrown into strong relief against the accompaniment, which is of course subdued.

At *c*, note how the composer has avoided any attempt to follow the actual voice progression at the words, "the water-brooks," thus giving the soloist freedom of execution and expression.

At *d*, the accompaniment follows the solo voice, repeating the melody in unison. This may be explained as follows: The quarter-note motion prevails here in *all the parts*, but with constantly shifting harmonies. The regularity of the rhythm is such that it requires little care to insure perfect unity of progression between the singer and accompanist. This being secured, the repetition of the melody in the accompaniment is welcome, especially in supporting the crescendo, "So longeth my soul," etc. It is thus seen that, under proper conditions, the repetition of the melody in the accompaniment is not only justifiable, but better than any *obligato* form could be to fulfil the end desired. Under other conditions, it is equally evident that it is unadvisable, acting as a source of embarrassment to both singer and player. Experience, and the study of good compositions where the solo accompaniments are written out, can alone give the student surety in selecting the *form* of his own accompaniments—that is, where the composition is so written as to leave the *form* to his option; or, again, should he wish to write accompaniments to compositions of his own.

Conditions under which Motion in Accompaniment may cease.

One field for the practical application of the principles here involved will be found under

the head of adaptations to the organ of accompaniments originally written for the piano or orchestra. This will also be subsequently considered.

Relations of  
Accompani-  
ment to  
Voices of high  
or low pitch  
respectively.

The next characteristic trait of solo accompaniment to which we would call attention is this: that *voices of low pitch bear* (or are suited with) *a higher form of accompaniment, and higher registration than those of high pitch, and vice versa.*

Or, expressed in other words: the accompaniment to a rather high Soprano Solo should, in the main, *underlie* that solo as to the written notes of the accompaniment, *unless* the accompaniment reproduces the melody. The same holds good of the registration, which, with the same exception, should be confined to stops of eight feet.

On the contrary, in case of Bass or Alto Solos, the notes of the accompaniment may frequently *overlie* the solo voice, and the registration may include stops of four feet.

In speaking of an accompaniment over- or under-lying the voice, its relation to the pitch of that voice is meant.

EXAMPLE 65.

EXAMPLE 66.

Thus, in Example 65, the highest tones of the accompaniment are lower than the lowest tones of the voice.

In Example 66, the accompaniment is seen to lie above the voice. In the following illustration, we have an accompaniment suited to either a Soprano or Bass Solo, according to the registration.

EXAMPLE 67.\*

\* Buck's Second Motet Collection, page 37. O. Ditson & Co., Boston.

King, Sing prais - - es for God is the King of all the earth, etc.

etc.

It will be perceived that, if the Soprano Solo is used, the above accompaniment underlies the voice; if the Bass Solo, that it overlies it. If a practical test is made with the two solos and organ (and practical tests can alone instruct the pupil in cases of this kind), it will be found that a *mezzo-forte* combination with four-foot stops agrees with the Bass rather than with the Soprano Solo\*. The somewhat sombre or ponderous quality of the Bass voice may partly account for this, the "brightness" of the four-foot stops materially counterbalancing such quality in the voice.

Over- and  
under-lying  
Accompani-  
ment.

In further illustration of this principle, very many examples might be cited, but we will refer the pupil to two only, both from Mendelssohn's "Elijah." The piano edition is the composer's own arrangement from the orchestral score, and, being readily accessible, we refrain from quoting at length. The illustrations referred to are (1) the great air, "Hear ye, Israel!" for Soprano, and (2) that for Bass, "Is not his word like a fire?"

Illustrations  
from Men-  
delssohn's  
"Elijah."

In the first case, the student will find admirable specimens of the "underlying" accompaniment. Especially is it useful to note when and where Mendelssohn has supported the voice in unison; also how he has avoided the same when the singer's freedom of delivery would be impeded by so doing. In the second air, we have an equally good illustration of the "overlying" accompaniment.

As a matter of course, the low range of the Bass voice (actual pitch) may be said to force the accompaniment to lie above it in the majority of instances. The point to which we desire to call attention, however, is this: *how much* higher the accompaniment may lie in such cases than would be supposed without giving the subject due consideration. In organ accompaniments, this is accomplished principally through four-foot registration, and not by writing or playing the notes at an undue distance from the solo voice.

In ordinary solo accompaniment, the use of reed-stops is to be avoided as a rule. When a female voice is to be accompanied, and when the accompaniment at the same time *moves with the voice in unison*, there should be no exception to this rule, as the effect is bad even when the reed-stop itself is excellent. In fact, the more characteristic the reed-stop may be in quality, the worse will be the effect.

Use and  
Avoidance of  
Reed-stops.

---

\* The real test is for the student to hear the effect of voices and organ at a distance from the keys. To this end he might get some friend to play the accompaniment, but he himself dictate the stops to be employed. This applies especially in judging the effect of the four-foot stops, which are often deceptive (particularly in the Swell Organ) as regards their "telling" qualities.

This very characteristic, however, renders the reed tone most valuable in case of *obligato* accompaniment, where its peculiar quality is employed to illustrate an independent part. (See Chapter VIII.)

Exception  
sometimes ad-  
missible

An apparent exception to the avoidance of reed tone may be found in a certain class of (generally old) organs, unfortunately too frequently met with throughout the country. These instruments utterly lack "*characteristic voicing*"—that is, the stops to which such names as Oboe (Hautboy), Clarionet, Trumpet, etc., are given, are usually nearly destitute of any quality fairly imitative of the respective orchestral instruments from which they derive their names. These remarks apply for the moment to reeds only. Characteristic voicing is of comparatively recent date in this country, and by no means common to every builder as yet. If, then, the reed has no marked character *as a reed*, it may not unfrequently be employed in accompanying a female solo voice, and for the following reason.

In such organs, the voicing of the remaining stops (Flutes, at least by contrast, sometimes excepted) is very apt to follow suit and lack decided character. Such reeds, then, will sometimes add a certain feeble pungency of their own to the accompaniment (providing always that they be in tune), which does no particular harm as a too radical contrast with the voice.

In a word, if the reed lacks the essential qualities of a reed, the premises are altered, and the principle above stated can not apply.

Reeds with  
Male Voices.

When a Tenor or Bass Solo is to be accompanied, while the above omission of reed tone should prevail, yet here an exception may not unfrequently be allowed. This finds its justification in the quality (*timbre*) of the male voice, which assimilates with that of the reed to a much greater extent than the female voice.

#### EXAMPLE 68.\*

Tenor Solo. *p Moderato* *mf*

in awe of Him. For He com - - - eth! etc.

Accomp. Sw. *pp* (add reed) *p* etc.

Man. Ped.

#### EXAMPLE 69.†

Bass Solo. *Allegro Moderato.* *ff*

Ye, who have gained at length your palms in bliss, Victorious ones, Your chant shall still be thus, An end-less, end-less Al-le-lu-is! etc.

Accomp. Swell 8 and 4 ft. with reeds 8 ft. *cres - cen - do.* *sempre ff* reeds off *f* Reduces Sw. further to *p* etc.

Gr. Man. Ped. Coupled to Sw. Pedal silent. Ped. Sw both hds. and Ped. Man.

\* *Venite* in A. D. B., Episcopal Church Music. 2d Series. G. Schirmer, New York.

† "Sing Alleluia forth." Episcopal Church Music. 3d Series. G. D. Russell & Co., Boston.

Example 68 requires no explanation.

In Example 69, the pedal is introduced for the single note upon the entrance of the voice, in order, through its sixteen-foot tone, to give the low B flat which the manual lacks—this B flat being the starting-point of the following chromatic progression in the Bass. The re-entrance of the pedal in the third measure completes the climax desired. The registration of the Great Manual may here be comparatively strong; as, on the one hand, its chromatic progression is warranted by the monotone of the voice, and, on the other, it can not “cover” the voice, as it lies so far below it.

The avoidance or adoption of reed tone likewise applies measurably to quartet accompaniment, and is then governed by the same conditions as in case of solo accompaniment. With a chorus, the case is often reversed, even in passages sung by female voices only, as then the body of tone produced by numbers may render the pungent quality of the reed particularly desirable at times.

Reeds in Accompaniment of Quartets, Chorus, and Solos for Boys' Voices.

In ordinary solo accompaniment of boys' voices, the reeds may be used far more freely than with female voices, on account of the mutually assimilating quality already referred to.

A form of solo accompaniment, which requires considerable experience to treat properly, is that of the Recitative. Here, the notation does not furnish a definite, but only a relative idea of the manner of performance. The duration of any given note is almost entirely optional with the vocalist.

Accompaniment of Recitatives

The accompanying harmonies are usually sustained softly, so as not to interfere with the distinct recitation of the singer. Sometimes, however, they take the form of short interjectional passages. In this latter case, they are usually played *forte* or *mezzo-forte*, as they then serve as interludes between the sentences declaimed, and give energy to the recitative.

#### EXAMPLE 70.

No 5

HANDEL'S "MESSIAH."

The Lord whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to his temple, ev'n the messenger of the cov-e-nant whom ye delight in, etc

*f*

8va ...

8va .....

We have an illustration of this second form of recitative in the above example. It is seen that the voice is left practically unaccompanied. At the word “temple” (see third measure), the notation would indicate that the accompaniment should enter upon the second syllable of the word referred to. In such cases, this should never be done, as the entrance of the accompaniment would simply blur the close of the sentence on the part of the singer. As the singer is free as regards tempo, he can wait, in such cases, until silence again ensues. The same conditions qualify the last phrase, “whom ye delight in.”

Entrance of Accompaniment after conclusion of Vocal Phrase.

On the other hand, in the fourth measure, at the word “covenant,” the chord should come in squarely with the voice. It will be noticed that with the beginning of the last measure a decided change of chord occurs. The accompanist must be careful in such cases not to introduce such chord too soon. The singer, having absolute freedom of delivery, may very possibly



chance to prolong the tone (*C*) of the previous measure upon the last syllable of the word "*covenant*." On this account, the accompanist must be careful not to anticipate the proper time of entrance of the following chord. He must be equally careful not to allow a break to occur after the voice ceases.

Closing  
Cadences.

At the close of recitatives, it frequently occurs that two chords are appended, forming a cadence. The latter of these chords generally stands in the relation of dominant chord to the key of the "*air*" which is to follow immediately. These two chords should always be played after the voice has concluded the phrase.

The exigencies of confining the accompaniment to the laws and customs of notation, while the singer is left free to give his own value to the notes, sometimes leads to forms like the following from Handel's "*Samson*."

EXAMPLE 71.

— whether God is Lord or Da-gon — air, fresh blow-ing, pure and sweet.

N B N. B

The above furnishes us with two forms as written by Handel. The manner of performance would be nearly as follows:

EXAMPLE 72.

— Lord or Da-gon. — air, fresh blow-ing, pure and sweet.

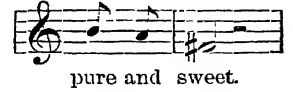
(Performed.) (Performed.)

Harmonic  
discrepancies.  
Their avoid-  
ance.

At *a*, Example 71, measure 2, attention is called to the harmonic discrepancy between the *C* of the accompaniment and the *D* of the solo voice. Also to the proper manner of performance of the same at *a*, Example 72. It will be seen that the closing cadence (above referred to) is postponed until the voice ceases. Also that this treatment involves the addition of one more measure to the original notation.

At *b*, Example 71, the student should particularly note the harmonic discrepancy at the close between voice and accompaniment; also, its avoidance at *b*, Example 72. In this latter example, the cessation of the second accompanying chord in the first measure (earlier than the notation demands) should be observed. The purpose of this is to give the voice unimpeded progress to the close. This may be done with comparative frequency where many "passing notes" occur

in the vocal cadence. As to the augmentation of apparent values in the notation (close of Example 72, *b*), the tendency of singers would be (and appropriately so) to close thus :



whereupon the organ might conclude as at the close of Example 72, *b*, or as follows, if preferred :



The scope of this chapter prevents our entering into the *reasons* which prompted the old masters to write accompaniments to their recitatives in a manner often differing from that in which they desired them performed. This part of the subject properly belongs to the analysis of the recitative as a form of composition. It suffices to call the player's attention to these differences between notation and execution ; remarking, in conclusion, that the unharmonic relation between voice and instrument, at the close of Example 71, establishes the fact that Handel expected this cadence to be played later than the mere notes would indicate.

## CHAPTER VIII.

---

### ON OBLIGATO ACCOMPANIMENT AND THE USE OF SOLO-STOPS

Nature of  
the Obligato.

THE characteristic trait of all obligato accompaniment to a solo voice lies in the fact that such accompaniment has a melodic significance of its own, distinct and separate from that of the voice accompanied, to which it unites itself. The effect produced is thus a compound one, and the union of the two melodies being *obligatory* (in order to produce this effect), the derivation and propriety of the term are evident.

Use of Solo-  
stops

As the melodic element of the accompaniment is here to be brought forward, as it were, in a strong light, it is also evident that solo-stops are particularly suited to accomplish this end. Almost any stop, Mixtures excepted, can be treated as a solo under proper conditions. It becomes necessary, then, to examine into these conditions, so as to obtain an intelligent idea of when and where a given stop may be used in obligato treatment.

Form of Ac-  
companiment.

In accompaniments of this class, it is evident that the player can not determine the *form* of them himself, as was often the case both with the plain choral tunes and those of more elaborate harmonic structure. He will find these accompaniments written out for him as they are intended to be played, and must confine himself to the notes as written. It thus becomes principally a matter of judgment as to the registration suited to bring out the independent melodic character of the obligato accompaniment. A possible exception to the player's being strictly confined to the form given might be the following. Where the accompaniment is of simple harmonic structure, a passage is sometimes singled out, and by contrasting (prominent) registration of one of its parts, say Alto or Tenor, a *quasi* obligato character is given to it, although not coming under the strict definition of the word, as it will not have any independent melodic significance.

As a matter of course, the solo treatment requisite to produce the obligato *effect* implies the use of two manuals in the majority of instances.

Avoidance  
of Reed tone.

In the preceding chapter, the fact was noted that in solo accompaniment (more especially with female voices), *reed tone used in chords* was to be avoided. This was on account of the too radical character of these stops, not necessarily through their *power*, but through their *quality* of tone. A simple harmonic accompaniment in chords rarely requires any decided "tone color," but is usually all the better when serving as a neutral tint upon which the solo voice rests for its foundation, and through which its own characteristic quality is thrown into the foreground.

These premises are altered, and the case becomes quite different when the accompaniment contains a melody of its own, which shall at the same time contrast and unite with the solo voice. The reeds of the Swell and Choir Organ then become of the utmost value in developing such a melody, for now their duty becomes that of contrast in quality with the voice, as well as that of harmonic agreement with it. Their characteristic quality is sure to assert itself under such conditions—that is, when they have a melody of their own to enunciate. This quality brings with it the double advantage that we do not need to have the obligato part registered of a disproportionate strength as compared with the voice. It is the quality, not the power, which makes the obligato, thus treated, easily recognizable by the ear, while it still retains its proper subordination as accompaniment to the solo voice.

Application  
of Reed tone

Quality ver-  
sine Power

While we have used the word "melody" above as characteristic of the obligato, yet no melody is thereby to be understood as of equal importance with the solo voice. Contrapuntal motion against the solo voice is the main characteristic, or even harmonic motion, if it be not prolonged, and does not degenerate into commonplace arpeggios.

The following examples will illustrate the use of the various qualities of organ tone—reed, flute, diapason, and string—as employed in the obligato form:

## EXAMPLE 73

*Andante affetuoso.*

Sop'r Solo. \* O . . . speak good of the Lord, all ye works . . . ye works of his

Sw with reed

Man. *p*


Ch. Org.

Ped.

in . . . . all pla - - - ces, all pla - ces of his . . . . do-min - - - ion . . . . etc.

etc.

\* *Benedic Anima* in B flat. D. B., Episcopal Church Music, 1st Series. G. Schirmer.

*Example 73.*—In this example of Soprano solo accompaniment, the  $\frac{9}{8}$  motion (three triplets) is established in the first measure by the left hand upon the Choir (or Great) Organ. With the second measure, the reed enters, imitating the voice, not as to intervals, but in its rhythmic design, thus: |  |

Clearness of  
Effect

The voice pausing upon the high *F* of the second measure permits the ear to clearly distinguish and appreciate this entrance of the obligato, while the quality of the reed, and the interval between it and the voice, precludes the necessity of a loud registration. This obligato use of any solo-stop in accompaniment naturally necessitates the obligato treatment of the pedals likewise, unless the obligato melody is found in the Bass itself, which is then sometimes given at eight-foot pitch upon the manuals. Thus, while the two melodies are united, the obligato does not lose its character as an accompaniment, although preserving its own independent flow.

Reed tone  
below the Fe-  
male Voice

It is to be noted, as a characteristic of this treatment, that the reed never comes into unison with the voice, except as a passing note; furthermore, that it should, with rare exceptions, remain *below the female voice* to produce a good effect. If it lies above, it is sure to obscure it. Measures 4 and 5 of this example show how the reed may occasionally leave this range for a moment to return at once to its subordinate position. As a matter of course, the Swell Pedal must be used to preserve everywhere the proper balance of power in respect to the voice. It may here be said that the expression, "Swell *with* reed" denotes that some other stop or stops are also drawn upon that manual *besides the reed*. These would ordinarily be (1) the Stopped Diapason, to add "body" to the reed, and (2) a delicate four-foot Flute. This latter rarely, especially with female voices. A soft eight-foot string tone (Salicional) also unites well with the Swell-reed, but does not add "body," but rather additional pungency. On the contrary, in organs where the reeds are excellent, as we now often find them in modern instruments, it is frequently better to let the reed speak for itself, entirely unsupported by other stops.

"Swell with  
Reed."

Relation of  
Reed to its  
own Accom-  
paniment.

It should also be observed in the previous example that the reed *never comes into unison with its own accompaniment* upon the Choir or Great Organ. This aids in giving the obligato its maximum prominence, through its quality, and the reed always sounds better when so treated. This may, indeed, be considered a general rule in reed solos *lying above their accompaniment*. (See also remarks under Example 48, at *h*, page 61.)

Reed above  
the Male  
Voice

In case of Tenor or Bass Solos, however, the reed may not unfrequently lie above the voice, providing that the compass be not so extreme as to hazard the blending of voice and obligato. The following excellent example illustrates this manner of treatment, and, at the same time, marks the extreme upward limit within which the reed is effective.

#### EXAMPLE 74.\*

*Tenor Solo.*



\* *Bonum est*, in E flat, by S. P. Warren. G. Schirmer, New York.

The fact that the male voice more readily assimilates with the reed than the female voice, would also permit the above registration to be reversed—that is, the left hand upon the Swell with reed (Swell closed), and the right upon the Choir or Great Organ, with Flute of eight feet.

It not unfrequently occurs in choirs that a solo, assigned by the composer to a Tenor or Bass, is given to Soprano or Alto respectively, and *vice versa*.

Substitution  
of one Solo  
Voice for an-  
other.

This may frequently be allowed when the accompaniment is simply harmonic. Before doing this, in case of obligato accompaniment, the relation of the obligato to the proposed change of voice should be carefully examined, for, if properly written, it has been constructed with reference to a particular kind of voice. Sometimes this can be done with impunity (advanced theoretical students will understand that it must then be constructed according to the rules of Double Counterpoint), but more frequently it is to be avoided. Thus, if Example 74 be sung by a Soprano, the third measure would give us the following relation between voice and

When to be  
avoided

obligato: The reed tone, brought thus into actual unison with

the voice, is the very thing we wish to avoid, on account of "dissimilar qualities in unison," as before explained. This unison would even be objectionable if the obligato were given to a Flute, because the two preceding measures have avoided this, and the ear expects the treatment, thus established, to be logically carried out. As it is, the *octave* existing between the Tenor voice and the obligato obviates this.

Again, the fifth and sixth measures, if sung by Soprano, would produce unpleasant consecutive octaves between the voice and the Bass of the accompaniment. As written, it is in actual unison with the Tenor voice.

The following example illustrates the use of the obligato (with reed) *underlying* the male voice, the remaining accompaniment *overlying* it:

Reed below  
the Male  
Voice

EXAMPLE 75.\*

\* *Cantate Domino* in G. D. B., Episcopal Church Music, 2d Series. G. Schirmer, New York.

mer - - cy and truth to - ward the house of Is - - ra - el.

The above solo for Tenor is here given in the bass clef, that the student may not for a moment lose sight of the actual relations of the voice to the accompaniment as regards pitch. It will be found on examination that, in this instance, the right hand (Swell) and the Pedal Bass together constitute a nearly complete harmonic accompaniment to the solo voice which *lies between them*, and this without the addition of the obligato upon the Choir Organ. As compared with the previous example, this obligato is simple accompaniment without rhythmic or other imitation, but serves to give life and animation to the solo, as well as characteristic color through the reed (clarionet).

More powerful Registration

The quality of the male voice is such that, when the obligato *underlies it* (as it does for the most part in this example), the registration may be more powerful than under the conditions of the previous illustration. In fact, it may demand, in some organs and with some voices, the use of a four-foot register of mild intonation, as well as additional eight-foot tone. This will depend largely upon the strength of the reed.

Effects in the distance

We have elsewhere alluded (note, foot of page 73) to the necessity of an organist's having a mental conception of the effect of his accompaniment as heard in the body of the church. This is doubly important in case of obligato accompaniment, for the registration is very apt to be too strong.

It must not be forgotten that a tone not sung by the voice, but heard at the same moment with it, when of contrasting quality with that voice, asserts itself in a far more decided way, and at a greater distance, than a simple chord of an assimilating quality, in which chord the voice note is duplicated. To this is to be added the fact of contrapuntal or harmonic motion (as the case may be) which is assigned to the obligato; such motion always attracts the attention of the ear. Here proper registration comes into play, for the motion must not be allowed to obscure the solo voice.

Obligato of low Compass with Soprano Voice.

The Soprano voice may also be treated with an obligato accompaniment of low compass, although the opportunity will hardly offer so frequently as when the reed lies nearer the voice, as in Example 73. When the low range is to be employed for the obligato, in connection with the Soprano voice, one or more harmonic parts must intervene between it and the voice, both to preserve the harmonic completeness of the accompaniment and to form a closer union with the voice. The following example illustrates this:

## EXAMPLE 76.\*

*Soprano Solo.* *poco rall.*

To Him shall pray't un - ceas - ing And dai - ly vows as - cend, His

Ch

Sw. with reed *p*

Ped.

*a tempo*

king - dom still in - creas - - ing, A king - dom with - out end. etc.

*a tempo*

etc.

The accompaniment to Example 76 is essentially in three parts, with certain points treated in four parts to complete the harmony. The compass of the obligato in this illustration is virtually that which should be adopted when it is desired to employ a string-toned stop—this range—descending to about the lowest *G* of the manual—containing their most characteristic tones. No special example is needed on this point, but a few words may be said as to their use.

Modern organs generally contain at least one string-toned stop of eight feet to each manual. Upon the Great Organ, the *Gamba*; upon the Swell, the *Salicional*; and if the organ possesses three manuals, a *Violin Diapason* (*Geigen Principal*) or *Keraulophon* upon the Choir Organ. The *Gamba* of the Great Organ is ordinarily too powerful to use for an obligato solo accompaniment, even with male voices. On the other hand, the *Salicional* of the Swell is generally too weak for this purpose. The voicing of the Choir Organ (lying between the two) will frequently best lend itself to the obligato treatment.

In organs of but two manuals, the player must, for the above reason, dispense with the Great *Gamba*, except when the obligato accompanies several voices, singing either in unison or in parts. The Swell *Salicional* blends charmingly with the voice in simple harmonic accompaniment (in chords), and this use is to be preferred to the obligato treatment—although it might serve in passages of great delicacy.

The Violin or Violina is the title of the string-toned stop of four feet in the Swell, and is the octave to the *Salicional*. Its peculiar telling quality is such, that it is better not to use it in solo accompaniment, as it never blends well with the voice, especially when heard at a distance from the keys. This does not hold good when several voices are to be accompanied, nor in organ solos. In solo accompaniment, where the four-foot tone is required, a delicate four-foot Flute added to the *Salicional* will accommodate itself far better to the voice.

String-tone  
Obligato

\* "Hail to the Lord's Anointed." D. B., Special Hymns in Anthem form. G. Schirmer, New York.



Open Diapason Eight-foot Obligato.

The Open Diapason of eight feet in our modern organs (the Great Organ Diapason is meant) will almost uniformly be too powerful for any use with solo voices in the manner of which we are now speaking. With the older instruments built some fifteen or twenty years previous to the present day (1877), it might doubtless be made use of occasionally. With a quartet or double quartet of voices, the modern full-toned Diapason can sometimes be introduced for a short passage with fine effect, if the obligato lies beneath the whole vocal harmony. If the choir be larger, other stops must of course be added. This will cover its characteristic tone measurably, but the obligato will not thereby lose its effect. A specimen of this episodical obligato use of the Open Diapason follows, taken from the "Short Requiem" of Mozart at the passage, "*Quam olim Abraham promisisti.*"

## EXAMPLE 77.\*

The musical score for Example 77 is presented in two systems. The top system is for the Voices, with a treble and bass staff. The bottom system is for the Accompaniment, also with treble and bass staves. The key signature has two flats (B-flat and E-flat), and the time signature is 3/4. The vocal part begins with a mezzo-forte (*mf*) dynamic and ends with a diminuendo (*dim*). The organ accompaniment features the Great Diapason (Gr. Diap.), Swell (Sw.), and Pedal (Ped.). The lyrics are: "Thou didst promise, didst promise forever".

The entrance of the Pedal (which is coupled to the Swell) will be noticed. By this means, the left hand is enabled to leave the Great Organ for the Swell, through which the final diminuendo is accomplished.

Flute Obligato, Eight-foot.

The whole family of Flutes, in contradistinction to the reeds, almost invariably sound better when the obligato *overlies* the voice. This arises partly from the fact that the characteristic quality of this stop, as with its orchestral prototype, lies in its upward rather than its lower and medium compass. This, it will be perceived, is a radical difference as compared with both string and reed stops.

Among the Flutes, we class the various Stopped Diapasons of wood and metal as coming essentially under this head. The fact remains, however, that an "open" Flute (that is, where the pipes are *not* stopped by a wooden plug or metallic cap) is best suited to overlie the voice. Such a stop is the Melodia or Claribella of either the Great or Choir Organ.

Double and "Rohr" Flutes

Modern instruments have borrowed from Germany two admirable stops of the Flute family, formerly unknown to our organs, but now becoming common. The Doppel-Flöte (Double Flute, with two mouths, one on either side of the pipe), an "open" stop of great fulness and body of tone, and the Rohr-Flöte, a stopped pipe of both metal and wood, and differing by a certain agreeable *hollowness* of tone from the usual Stopped Diapason. These stops are both

\* Second Motet Collection, page 76. O. Ditson & Co., Boston.

† "Rohr" signifies in German (in this connection) the hollow reed found on wet or swampy lands or near water. Hence the appropriateness of the name above given.

of eight-foot tone, although the Rohr-Flöte is frequently met with as a four-foot stop. Neither of these stops lends itself readily to obligato use; the Doppel-Flöte on account of great fulness of tone, the Rohr-Flöte on account of the hollow quality mentioned. The former may be occasionally employed, more especially with a powerful male voice. These stops reverse the ordinary flute characteristic previously spoken of, and their best tones are those of the medium and approximately low compass.

Characteris-  
tic Range.

*Sopr. Solo.* EXAMPLE 78.\*

The above example, with the following, shows nearly the best solo range of the "open" Flute-stop, eight feet. It will not cover the solo voice, and, indeed, if that voice be large and full, it may require the assistance of a Flute of four feet. When the eight-foot Flute is used alone, and it is desired that the obligato descend to a comparatively low compass, the accompaniment upon the other manual should, at least, partially cease, in order that the Flute be unobscured when it reaches that part of its compass where it lacks the brilliancy which elsewhere secures attention. The ending of the solo which opens with Example 78 will show this.

"Open" Flute  
Eight-foot  
Range

EXAMPLE 79.

Here it is seen that the Swell preserves the rhythm intact, but by means of the rests the downward progress of the Flute is rendered clear.

Flutes of four feet, if of delicate quality, may sometimes be used to double the solo voice in an upper octave, as in Example 80.

Flutes of  
four feet

EXAMPLE 80.

It is evident that the tone of the Flute is here *two* octaves distant from the voice, on which account it does not "cover," and sometimes proves useful in securing accurate intonation. It is rarely suited to obligato use, as being either too piercing on the one hand, or too delicate to be effective upon the other, according to the voicing.

The eight-foot Flute sometimes moves *with the voice* an octave higher, but this stop being ordinarily found only on the Great or Choir Organ, will usually prove too loud employed in this way, if the voice have a passage of subdued character.

## EXAMPLE 81.

the first . fruits of them that sleep.

performer can subdue his tone to *pp*. On the other hand, the Great Organ or Choir Flute, of eight feet, would be unable to do this. The Swell will probably possess no eight-foot Flute (the Stopped Diapason will not answer in quality); therefore, this effect is best represented upon the organ by a Salicional (as the *piano* of the string orchestra) and a four-foot Flute, played as written, but speaking, of course, an octave higher.

It should be evident to the student, from the illustrations thus far given, that the obligato principle will find use in adaptation to the organ of accompaniments from oratorios, masses, and the like, whenever the accompaniment takes upon itself a special melodic significance.

Three Tone  
qualities.

In many cases, the obligato treatment will present (as in most of the examples cited) three distinct yet blending qualities to the ear—namely: (1) the solo voice, (2) the solo-stop, and (3) the harmonic accompaniment to both of these, played upon a second manual with what may be termed a *neutral quality* of tone, but supporting both the others.

Tone con-  
trast not a ne-  
cessity

Still, obligato accompaniment does not necessarily imply contrast in registration. Cases occur when both hands may execute both the obligato proper and the accompaniment upon one manual. In such case, the registration (for a solo voice) should be without reeds.

## EXAMPLE 82.†

Alto Solo.

To thee Che-ru-bim and Ser - a - phim con - tin - ual-ly do cry ...

Ch.

rit.

etc.

\* The last two measures preceding the final note as given above will be found to differ in respect to the setting of the words from both Novello's and Boosey's editions. It, however, agrees with that edited by John Bishop. The form given is taken from the orchestral score with *Mozart's additional accompaniments* lately published by Peters, of Leipzig. It is evidently correct, for by the other setting false accents occur. The small notes at the close are those assigned by Mozart to the Solo Flute and Clarinet respectively.

† *Te Deum* in E flat, by S. P. Warren G. Schirmer, New York.

The previous example illustrates this, and requires no farther comment. In accompanying a full choir, this obligato form (upon one manual) is often employed, as contrasting effects in registration would evidently be thrown away when a number of voices are singing. In this same connection, when the voices move in unison, and the organ gives the supporting harmonies, the accompaniment, by somewhat of a license, is often said to be "*obligato*." In one sense it is—that is, it is *required* to establish the harmony, modulations, etc., intended by the composer, but it is not strictly obligato in the sense we have attempted to illustrate, unless its own melodic character and independence are well defined. Thus, the following example is but a specimen of simple harmonic accompaniment:

Form some-  
times called  
Obligato.

## EXAMPLE 83.

*Voices in unison.*

We praise thee, O God, we ac-knowl-edge thee to be the Lord, All the earth doth wor-ship thee, the

Here, it will be seen that the voices have to rely essentially upon themselves for rhythmic motion; therefore the accompaniment, although here absolutely *necessary*, does not fulfil the idea of the true obligato. Compare with the following example:

## EXAMPLE 84.\*

*Voices in unison.*

We praise thee, O God, we ac-knowl-edge thee to be the Lord; All the

earth doth wor-ship thee,— the Fa-ther ev-er-last-ing.

Ped. doppio.

\* *Te Deum* in C. Episcopal Church Music, D. B., 3d Series. G. D. Russell & Co., Boston.

The accompaniment to Example 84 shows a melodic independence of its own, on the one hand, and on the other a greatly increased sense of rhythm. It therefore deserves the name of obligato accompaniment, although unassisted by contrasting registration, as we have seen in accompaniment of a solo voice. When and where the obligato form is to be preferred to the simple harmonic accompaniment is a matter for taste and experience to decide. This of course applies to a choice in *composing* such forms.

Value of the  
obligato form.

We have previously alluded to the fact that the student can not, himself, govern the form of these accompaniments in the sense that it was found possible in choral and simple harmonic accompaniment, but must registrate them as he finds them. Before closing this chapter, then, we would ask the attention of the readers of this work to a few words in advocacy of the obligato form, for solo accompaniment more especially.

By way of preliminary, the author would say that he has made use of so many examples from his own church writings, against his original wish and intention, for the following reason.

This work has been written among so many distracting professional and other duties, that it has been impossible for him to cite satisfactory specimens on this point from classical and other authorities, owing to the amount of time which the necessary research would claim, and which he reluctantly realized he could not hope to call his own. If, however, the examples clearly illustrate the point at issue, his object—the exposition of a certain theory—will have been attained.

At the rate musical education is extending, we shall have continual accessions to the number of church composers. It therefore behooves the young men who are studying the subject to consider theoretically the best forms of solo accompaniment, among which the obligato, although not the only one, should find a prominent place. In the treatment which is here advocated, there is nothing essentially original as far as the obligato is concerned. It is the principle which every organ student finds in very many compositions for organ solo, but here applied to the accompaniment of the solo voice, or even chorus.

Neither is the obligato form advocated merely for purposes of musical ornamentation, although it can produce that; nor simply to create pleasing contrasts of tone (registration) appealing to the ear.

A source of  
Rhythmic Mo-  
tion.

Its real value consists in this: that it *develops and sustains* Rhythmic Motion by means legitimate to the organ as an instrument.

To illustrate this important point.

Where many voices are singing together, the rhythmic accent is intensified—in case of a solo voice, it is proportionately weakened. Here the accompaniment steps in to supply this want. The following example is perfection itself, regarded solely from this point of view, but unfortunately it is wholly foreign to the nature of the organ.

EXAMPLE 85.



motion as is suited to the instrument?

What, then, is to be done? The accompaniment here given—a common formula, suitable for piano or orchestra—is inadmissible for the organ, and yet the singer requires rhythmic assistance. Is it not evident that we must seek it in treatment characteristic of the organ—that is, in *contrapuntal* motion more or less strict, or in such harmonic

To successfully write such accompaniments, of course presupposes the composer to have not

merely a fair natural talent, but also *to have studied*. Would not a state of things which should exclude such as have *not* studied be a God-send to the Church Music of America?

Study  
required

The objection is often made that such accompaniments, when written, exceed the ability of the common or average organist. It must not be lost sight of, however, that the average organist of to-day is already a very different individual technically from him of even ten years ago. It must not be lost sight of that the study of the organ as an instrument is being pursued, on all sides, in a totally different spirit, and with consequent different results as compared with the manner of even ten years ago.

Objection  
to this treat-  
ment

The same may be said of theoretical instruction. Are we, then, to adapt ourselves to the coming generation, or to the fossils of an essentially unmusical past? To illustrate still further: let us take Example 76, and set the accompaniment as follows, premising that the rhythm has been well defined up to the entrance of the solo voice:

## EXAMPLE 86.

Or in this manner:

## EXAMPLE 87.

In Example 86, the necessary motion is indeed preserved, but with what effect as played upon the organ!

In Example 87, the organ treatment is well enough, but we lose the marked rhythm where increased, not decreased motion is desired, and the effect suffers accordingly. Where *repose* is the effect desired, especially when the preceding movement has been brilliant, such an accompaniment (harmonic) as Example 87 furnishes may answer every purpose. Where this is not the case, but where motion *equivalent* to that of Example 86 is desired, some form of obligato treatment suggests itself at once. It is this alone which will naturally supply this motion, and at the same time be thoroughly organ-like in character.

"Repose" in  
Accom-  
paniment

If these words but induce our young students, both practical and theoretical, to give this branch of the subject the special attention which the author fully believes to be its due, he will be amply repaid for his labor.

## CHAPTER IX.

---

### ADAPTATION OF PIANO AND ORCHESTRAL ACCOMPANIMENTS TO THE ORGAN.

Necessity  
of such adap-  
tations.

A KNOWLEDGE of the above subject is indispensable to a good organist, for, perhaps, not one half of the compositions performed in our churches have accompaniments suitably written for the organ. Those suited only to the piano abound, even in compositions whose vocal character may render them worthy of church use. This state of things is unfortunate, for the player who may have tried the piece over upon the piano finds, upon coming to the organ, that the accompaniment falls off greatly in effect, and not unfrequently sounds simply detestable if played literally as written. Still, such pieces are expected to find their principal use in church with organ accompaniment; therefore the player has to adapt the same to his instrument as best he may. A woful amount of ignorance seems to exist as to the different ways by which an accompanist may help himself in this respect. To illustrate what may ordinarily be done to this end is the purpose of this chapter.

These piano accompaniments, thus found in works intended for almost exclusive use with the organ as accompanying instrument, have originated in one of two ways—either (1) in ignorance of how to write a proper organ accompaniment, or (2) from the fact that the original work was intended for orchestral accompaniment.

Piano Accom-  
paniments  
originally so  
written.

As to the first, it is sometimes argued that such piano accompaniments are written that the piece may prove of use in the social circle as well as in church. The fact remains, however, that when such pieces find favor, their church use far exceeds their private use. Besides this, a very ordinary pianist can easily adapt an organ accompaniment (providing it is not *obligato*) to the piano, by repeating chords which are sustained by the organ, etc., while to adapt a piano accompaniment suitably to the organ requires much more dexterity and knowledge.

Piano Accom-  
paniments de-  
rived from Or-  
chestral  
Score

Under the second head—namely: pieces originally composed with orchestral accompaniment—are comprised the many selections and extracts from masses, oratorios, and motets, with orchestra. The *piano* accompaniment with which these pieces are provided is but a simple reduction from the orchestral score, and the problem for the organist is to make a second adaptation fitting this derived piano accompaniment to the organ. It is in this sense only that we have to do with adaptation of orchestral accompaniments in this chapter, not with adaptation to the organ from the original orchestral score itself. This latter demands a competent knowledge of orchestration as well as of the organ, and is foreign to the purpose of this work. There are, however, occasional differences between accompaniments originally composed for the piano, and piano accompaniments reduced from an orchestral score. We shall endeavor, before closing this

chapter, to give some explanation of this, so far as it may be done without entering into the subject of orchestration proper, which is, of course, an independent study.

The first condition of accompaniment is harmonic support. Next follows the establishment of rhythmic accent. In four-part vocal work, we have already seen that the voices themselves may establish such accent, but in solos, or where voices sing in unison, this is usually insufficient.

Contradistinction between Piano and Organ Accompaniments

In case of piano accompaniments, the rhythmic accent is attained by increased rhythmic motion, as compared with the vocal parts. Thus, the accompaniment may reiterate the same chord several times to one note of the voice or voices, sometimes interspersing rests to heighten the accentuation.

In organ accompaniments, on the other hand, the motion should be *harmonic* or contrapuntal rather than *purely rhythmic*, to be suited to the nature of the instrument. That this may be clearly understood, as a basis for subsequent explanation, two examples follow which illustrate respectively each kind of motion:

#### EXAMPLE 88.

*Tenors and Basses*

O Lord, have mer - cy up - on . . us. have mer - - - cy up - on us.

The above illustrates a common form of *piano* accompaniment, and it is evident that the sense of motion is accomplished purely by rhythmic means, the harmonies being simple and reiterated. Played literally upon the organ as it stands, the effect would not only be wholly unsuited to the character of the instrument, but destructive to the sentiment of the text, and absolutely vulgar! Yet how many accompaniments we find written in this manner, and played *as written*, from lack of knowledge on the part of the organist how to adapt them properly to his instrument! In case of such an accompaniment played upon the piano, the harmonic *resonance* of that instrument seems to obviate the broken effect to a good extent, especially when the pedal is made use of, smoothing over and connecting the separate chords. Thus, a moment's thought will show that in the second measure of Example 88 (for instance), when the last chord of that measure is struck upon the piano, the two previous chords still continue sounding by means of the pedal, collecting tone, as it were, upon the same strings. With the organ, nothing of the kind occurs, and therefore the comparatively broken effect if used thus; each chord asserting itself radically and disconnectedly. There are two ways of adapting such accompaniments, according as one or two manuals may be employed. We will first consider what may be accomplished upon one manual in the way of adaptation.

"Motion" by Rhythmic means only

Before doing this, however, we proceed to give the accompaniment originally set to the former example:

"Harmonic" motion.



## EXAMPLE 89.\*

*Tenors and Basses.*

O Lord, have mer - cy up - on ... us, have mer - - - cy up - on us.

The motion is here seen to be essentially harmonic—that is, created by *varied* harmonies rather than by reiteration of the same chords within the measure. The present treatment is not only peculiarly suited to the organ, but lends added dignity to the words—the reverse effect to that of the former example.

The momentary lack of motion in the fourth measure of the accompaniment is atoned for by the rhythmic progression of the voice at this point.

Adaptation  
upon one  
Manual.

The true manner of treating such accompaniments as Example 88 would doubtless be to remodel them after the general pattern of harmonic motion as shown in Example 89. As this would be asking too much from the majority of players, we will suppose the accompaniment to Example 88 to be given, *as it stands*, for organ adaptation. The problem may be solved thus:

## EXAMPLE 90.

Consonance  
of sustained  
tones Mo-  
tion below  
them.

Here, it should be noticed that the “whole notes,” forming almost continuously the upper notes of the accompaniment, serve two purposes: First. They avoid the broken effect of Example 88, preserve the continuity of organ tone, and form an effective (unbroken) two-part harmony with the Bass, or a three-part harmony including the voice part. Thus, the continuity of organ tone being preserved, the “quarter-note motion” *coming between* the two extremes can not assert itself unduly, but is simply felt as a welcome addition to the rhythmic effect. If a special rhythmic accent is desired, the pedal may be employed in the first two measures as represented by the small notes. Second. It should be observed that these upper tones stand continually in the relation of consonant intervals (sixths and thirds) to the voice part. In this way, an intimate harmonic relation is preserved between the voice and the sustained tones, while the repeated quarter-notes fulfil the subordinate duty of creating the desired sense of motion without disturbing the unity of the whole. That this result (Example 90) is superior to Example 88, but still inferior to Example 89, in an artistic point of view, should be sufficiently evident.

\* *Te Deum* in F. Dr. J. B. Dykes. (Novello's Parish Choir Book—Modern Composers.)

It by no means follows, from the relation of the sustained tones to the voice (in thirds and sixths), as shown in Example 90, that other intervals may not frequently be sustained in preference to the above—such as fundamental tones (or octaves), fifths and even fourths. To illustrate this, let us again take Example 88, and (with a few melodic alterations) *prefix the treble clef* to the voice part, thus giving us a new example:

EXAMPLE 91.

O Lord, have mer - cy up - on... us, have mer - - - cy up - on us

The voice now begins with the third of the chord where it originally began with the fifth. It is seen that the sustained tone is at first the fundamental tone of the chord, as also in the third and fifth measures. The second measure is weak harmonically, in that the sustained tone creates at first a bare fourth in its relations to the voice, and a fifth to the Bass. A more serious objection to this form is that the motion, lying exclusively above the sustained tone, renders it partially liable to the same criticism as Example 88. A better form of treatment would be to begin with the fifth as sustained tone, thus:

Motion above  
the sustained  
tones.

EXAMPLE 92.

Voice. etc. a a a etc.

At *a*, it is seen that this accompaniment also lacks the third of the chord upon the accent of the measure. This tone is, however, *supplied by the voice*, differing advantageously in this respect from the second measure of Example 91.

A careful comparison of these examples and the remarks applicable to each, will enable the student to deduce this general rule—namely: whatever tone is sustained, that tone must stand in the relation of a third or sixth to the voice part. Fourths and fifths may sometimes be permitted when the effect they produce is but transient, especially when they occur upon the unaccented part of the measure. It is to be noted further that it is preferable to have the sustained tones lie *above* the notes which give the rhythmic motion, when a reasonably legato organ effect is desired.

Application  
of the princi-  
ple of sus-  
tained tones

In accompanimental figuration of a more elaborate character, the same principle will be found to obtain. A few illustrations of the treatment of some common formulas of accompaniment follow. From an examination of these, the pupil should be able to treat other forms as far as practicable upon the organ.

## EXAMPLE 93 (AS WRITTEN).

Compare the above with the following :

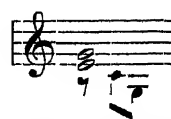
## EXAMPLE 94.

"Triplet"  
and other  
Figuration.

At *a*, Example 94, the triplet "springs" from the sustained tone, and the octave of the Bass (C) is "held over," so that on the last note of the triplet the full chord is heard. This corresponds measurably with the effect produced by using the pedal of the piano. It will depend somewhat upon the nature of the accompaniment desired whether these tones be held over in this manner, or the single sustained note held. For an accompaniment intended to be light and transparent, it is often preferable not to hold them, as the sustained tone will give the passage a sufficiently legato character. If the piano figure contains double notes, thus:



both the third and fifth may be sustained from the outset, thus :



The Manual Bass may likewise sustain the fundamental tone (as at *b*), the pedals supporting the rhythmic accent by repeating the fundamental tone.

At *b*, comparison of Examples 93 and 94 will show that by means of the eighth-rest,

introduced after the first triplet has been heard, the subsequent triplets are produced by the sustained tone being heard alone on every recurrence of the rest.

At *c*, besides the form given, the two upper tones only may be held down, leaving the last two to move freely.

At *d*, three sustained tones are given in "whole notes," besides which the episodic retaining of the fifth (*g*) is to be noted in the right hand.

At *e*, Example 93, the Bass is sometimes written thus, simply for the purpose of powerfully sustaining the fundamental tone. When the piano accompaniment has been derived from an original orchestral setting, it sometimes denotes the entrance of the kettle-drums (*Timpani*). Notice that the effect at *e*, Example 94, given as an organ equivalent, is produced by a prolonged shake of the fundamental tone with the half step below; not with the step or half step above.

At *f*, it becomes a matter of judgment whether the "tremolo" is to be executed as given in Example 94, or by simply sustaining *all* the tones of the chord. In accompaniments of medium strength or soft effects, and even with the full Swell, especially in crescendo, such a tremolo is frequently useful. This occurs less frequently upon the Great Organ on account of the more positive quality of tone, and is to be wholly avoided when string tone predominates, on account of the slow speech of these pipes.

Examples of a similar kind to those grouped under Example 94 might be multiplied at great length, but the intelligent pupil should have no difficulty in applying the general principle of adaptation to all other forms which may be executed upon one manual. Some piano accompaniments will, of course, occur which are simply impossible to adapt with any satisfactory result as an organ accompaniment.

The employment of two manuals, while requiring a greater technical ability on the part of the performer, furnishes the means of adaptation of many accompaniments which would be found impossible adequately to adapt upon one manual.

"Shake" or  
Tremolo in  
the Bass

Adaptations  
by means  
of two  
Manuals.

EXAMPLE 95.

In the above illustrations, the sustained tones give the complete chord upon a second manual. The arpeggio, or figured accompaniment (as at *c*), is played upon the first manual—that is, upon the manual which has the strongest registration. It is evident that in this way a perfect legato is attainable, while yet the motion produced by the arpeggio is distinctly felt. This is analogous to the use of wind instruments in orchestration, which frequently sustain the fundamental harmonies while the strings move in arpeggios or other figures.

In this mode of accompaniment, the Bass must necessarily be assigned to the pedals, leaving generally a three-part chord to the left hand. This chord is, of course, derived from the arpeggio or essential harmony of the figured passage itself, therefore such a knowledge of harmony as will enable the accompanist to detect instantly of what essential harmonies such figuration is composed is an absolute necessity. The great majority of piano-forte accompaniments may, by this use of two manuals, be made available, or at least respectable, for organ use.

Subordina-  
tion of the  
sustained  
Chord as to  
Pitch

It will be noted that the soft chord sustained upon the second manual (Example 95, *a* and *b*) does not contain the highest note of the arpeggio given to the first manual. This method of keeping the sustained tones subordinate in pitch will be found generally advisable. With two manuals, the notes of the arpeggio should not be held down as in Example 94, where but one manual was employed. In fact, where smoothness of effect is sufficiently secured by the sustained tones of a second manual, the arpeggio may even be effectively executed with the staccato touch, care being taken to select such stops as will most promptly respond to this touch.

Registra-  
tion  
as affected by  
varied Fig-  
uration

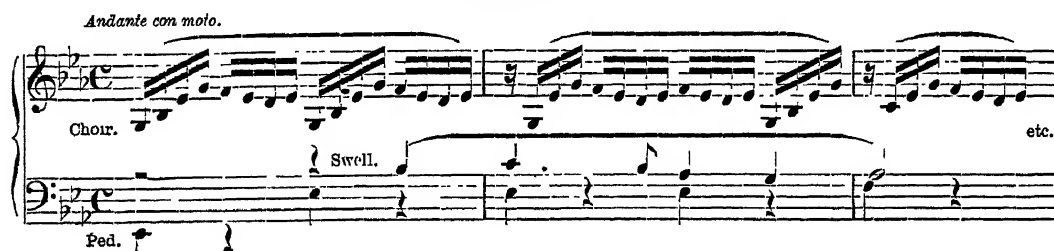
Where the figuration is that of a simple arpeggio (as at *a* and *b* of the previous example), it is better to avoid reeds and play such arpeggios upon the Choir or Great Organ, with the accompaniment upon the Swell. For such sustained yet subdued tones, the Swell string-toned stops lend themselves with admirable effect. Flutes of eight feet are best fitted for the figuration itself under these conditions.

The case is altered to a considerable extent when the figuration ceases to be that of a simple arpeggio, and takes upon itself more of an independent melodic character as at *c*, Example 95. Figuration of this kind may appropriately be played upon the Swell with reeds, and accompanied upon the Choir or Great Organ; for here the figuration has a melodic value approaching that we have already considered under the head of "obligato accompaniment."

Alternation  
of Manuals.

Alternation of these effects may also be employed—that is, the figuration being alternately performed upon the Swell with reed, and upon the Choir or Great Organ without reed. Thus in the following example from Mendelssohn's "St. Paul," the accompaniment to the chorus "Happy and blest are they," is as follows:

#### EXAMPLE 96.



During the prelude, which opens as above, it is better to have the figuration upon the Choir Organ, that the melody which is to form the principal subject of the coming chorus may be announced upon the Swell with reed. Later, however, when the voices enter and the above is repeated as accompaniment, it is better to give the *figuration* to the Swell with reed, as the reed quality asserts itself better, and the motion will be sooner felt by the voices. The theme, which is given to the reed in the above example, being now actually sung by the voices, does not require reed registration to give it due prominence, whereas the figuration does.

Recognition  
of appropriate  
form of Adap-  
tation.

In adapting these accompaniments, a certain expertness is requisite, in order to recognize, at sight, the *form* in which a given piano accompaniment may most appropriately assume in its organ adaptation. Thus the *original* (piano) form of Example 95 at *c* may have been expressed thus (compare with *a* of the following example):

## EXAMPLE 97.



At *a*, it devolves upon the accompanist to recognize the form which he may give this purely piano-forte setting upon the organ. As it stands, it is wholly opposed to the nature of the latter instrument.

At *b*, we are led to consider certain conditions under which dissonances appear in the figuration, and how they may affect the treatment of the second manual.

Dissonances frequently appear in figured accompaniments, and, if properly introduced, heighten the effect. They almost uniformly appear in the character of "passing notes," and their treatment as such is to be studied under the rules of harmony and composition. For the present, we have simply to do with the *form of harmonization with which the second manual is to accompany them*, without criticising whether the dissonances themselves are introduced in the best manner or not, but taking them as we find them.

Dissonances  
in the Figuration

For those who are unfamiliar with the general principle governing the introduction of such dissonances, it may here be said that in a figure composed of a group of four notes (as in the previous examples), not more than two tones dissonant to the accompanying chord should occur.

Thus, taking the second group at *a*, Example 97,

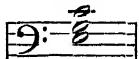
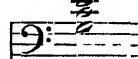


the A $\flat$  and F $\sharp$  are seen to be

the two dissonant tones, the accompanying chord being that of the dominant seventh. In the fourth group, we have three consonant tones, the F $\sharp$  alone being dissonant. In this case (Example 97, *a*), careful examination will show that the dissonant tone, whether rising or falling, leads to a *concord*, the *lowest* tone of the figuration lying *above* its accompaniment.

At *b*, Example 97, observe the progression D $\sharp$ —E in the figuration, as compared with its accompaniment. The latter tone (E) is at the same time the upper tone of the second manual. It is this fact of the motion becoming *absorbed* in the accompaniment, by entering into actual unison with it immediately after the dissonance, which renders this form of the accompaniment faulty, as it produces a blurred effect or disappearance of the figuration. Should such a figuration be given, the accompanist must avoid this by an inversion of the chord. In this instance,

Faulty "ab-  
sorption" of  
Dissonance  
in the ac-  
companied  
Chord.

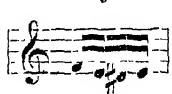
the simplest form would be to give the left hand thus:  rather than 

The harmonic relation of the D $\sharp$  and E in the figuration, to the E of the accompaniment, is now changed from that of a minor second and actual unison ("prime") to that of a major seventh and octave. By this means, the melodic character of the figuration is not obscured, but clearly perceived. Notwithstanding this, it will be evident that the figuration does not stand in so agreeable a relation to the accompaniment as in Example 95, *b*. This is because of the

changed relation of the upper accompanimental tone to the figuration—namely, a fifth instead of a third.

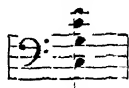
Occasional  
omission of an  
Interval in  
the ac-  
companying  
Chord.

A full chord—that is, where fundamental, third, and fifth are represented—is not always necessary in the accompaniment; as, for instance, when the figuration is represented by



The accompaniment to this should be, the two upper notes being

played by the left hand, and the lowest representing the pedal tone. The reason of this is obvious when we consider both the F and D $\sharp$  in the light of passing notes (or appoggiaturas), resolving respectively from above and below to the tone E, thus forming the essential harmony.



At c, Example 97, we have an illustration of the treatment which may be employed when the rhythm is to be very distinctly marked. Here it devolves upon the figuration itself, with the upper tone of the accompaniment, to preserve the legato effect.

Figuration  
in the Bass.

When the figuration occurs in the left hand, it may, in the majority of cases, be executed as written. This is especially the case when the legato is preserved by the right hand and by a sustained pedal. A few illustrations follow.

#### EXAMPLE 98.

MASS IN B FLAT NEUKOMM.



Pedal simpli-  
fication.  
Omission of  
occasional  
Manual  
Notes.

The small notes at \*\* are added for the pedal, the original piano (or orchestral) accompaniment not containing them. This method of simplification is frequently employed in accompaniments of this kind, especially when the pedal gives, not only the fundamental harmonies, but also the vocal bass played in the lower octave as here.

It will be seen that if the above be played upon the Great Organ, *with that manual coupled to the pedal*, there will be an interference of the left hand and pedal upon the first note of each measure. On this account, it is advisable to execute such passages after the following formula—

namely: etc.

It is evident that this is merely a *difference to the eye*, but not to the ear, as the low B flat of the Great Organ *does "speak"* by means of the pedal coupling. The advantage of the form suggested lies in the non-interference of the left hand with the key pulled down by the pedal. When such a unison-meeting of finger and pedal occurs upon a given key, the sensation, as most organists are aware, is not a pleasant one.

Sustaining or  
repeating  
the same  
Pedal tone.

As a general rule, when the same pedal tone fills two or more successive measures, it may be continuously sustained from measure to measure, provided the rhythm is sufficiently marked in the other parts. This can not be the case here, as it is the bass to which we look for the

rhythmic accent principally. For this reason, the pedal tone is to be repeated in each measure, and if the rhythmic effect still be deemed insufficient, the following pedal form may be resorted to—namely:



These forms of simplifying a florid orchestral bass for the organ are generally preferable to performing the passage as written; although an expert organist, possessed of sufficient pedal execution, may, in rare instances, be justified in playing them literally.

## EXAMPLE 99.

HAYDN 3D MASS

The above example comes under the same head as the previous one. In place of the ascending scale with which the orchestral basses begin the movement, the pedals of the organ give the vocal bass in the lower octave. In this example, it will be noticed that there is no interference between the left hand and such keys as may be affected by the Great to Pedal coupler.

It occasionally happens that formulas of accompaniment which (transcribed from the original orchestral score) are given in their piano-forte setting to the right hand, may, in case of the organ, be given to the left hand in preference.

Transposition  
of Motion  
from Right to  
Left hand.

Thus, in the following example, the common figure at *a* (Example 100) may change its form, when executed, to that at *b*.

## EXAMPLE 100.

It is especially useful to adopt the organ form at *b* as a substitute for the piano form given at *a*, whenever a closely connected legato is desired, while yet the sense of motion is to remain unimpaired. This is easily accomplished if two manuals be employed, that for the left hand being registered slightly louder, while the sustained tones may even have a four-foot stop of mild intonation added to them. The justification of the change of figure at *b* from the form at *a* will, perhaps, be understood better if we give the orchestral form from which Example 100, *a*, has been derived—the scoring being extremely simple.

Example of  
Orchestral  
Derivation.



## EXAMPLE 101.

MASS IN E FLAT ANDRÉ

Flutes.  
Clarionets

Horns.  
Bassoons

Bass Solo

Et in - car - na - tus est, etc.

Violin, 1. 2

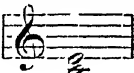
Strings

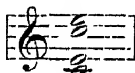
Viola.

Violoncello.  
Contrabass.  
[actual tone]

The form of arpeggio chosen as a piano adaptation, in Example 100, *a*, gives the fifth as its highest note. This, so far as may be, through use of the pedal, corresponds with the sustained tones of the wind instruments shown in Example 101, while yet its principal mission is to give the rhythmic motion.

At *b*, Example 100, the organ form is seen to approach more nearly to the orchestral effect.

The two sustained tones  give, with the addition of a four-foot stop, their octaves,

thus:  This corresponds exactly (in pitch, but not in quality, of course) with the

tones sustained by the Flutes, Clarionets, 1st Horn and 1st Bassoon, in Example 101. The tones represented by the 2d Horn and 2d Bassoon can not be sustained, but are virtually given in the arpeggio upon the other manual, in connection with the pedal. The form of the arpeggio (Example 100, *b*) is seen to be taken from the 1st Violin part (Example 101), played in the lower octave. By the use of two manuals, as here designed, it would be possible in this instance to play all the string parts literally, as well as give the sustained wind tones. This may not unfrequently be feasible, but the additional difficulty of performance does not, as a rule, render such treatment desirable. Such a form as that at *b*, Example 100, suffices.

Without entering into the complex subject of orchestral scoring, it is seen, by Example 101, that in the orchestra the figuration falls ordinarily to the lot of the stringed instruments, but the sustained notes to the wind, according to their nature, the result being the unity of repose and motion.

Procedure in  
case of a  
Piano-forte  
Adaptation.

In making a piano-forte adaptation, the figuration is the first thing transcribed, together with the bass. Then follow such hints of the sustained (filling-in) harmonies as the nature of the piece and the nature of the piano will allow. It is clear that with the organ, especially through the use of the obligato pedal, we can accomplish more. Of the piano form of adaptation, Example 100, *a*, furnishes the simplest possible illustration, but the student must remember that

the accompaniments to all the oratorios, masses, etc., are, as a rule, nothing but similarly derived *piano* accompaniments. It remains, then, for him, when again re-adapting them for the organ, to supply the lack of sustained tones, which tones really exist in the original orchestral form, either above, below, or buried in the midst of the harmony.

As the majority of organists make no study of orchestral scores, it becomes a matter of judgment as to *what* tones shall be sustained. The author hopes that this chapter may furnish some hints to this end, for the use of those who have no time, nor, perhaps, inclination to acquire the requisite knowledge through means of a sufficient study of instrumentation itself.

## EXAMPLE 102.

"CREDO," BEETHOVEN MASS IN C

At *a*, in the above example, the piano form establishes the motion, both by the regularly pulsating  $F\sharp$  in the bass, and also by the tremolo which here lies between melody and bass.

At *b*, the organ form of the same example, we retain two sustained tones, which, with the melody, produces an independent three-part harmony. The repetition of the  $F\sharp$ , here absolutely necessary to the establishment of the marked rhythm desired, is carried out in a much more effective way than the piano form of the same thing—namely, by the pedal in the lower octave played staccato. The tremolo or prolonged shake, coming between the legato melody and the two sustained tones, may be retained literally with good effect. Thus, the organ form comes much nearer the orchestral original, even when we leave out all considerations of registration, as the required motion is preserved upon the one hand, while, upon the other, the sustained tones give the passage an inner unity which the piano form fails to accomplish even with the use of the pedal.

Motion in the middle parts with more than one sustained tone.

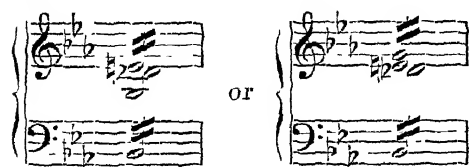
## EXAMPLE 103.

BEETHOVEN. MASS IN C.

The literal performance upon the organ of piano accompaniments similar to the above always sounds badly, even if one or two sustained tones are substituted for the continual repetitions in the left hand. The effect of the diminished chord, taken by the left hand so low down

Inversion of the accompanimental Chord.

upon the organ, is not only gloomy in itself, but it is here diametrically opposed to the original orchestral setting, which is transparent and clear in effect. This is not owing simply to the *quality of tone* produced by stringed instruments (to which this tremolo is given) as opposed to wind instruments, but rather to the different inversion of the accompanying chord. In such cases as the previous one, this inversion would usually be given in the orchestra as follows:



Possibilities  
upon the  
Organ

having the pedals at his disposal, and the scope of his left hand thus largely increased, he can *restore* the chord, if not to its original inversion, at least to an inversion approaching the proper effect. To be able to detect the origin of such piano-forte forms, and give a good organ equivalent for them, is an accomplishment which every organist who is called upon to play accompaniments of this class should possess.

Neither is it absolutely necessary to have a knowledge of what the orchestral scoring of the passage may be. It suffices to have a realizing sense of that dispersion of the harmony which is best suited to the nature of the composition—as we say a piece is “well put upon the instrument.” In this instance, the organ form of Example 103 may be given thus:

EXAMPLE 104.



Here we have three sustained tones, two in the manual and one in the pedal, the rhythm being well established by the figuration itself.\* If the preceding example were to be played upon *two* manuals, the left hand might well assume the inversion



Other forms might be employed as follows, according to the sense of greater or lesser motion required:

EXAMPLE 105.



Varieties of  
Inversion,  
and their  
Conditions.

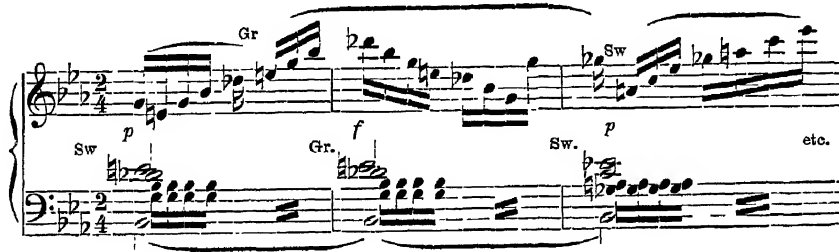
The choice of the particular form in this and similar cases will be governed largely by the amount of motion which the right hand may have allotted to it. It is evident that the more sustained tones we have, the more the motion becomes subordinated. Likewise, if the motion is to assert itself rather distinctly, it can best do so when the sustained tones are *beneath it* rather than over it. This can readily be demonstrated at the organ.

\* In this connection, see remarks on “sustaining or repeating the same pedal tone,” under Example 98.

Referring again to Example 103, it will be seen that the accompaniment changes from *piano* to *forte* to meet the alternation of solo and chorus. If the Swell Organ be used for the whole passage, it will be too weak for the chorus. If the Great Organ is used throughout, it will be too powerful for the solo accompaniment. This necessitates a change of manuals in the midst of the passage, which must still retain its legato character. It may be accomplished thus :

Alternation of  
Manuals  
Dynamic ef-  
fects

EXAMPLE 106.



The opening is seen to be upon the Swell "both hands." The last three notes of the right hand, in the first measure, *anticipate the forte* of the following measure, besides forming an effective leading to the D $\flat$  of the second measure upon which the Sopranos enter. *With the accent of the second measure*, the left hand is also transferred to the Great Organ, reinforcing the chorus entrance. At the beginning of the third measure, the order of transfer is reversed, the left hand returning to the Swell *with the measure*, while the right lingers upon the Great Organ the duration of one sixteenth note  $\text{♩}$ . In this particular instance, this one loud tone is rather welcome than otherwise, as it both covers and assists the Solo Soprano's entrance, which is here somewhat difficult as respects intonation.

One other problem here presents itself—namely, as to how the Pedal is to be registered. If coupled with the Great Organ, it will be too powerful for the solo ; if only with the Swell, or not coupled at all, the instrumental bass will not properly support the chorus.

Pedal Regis-  
tration  
under pre-  
vious condi-  
tions.

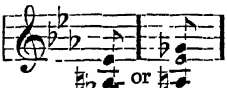
If the organ is provided with a reversible pedal to bring on and throw off the Great to Pedal Coupler, as happily most of our modern instruments are (and *always should be*), the matter becomes simple enough. As it is evident, from the nature of the passage, that the left hand can not be spared to draw the coupler in default of the above arrangement (and our older organs do not possess it), it is preferable to dispense with it at the chorus points rather than mutilate the solo passages. In other words, not to couple with the Great Organ at all. An intelligent pupil should be able, after a careful examination of the previous example, to apply the principle therein contained to hundreds of analogous cases. It is hardly necessary to say that, in many instances, only the *simultaneous* shifting of hands from one manual to another will properly express the contrast of *forte* and *piano* required.

EXAMPLE 107.

BEETHOVEN. MASS IN C.



Example 107, given in its piano form, affords another illustration of the advisability of inverting the left-hand chords when played upon the organ.\* Either of the two following

inversions may be employed:  The passage is, by its nature, best suited

to solo treatment, and therefore to the use of two manuals—the right hand upon the Swell and the left upon the Choir or Great Organ until the double asterisk (\*\*). From this point, both hands should unite upon the Swell.

legato Octave  
passages in  
Skips.

Octave passages of the character of the melody in Example 107 may usually be rendered legato (when executed *forte* upon the Great Organ) by a substitution of the left hand for the right in playing some of the lower tones of the octave passage. This is shown at *a* in the following example:

#### EXAMPLE 108.



Octaves by  
means of  
Four-foot  
registration.

The problem offered in Example 107 is, however, that of a solo passage in octaves, with the accompaniment upon a second manual. The octaves, as they there occur, are practically impossible to render in a true legato manner upon the organ, on account of the awkward skips occurring in the melody. As the passage is to be held *piano* throughout, it is advisable to execute it by playing the lower notes of the octave passage upon the Swell, *but with four-foot stops drawn*, in addition to the eight-foot stops, thus giving the octave desired. In cases similar to the above, the resumption of both hands upon one manual, as at the double asterisk (Example 108, *b*), had better be made upon the Choir or Great Organ, if the four-foot tone is there to be avoided.

The multitude of forms of piano accompaniment which may be adapted to the organ, more or less successfully, render it impracticable to add more than a few additional illustrations on this subject. The majority of examples which may present themselves to the student will, as a rule, be found to range themselves under some one of the general heads already considered. The rest must be left to the student's own invention and talent, guided by the general principles we have attempted to deduce.

We close this chapter with several illustrations from Rossini's "Stabat Mater:—"

---

\* It is not to be understood that *all* chords written low down in the manual compass are to be inverted. The player must be governed by the character of the composition, and of course by the orchestral original, if he can ascertain what that is.

## EXAMPLE 109.

*Soli.*

Sta - - - bat Ma - - - ter, Sta - - - bat Ma - - - ter.

(Piano.) *a*

(Organ.) *b*

Sw


Ch

Ped

Comparison of the two forms *a* and *b* shows various differences.

1. The omission of the melody as given in the piano form. Here, it will be remembered that it is only a quartet of solo voices which is accompanied.\*

Comparison  
of Piano and  
Organ Forms.

2. The repetition of  as given in the piano form is omitted at *b*. On the other hand, the *third of the chord* (B $\flat$ ), which is lacking in the first measure at *a*, is here restored.

3. The essential rhythm is decided by the pedal beat at  $\bar{c}$ .

## EXAMPLE 110.

*a*

*b* Tenor Solo.

Sta - - - bat Ma - - - ter,

Sw.

(Piano.)

(Organ.)

Ch.

Ped

do ... lo ... ro - - - sa!

etc

etc

\* See remarks on repetition of melody in the accompaniment of solo voices. Chapter VII, page 68.

At *a*, Example 110, we have the form of piano accompaniment as transcribed from the orchestral score.

Inversion  
with sustain-  
ed Tones and  
Syncopation.

At *b*, we note the inversion of the chord as better suited to the organ, and more nearly approaching the orchestral original. The effect of the holding tone (F) should also be noticed, by means of which the broken effect is mitigated for the organ. In spite of this tone, the *continued* syncopation of the right against the left hand becomes almost too unorganlike, and the following may be suggested as preferable, while doing no violence to the composer's intention:



The following example from the well-known "Inflammatuſ" is of peculiar difficulty, and yet frequently falls to the lot of organists to accompany:

#### EXAMPLE 111.

The figuration of the accompaniment is here peculiarly effective for stringed instruments, and for nothing else. Upon the piano the continual recurrence of the above form is fatiguing. Upon the organ no less so, with the additional drawback that the rapid repetitions of the same chord are still more foreign to the nature of the instrument. Notwithstanding this, the original figuration characterizes the accompaniment to such a degree that it is here out of the question to omit it, at least in the beginning. Subsequently, the following simplification may be adopted

after the entrance of the voice—namely: This may be

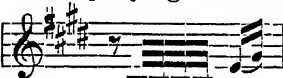
the more readily employed where the *chorus* voices enter *piano*. (See the piano score of the "Stabat Mater," at the words, "*fac me cruce custodiri*," etc.)

The small notes (Example 111) represent the chords softly sustained upon a second manual. This treatment should be continued throughout, wherever the figuration of Example 111 occurs, except in the *f* and *ff* passages where the Great Organ is employed. In this latter case, the sustained tones will follow the analogy of Example 90 or 91, or the sustained tones may be given to the left hand.

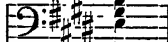

At the climax of the *solo*, the Great Organ (both hands) may be required. Previous to this, the following form may be adopted as an organ equivalent. It has the advantage of allowing the accompanist to follow with ease the slight *accelerando* which the singer, almost instinctively,

falls into at this point of the solo. It is also easier for the right hand to join the left upon the Great Organ at the climax of the solo "*in die judicii*." (See piano score of "*Stabat Mater*.") The change to the Great Organ from the form employed at Example 111 would evidently be abrupt, the right hand there resting upon the Swell and the left upon the Choir Organ.

EXAMPLE 112.

On accompanying the duet, "*Quis est homo?*" from the same "*Stabat*," the essential figure  is accompanied in the piano score by harmonies generally lying

Cases where  
Inversion is to  
be avoided

at about this range—namely:  This would seem to warrant the inversion of the chord held upon the second manual on the principle advanced in the remarks under Example 103, although, in the case referred to, the chord was a "diminished" one. This will be found less advisable in case of the duet mentioned, on account of certain chromatic progressions of the two voices which the student will do well to examine in the work itself. Should the chord of the second manual be placed in a higher inversion, as, for instance,  it might be found to interfere with and blur the clear progression of the two voices.

In all these cases of accompanimental adaptation, a proper conception of qualifying conditions is indispensable—not the mechanical adoption of a formula, which, considered by itself, may be well enough, but from the vocal stand-point quite objectionable. "Drum-rolls."

In orchestral adaptations, we not unfrequently meet with passages which, in the original, were merely a roll upon the kettle-drums. This is represented upon the piano by an octave tremolo in the bass. This effect is, of course, wholly foreign to the organ. An illustration of this is the opening of the Bass solo, "*Pro peccatis*." About the best approach to the effect desired may be accomplished thus:

EXAMPLE 113.

This illustration will be seen to differ from Example 94, at *e*, in that the pedal does not possess the octave lower than the manual. For this reason, the Pedal and Great Organ are not coupled. The sixteen-foot tone only is heard from the pedal, while the rapidly recurring dissonance of the G $\sharp$  with it produces, as near as may be, some resemblance to the "drum-roll."



If a manual-stop of sixteen feet be also employed, the effect will be all the better. The *sustained* pedal note prevents the clashing of the dissonance with it from disturbing unduly our sense of tonic foundation.

In concluding this chapter, even the tyro in the art of accompaniment must feel that we have scarcely passed the threshold of the subject, important as it is. We may as well pause here, however, as the art of successful adaptation is so largely a matter of talent and musical instinct, governed, indeed, by certain general principles which we have striven to elucidate in the previous pages.

## CHAPTER X.

---

### THE SWELL ORGAN.

THE great value of the Swell Organ to the accompanist is evidently its capability of producing expressive effects. Such effects are only attainable upon the Great or Choir Organs through the addition or withdrawal of stops, and this method (as we have before seen, Chapter III.) is attended with two drawbacks: (1) the necessity of removing one hand from the manual to accomplish the change of stops, and (2) a certain abruptness of effect which can not be entirely overcome, even by the most skilful registration.

The Swell as  
a means of  
Expression

On the other hand, the Swell Organ possesses the advantage of equality and gradation of tone within the limits of crescendo and diminuendo possible to it. This renders it peculiarly valuable in solo accompaniments, and others where a frequently varying power is required, but not exceeding mezzo-forte.

Considered as a separate organ, the Swell will naturally be treated upon the same principle as the other manuals, so far as combination and building up of tone are concerned. It remains, then, to notice certain peculiarities attending its use, resulting mainly from its local position within the organ, and from the nature of its construction.

For the benefit of those who may be ignorant *how* the Swell effect is produced, we devote a few words of explanation by way of preliminary. The pipes of the Swell Organ are inclosed within a box which is furnished with movable blinds or shutters, the same being sometimes made double. These blinds are placed at the front of the Swell-box, facing out into the church, and thus forming the only point of exit for the tone, except so far as it penetrates the box itself, wood being an excellent sound-conductor. To overcome this tendency last referred to, and confine the sound within the box (except as it may be emitted at the desired opening), the box itself is frequently lined within with pasteboard or some other partially non-conducting material. The Swell Pedal opens and closes the blinds. When the pedal is pressed down, opening the blinds, it is evident that we shall have the *fortissimo* of the Swell, while, when the pedal is up (blinds closed), we shall have the Swell *pianissimo*. All the varied gradations between these two points will depend (1) upon the number and voicing of the Swell-stops, (2) upon the tightness with which the blinds shut in the tone, and, lastly (3), upon the situation of the Swell itself as related to the general acoustic properties of the church.

How the  
Swell effect is  
produced.

The box containing the Swell Organ is usually placed above the Great and Choir Organs. This elevation, and the fact of the inclosure of the pipes, leads to a few remarks which we would commend to the attention of inexperienced players.

Effect of Ele-  
vation upon  
the Swell.

Conditions of  
Temperature  
affecting  
"Coupling"

The elevation of the Swell subjects it to a higher temperature than the rest of the organ, especially in winter-time under furnace heat, or in case of an evening service when a large audience is present, and much gas burned. The metal pipes are the most sensitive to this (notably the reeds), the effect being that of an expansion of the metal, which, in turn, is *equivalent to a lengthening of the pipe*. Thus, the pipes which are subjected to such influence will soon be found "flat," as compared with the rest of the organ. This will be particularly noticed when the Great and Swell, or the Swell and Choir, are coupled together. The only resource of the organist in such cases is to use these respective manuals separately without coupling. When a church has been rather cold, and the heat rises very rapidly under the combined influence of a large congregation and many gas-burners, he may even be obliged to forego all use of the Swell. In ordinary cases, where the discrepancy is noticed, the use of the different manuals without coupling may be adopted with comparative impunity; as a change of manuals from Great to Swell, or *vice versa*, will be far less noticeable as regards tune than the effect of Great and Swell coupled together. In this latter case, the ear is compelled to notice and compare the unisons of the two manuals, while in the former case the pipes of the two organs may remain in tolerable tune *with those of their own manual*, but disagree with another manual.

When the Or-  
gan stands in  
a Recess.

When the organ stands in a recess, in the rear of which the Swell has its position, the reverse of the above will not unfrequently be noticed. The heat rising from the body of the church first affects the metal pipes of the Great Organ which are exposed in front. The Swell, meantime, standing well back in the recess, is filled with colder air, and is sometimes very slow in attaining the same temperature as the front of the organ. This will be the case, especially if the Swell-blinds are left closed when the heat first begins to rise. For this reason, the Swell Pedal *should always be fastened down on leaving the instrument*, in order that the temperature of the Swell may rise and fall as equally as possible with that of the other portions of the organ.

It is among organs which stand in a recess that we most frequently hear glaring discrepancies between Swell and Great Organ. The Swell is apt not to become affected by the outside rising temperature until that temperature is decidedly high—that is, relatively so. The Swell then begins to change rapidly, which has the additional fault of throwing its pipes out of tune with each other, not to speak of its disagreement with the Great and Choir Organs.

Mode of  
Equalizing the  
Temperature.

One means of partially avoiding this annoyance is to open the doors of the Swell-box in the rear as well as the shutters in front for an hour previous to using the instrument, while the heat is rising. A lower door or panel of the organ-case may also be opened to aid in equalizing the circulation of air. In some large organs, where gas has been introduced into the Swell-box (for convenience in tuning, in place of using portable lights or candles), the burners may sometimes be used for heating purposes, as they will soon change the temperature within the Swell, especially if it is rising outside.

Effect of Ele-  
vation upon  
the "carry-  
ing over" of  
Tone.

The other effect of the elevation of the Swell which concerns the player is the "carrying over" of the tone which frequently occurs. This characteristic renders it important that the organist should know the effect of the soft stops of the Swell as heard at a distance from the keys. He should be able to realize their effect individually, and that of their combination with each other and with voices. Neglect of this point is the most fruitful cause of "*over-accompanying*," especially in case of solo voices. This quality of carrying-over tone may generally be esteemed a good trait, as such organs prove most effective to the majority of listeners rather than to those in immediate proximity to the instrument. It is evident that it requires the organist to be especially careful of the proportions of tone to be employed.

Instances also occur where the effect will be almost directly opposite to that just spoken of. By some latent defect in the acoustic of the church, or miscalculation on the part of the organ-builder, the instrument may seem powerful and brilliant at the keys, but unaccountably muffled in tone and generally ineffective in the body of the church. In such cases, a somewhat stronger registration may be required to balance the voices properly.

Other Effects  
of Locality.

The most lamentable result which can occur in Swell accompaniment is the following—namely: when the location of the Swell and the acoustic qualities of the church combine to “carry over” the tone to such a degree that a solo voice (or quartet of voices) scarcely perceives the tone of the organ when played softly, thus rendering the intonation uncertain.

In such a case, the organist is placed in the following awkward dilemma: (1.) If he accompanies softly, he may not meet the requirements of the voices as to support. (2.) On the other hand, if he accompanies so that the singers feel no more than comfortably supported, the effect in the church will be that of “*over-accompaniment*” previously referred to. The only hope of attaining a proper musical effect when thus hampered, is to have voices capable of singing all the softer passages with correct intonation and virtually without accompaniment. If the singers are found competent to do this, the organist has but to ascertain the proper amount of accompaniment to give a “*piano*” or “*mezzo-piano*” effect, as heard by the congregation; even if to himself and the choir the accompaniment seem quite inadequate. Fortunately, extreme cases of this kind are not frequent, but they are by no means so rare as not to deserve consideration.

The expressive use of the Swell is liable to one very common abuse, which may best be expressed by the common term “*sawing* upon the Swell Pedal.” When inexperienced players find their right foot upon this pedal, something seems to prompt them to keep it constantly in motion. The result is, of course, a monotonous  $\ll \gg$  generally aggravated by a series of little jerks, wholly unrelated to the natural expression which the phrase may require. In case of our older organs, this habit was the more easily fallen into by beginners, on account of the comparatively primitive construction of the Swell Pedal and its mechanism. This required the performer to keep his right foot continuously upon the pedal, with the exception of such passages as might be executed with the Swell entirely closed or wholly open. A “*mezzo-forte*” with most of the Swell-stops drawn (for instance), could only be obtained by keeping the pedal in position by the continued use of the right foot.

Improper use  
of the Swell  
Pedal.

Of late years, our best organ-builders have introduced vastly improved styles of Swell Pedal, even in case of their smaller instruments. These are (1) the *balanced* Swell Pedal, and (2) the “*Ratchet*” Pedal. Both of these give the organist the power of making a partial crescendo or diminuendo (within the limits of the Swell’s capacity), and leaving the pedal *fixed* at whatever point the foot may be removed from it.

The “Bal-  
anced” Swell

As to the means by which this is effected, we have not space to particularize here the mechanism of the two species of pedals referred to. Suffice it to say that the “*Balanced*” Pedal derives its name from weights or balances, affecting the Swell-blinds in such a way that their opening or closing may be controlled and suspended at any desired point. The “*Ratchet*” Pedal accomplishes the same result in a different way. Here there is a little pedal or lever within, or placed upon the top of the Swell Pedal proper, both of which are simultaneously operated by the foot. After pressing the pedal down (opening the blinds) to a suitable degree of power, the heel is dropped an inch or two. This allows the small lever to rise independently, and its motion inserts a wooden or metal tongue into the “*ratchet*” (or series of notches) just within the organ-case, thus holding the pedal at the point arrived at. To have the pedal pass rapidly from *pp* to *ff*, one

The “Rat-  
chet” Pedal.

has only to avoid dropping the heel. Care must be exercised, in pressing the pedal down, not to allow the tongue referred to to strike against the notches, producing an unpleasantly audible clicking sound, which is due only to the awkwardness of the performer. This can not occur if the heel is not dropped while pressing the pedal down.

Technique of  
the "Bal-  
anced" Swell  
Pedal

The above unpleasant possibility can not occur in case of the "Balanced" Swell Pedal. On the other hand, the latter being equipoised, sometimes moves so easily that the foot, feeling next to no resistance, will allow the Swell-blinds to open or close too rapidly, passing beyond the point desired in either direction. Any tendency of this kind may usually be conquered by a slightly increased pressure of the foot upon the pedal. This may the more readily be accomplished as the "Balanced" Pedal admits of the whole foot being placed firmly upon it, after the manner of the blowing treadle in reed organs. The motion should be controlled solely by the flexibility of the ankle, without undue knee motion.

Varied situa-  
tion of the  
Swell Pedal

The "Ratchet" Pedal is placed at the extreme right of the pedal keyboard, as in case of the old-fashioned, uncontrollable Swell.

The "Balanced" Pedal, on the contrary, is not unfrequently met with in our most recent organs, placed in the centre, over the pedal keyboard. This has two advantages: Firstly, in being nearer, and therefore more convenient to the performer's right foot; not necessitating the outstretching of the right leg, which frequently becomes tiresome in the old style of pedals, especially when they chance to be somewhat heavily weighted. Secondly, when placed in the centre, it never interferes with the execution of passages upon the pedal keyboard. This trouble not unfrequently occurs upon the extreme high pedal keys when the Swell Pedal is of the old or even ratchet pattern, and is "fastened down."

Drawback to  
central posi-  
tion of "Bal-  
anced" Pedal.

One drawback to these advantages possessed by the "Balanced" Pedal is the following: When a passage requires the right foot to remain upon the Swell Pedal for the sake of varying expression, and the bass is given to the left foot to execute in the *second* octave of the pedal keyboard, a more or less awkward relation of the two feet must ensue. This may be overcome by a little practice on the part of such organists as may possess a Balanced Pedal located in the centre, by substituting the *left* foot to control the Swell during such passages, and executing the bass with the right.

A consideration of this last case (which may well occur in modern organ-playing and be employed in accompaniment) shows that this improved pedal now brings with it a *new technique*, if we may so call it. An illustration follows, the Balanced Pedal being supposed to occupy the *centre* over the pedal keyboard.

EXAMPLE 114.

Mode of apply-  
ing the above  
"new tech-  
nique."



Here, it would be manifestly impossible to manage the Swell Pedal properly with the right foot, if in the centre, owing to the impracticable relations it would be forced to sustain with the

\* The signs o and v denote respectively the heel and toe.

left. If the Swell Pedal is situated on the extreme right, the left foot might execute the bass passage.

Another advantage arising from the improved form of Swell Pedal is the possibility which now exists in the legato execution of bass passages in which skips occur. As the pedal will remain in any desired position, the right foot can be momentarily spared to assist the left in the legato rendering of a phrase, until the right foot is obliged to return to the Swell Pedal to modify the power of the Swell. This may occur upon a single note only.

Improved facilities in legato pedal-playing by means of these pedals.

## EXAMPLE 115.

A glance at the above example will show the impossibility of executing it properly upon an organ furnished with the old-fashioned Swell Pedal, and yet composers constantly call for such effects. Without a "Balanced" or "Ratchet" Pedal, it would become necessary at the points *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, to break the legato phrase in the bass, and allow the *left* foot to spring to the following key. If this were *not* done, but two feet employed, the Swell would either have to be fully opened or completely closed (and this latter after having once begun the crescendo!), in order to free the right foot.

Disadvantages of the old method.

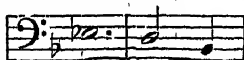
As it is (Example 115), the crescendo begins very gradually during the first measure. With the first note of the second measure, the right foot assumes the bass, the Swell meantime remaining at the power thus far attained. At the second note of the second measure, both feet have *simultaneous* duties—namely: the left foot resumes the bass part, and, at the same moment, the right returns to the Swell Pedal. With the accent of the following (third) measure, the crescendo is renewed, leading to the climax with fully opened blinds at the fourth measure. The following diminuendo, being accomplished by the same mechanical treatment, needs no special comment.

Crescendo and Diminuendo by means of the "Balanced" or "Ratchet" Pedal.

It will have been noticed that at measures 2 and 4, no crescendo was made, the right foot having, in both instances, been momentarily employed with the bass part. This does not materially affect the impression which the ear receives of gradual increase of power, as the opening of the Swell-blinds is instantly resumed in the following measure, and there is, at least, no falling off in quantity of tone—as there would be, if freeing the right foot involved closing the Swell again, while the right foot was otherwise employed.

When "B eaks" are permissible in Crescendo or Diminuendo.

The gradual crescendo may be produced with even greater smoothness when the duration of the bass notes permits a rapid substitution of one foot for the other. For instance, had the bass part at measure 2 been written thus,



the right foot would then strike

the E flat, but the left be instantly substituted for it, without allowing the note to repeat itself, thus freeing the right again to return instantly to the Swell Pedal.

A careful examination of the two preceding examples, and the principles they involve, should sufficiently illustrate what we have termed the "new" technique of the improved Swell Pedal. This mechanical improvement requires far more study in gaining expert command of both feet, and the Swell effects thus made possible, than is usually given to it. Study in this direction, however, will be amply rewarded by an artistic result, from which the organist was, until of late years, wholly precluded by the shortcomings of the instrument itself.

The improved  
Swell Pedal  
as a means of  
Registration.

Besides the improved application of effects in crescendo and diminuendo which the modern Swell Pedal gives us, it also opens up entirely new possibilities in the way of Swell registration, particularly as applied to the accompaniment of solo-stops or solo-voices, the latter more especially when two manuals are to be employed. Let us endeavor to make clear in what manner these new sources of registration may be obtained through means of a Balanced Swell. We may, perhaps, accomplish this the more easily if we first consider the drawbacks attending the use of the old style of Swell Pedal.

Dilemmas in  
Registration  
with the old-  
fashioned  
Swell Pedal

Suppose we desire to contrast two qualities of tone (say Flute and Reed tone) upon two manuals, it being understood that the two voices are to measurably balance each other as to power. We draw an eight-foot Flute (Melodia) upon the Choir or Great Organ, and upon the Swell the Oboe, with possibly the Stopped Diapason added to give body to the reed. To the left hand we assign the Swell, with the reed in Tenor range, as being there most characteristic in quality. For a similar reason, we assign the Choir or Great Organ to the right hand and a higher range of compass.

Now, if to the above conditions we add that of an obligato pedal part, demanding the use of both feet, although of ever so simple a character as to passage-playing, how could we properly execute this upon an organ provided only with the old-fashioned pedal?

In the first place, if the Swell-box remained closed, we should find that the Oboe did not balance the bright-toned Flute with its higher range. To remedy this, it would be necessary to open the Swell somewhat. To keep the Swell a little open, however, we should be obliged to devote the right foot to that purpose. What, then, becomes of the obligato pedal part, if, as the chances are, it can not be executed properly by the left foot alone?

On the other hand, if the Swell Pedal be fastened down, giving the full force of the Swell stops mentioned, the reed may be found to overbalance the Flute.

Quantity at  
the Expense  
of Quality.

What was the old method of procedure? Perhaps to add the Dulciana and Flute, four feet, to the Choir or Great Organ. Then, very likely, the Swell, in turn overbalanced, had the Open Diapason added to it with or without its own Dulciana, and thus the *balance* required was measurably attained. A moment's thought, or, better yet, practical experiment, will show that this result was obtained at the expense of *contrasting quality*. The result at which we have arrived is that of a *combination* of one manual against that of another, which, however they may balance as to power, produce conjointly a very different effect from that proposed in the original problem. This, as it will be remembered, was the contrasting of two radically distinct *qualities* of tone. This will never show itself so plainly as when we have a representative stop upon each manual, differing in character, but blending together in harmonic union.

The worst feature, then, of the old Swell Pedal, was the necessity it laid upon us of smothering characteristic quality by adding a number of stops with the Swell closed, if it were desired to balance a relatively bright but not powerful Flute combination upon another manual.

This was nearly always the case when the pedal part called for the use of both feet, and led to a mutilation of such pedal parts by an attempt to play the bass with one foot.

With the improved Swell Pedal, nothing is easier than to permanently set the Swell blinds—a third, half, or two thirds open, thus freeing both feet for necessary use. This is an effect wholly distinct from the primary use of the pedal. It is, indeed, equivalent to the power of changing temporarily the voicing of certain stops, so that they may be for the moment better fitted to accomplish certain specific duties.

Advantage of  
being able to  
"set" the  
Swell.

We have spoken of the gain derived from being able to use the softer stops with the Swell blinds set partially open. It is self-evident that another class of results may be produced by approximately *closing* the Swell with the louder stops drawn, as the Open Diapason, Principal, Cornopean (or Trumpet), etc.

The following example, taken from Hesse's "Theme and Variations," Op. 47, is given as a practical illustration of the advantages of the Balanced Swell. The pupil may experiment with various combinations of stops and "settings" of the Swell Pedal, as well as use the latter expressively. The melody is in the left hand and should predominate somewhat.

## EXAMPLE 116.

The musical score for Example 116 consists of two systems. The first system is labeled 'Ch or Gr. Flutes.' and 'Sw with reed.' The second system is unlabeled. The music is in 2/4 time and features a melody in the left hand and accompaniment in the right hand. The first system shows a complex melodic line in the left hand and a more rhythmic accompaniment in the right hand. The second system continues the melody and accompaniment, with the left hand playing a more active role.

Illustrations in the mode of setting the Swell Pedal referred to as applied to accompaniment may be found in many previous examples. See more especially Chapter VIII. on obligato accompaniment.

When the Swell is *continuously* used as a means of expression, the organist is forced to keep his right foot upon the pedal, and in this respect the Balanced Swell offers no particular advantage over the old style—unless it be placed over the centre of the pedal keyboard.

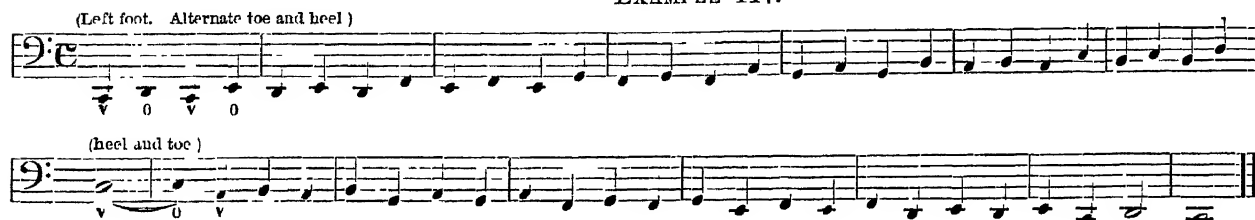
Use of the  
Left Foot.  
When neces-  
sitated.

A certain special expertness with the left foot is therefore demanded, in order that the bass may be as smoothly executed as possible. The mere touching key after key with the toe



of the left foot does not cover the case at all. The alternate use of toe and heel must here be made the most of, so that as few breaks as possible may occur. Although it is foreign to the purpose of this work to introduce technical studies for the organ, yet we venture to add the following exercises for the benefit of such students as may require them, and who desire to acquire the legato use of the left foot speedily.

## EXAMPLE 117.



the power of the added stop by means of the pedal, and, secondly, the voicing and local position of the Swell is such (as we have previously seen) that the addition of the four-foot stops does not have the radical effect of the Great or Choir Organs. Besides this, we can "meet" the addition of the Swell four-foot stops by a slight decrescendo upon the Swell Pedal, by which the power is not increased, but the higher registration simply gives a keener sense of the tonality.

It is to be understood that we do not refer to the use of a four-foot stop in a combination *appropriate to it*, but rather to its addition to a combination, which, properly speaking, might be better off without it. The addition referred to is that of a four-foot stop or stops to an already satisfactory eight-foot combination, and for the sole purpose of securing the intonation.

This will often be found effectual if the singer does not frequently or habitually sing "out of tune." When a vocalist has the habit of singing "sharp" rather than "flat," it is far more difficult, if not impossible, for the accompanist to assist him or her. The crescendo of the Swell and addition of a four-foot stop will sometimes accomplish the desired effect, but will too often prove fruitless.

Singers who  
"sharp"  
rather than  
"flat."

The reason of this is apparently the following: A singer of some musical sensibility, feeling the crescendo of the Swell and general increase of power, instinctively sings with a little more force. This has a tendency, if any thing, to raise the pitch, and thus the singer who may be "flat" has a chance of recovering his or her intonation. For the same reason, the singer who is already above the correct intonation is not apt to fall in pitch upon hearing the increased power, but rather to remain confirmed in his or her fault.

One thing may safely be asserted—namely: that if the increased power and higher registration combined do not restore a singer's intonation, within a measure or two, the organist should resort to precisely the opposite treatment. It is of no use to call the listener's attention to a discrepancy between voice and instrument. Besides which, curiously enough, it sometimes happens that the singer, missing the full support which preceded the organist's sudden diminuendo, *listens*, and—regains the true pitch.

Opposite  
Treatment.

The above treatment of the Swell, as relates to intonation, is more particularly applicable to solo accompaniment, or to assist the Soprano in a quartet. Should a Tenor voice, singing in quartet, require special support, it is best effected by playing the part upon another manual. This is the only manner in which a middle part could be made to predominate so as to be felt by the singer.

In some small organs, not particularly well appointed, it will sometimes be noticed in effects requiring the use of the Full Swell that it gives too great a sense of the upper octaves—the four-foot stops, Mixture, etc., asserting themselves too radically.

Of the Full  
Swell in small  
Organs.

In such a case, if the organ possess a good Melodia (or Doppel-Flöte) on the Great Organ, the Swell may advantageously be coupled to it. It will give the Swell "body," and yet be wholly absorbed by it as to quality. Neither will it affect its capability of effect in crescendo and diminuendo.

Were the Great Open Diapason chosen instead of the Melodia, it would assert its own powerful quality, which, though good in itself, would not become absorbed as a constituent part of the swell tone proper.

## CHAPTER XI.

---

### INTERLUDES.

Objections to  
their use.

INTERLUDES are, as a rule, an abomination. From an æsthetic stand-point, they rarely form a connecting link between the verses of a hymn, while from a technical (musical) point of view, they are usually trash.

It is a difficult thing to say any thing *extempore* (that is worth hearing) in the exceedingly short time that the interlude should occupy. If, on the other hand, the interlude be musically good, but of excessive length, the result is nearly as lamentable. On the result when, at one and the same time, the length is great, and the matter presented is poor, we need not dwell.

It is a matter of congratulation that the custom of playing interludes, between each two stanzas of a hymn, has of late years fallen into comparative disuse among our best organists; and that at present, when an interlude is introduced by them, it is not for the mere purpose of display, but for a definite reason which may justify its use. Let us then consider the conditions under which interludes may be least objectionable, and, secondly, the best mode of their technical construction.

First condi-  
tion under  
which they  
may be intro-  
duced.

The first and most valid excuse for introducing an interlude, is that it gives the choir an opportunity to take breath.

This may be a legitimate reason in case of a *quartet* choir, to whom is given the task of singing five or six verses of a plain choral tune of the "Old Hundredth" pattern. It is not generally known by those utterly opposed to interludes under any circumstances, that it is far more fatiguing to sing a simple tune of the above class five or six times without pause, than to execute many a long anthem. Such tunes have to be sung with full voice, and not often can more than four syllables be sung to one breath. Thus, the immediate repetition for the above number of times would be really a great tax upon four voices. With a large chorus choir, this objection measurably (but not entirely) disappears, as the individual singer does not or need not tax his or her vocal powers to the same extent.

Even in the case previously assumed, there is no necessity of inserting an interlude after *each* verse. One is usually sufficient, and two as a maximum.

The height of the ridiculous is reached when an interlude is introduced between verses the first of which does not complete the idea, but leads directly to the following verse. As for instance :

Connection of  
Thought be-  
tween Verses.

“ We are his people, we his care,  
Our souls and all our mortal frame;  
What lasting honors shall we rear,  
Almighty Maker, to thy name ?”

“ We'll crowd thy gates with thankful songs,” etc.

To have the question of the first stanza conclude with the tonic chord of a common tune is bad enough ; for, as we have already seen (see remarks under Example 28, Chapter IV.), the complete cadence is diametrically opposed to the continuance of a thought expressed by words. To give this truly would require the half cadence. Thus, the common hymn-tune frequently brings with it discrepancies like the following. We take as an illustration the last strain of Example 6 :

Musical in-  
competence of  
the Tune itself  
to express  
continuance  
of Thought

#### EXAMPLE 120.



The music destroys the question. To give this properly would require the ending as at *b*. This would lead back immediately to a repetition of the tune. But hymnody is—hymnody. We can not afford to be too particular in all cases of this kind. Considering, however, that the musical phrase is itself defective as an interpretation of the text, it is equivalent to adding insult to injury when we respond to the question,

“ What lasting honors shall we rear,  
Almighty Maker, to thy name ?”

with *any* interlude, much more with an *average* one. It is evident that the immediate commencement of the following stanza is absolutely demanded in cases similar to the above.

Another condition under which an interlude may occasionally be introduced with propriety seems to be the following.

When the character of words radically changes, as regards sentiment, towards the close of a

Second con-  
dition justifying  
use of In-  
terludes.

hymn, the interlude may be appropriately introduced as intermediating between the verses where such change occurs. The following stanzas illustrate a change of this character :

"Saviour, when night involves the skies,  
My soul, adoring, turns to thee ;  
Thee, self-abased in mortal guise,  
And wrapt in shades of death for me.

"On thee my waking raptures dwell  
When crimson gleams the east adorn,  
Thee, victor of the grave and hell,  
Thee, source of life's eternal morn.

"When noon her throne in light arrays,  
To thee my soul triumphant springs ;  
Thee, throned in glory's endless blaze  
Thee, Lord of lords, and King of kings.

"O'er earth, when shades of evening steal,  
To death and thee my thoughts I give ;  
To death, whose power I soon must feel,  
To thee, with whom I trust to live."

Points of  
Introduction.

That the natural sentiment of the second and third stanzas requires the tune chosen to be sung *forte*, if not *fortissimo*, and in a prompt, energetic manner, is evident. Equally so is the fact that the first and last stanzas require an opposite treatment. A short, well-constructed interlude can not here offend the requirements of good taste, if it seems to mitigate possible abruptness of style in passing from the triumph of verses 2 and 3 to the pensive tone of the last stanza. The opposite treatment might be employed between verses 1 and 2, in order to introduce the *forte* of verse 2. This is not in so good keeping as the introduction of the interlude after verse 3, as the tune has been heard but once.

Simplest  
form of Inter-  
lude when  
musical in-  
vention  
proves lack-  
ing.

It is unfortunately true that a person may have a keen perception of the æsthetic requirements as above demanded, and yet be unable to express them in any fitting musical manner. This simply amounts to another argument against the use of extempore interludes by unqualified performers. Where interludes seem to be required (as, for instance, when a moment's breathing-time is to be given the choir), such persons have at least four simple sources from which to draw the necessary material. These are the four separate strains which constitute every long, common, or short metre tune. Of these four, the last is evidently the best, as it may be repeated literally. Its modulatory progress, if it have any, will be towards the tonic close, which forms at the same time the tonic opening for the repetition of the tune.

The three remaining strains may contain some modulatory tendency, probably in the direction of the dominant.\* To avoid this, and yet to use the material which the strain offers and return to the tonic instead, will only require the change of a chord or two. This can be accomplished with but a slight knowledge of harmony.

Books or  
"Collections"  
of Interludes.

The objection to the use of books or "collections" of interludes, designed for those who feel themselves incompetent to construct them for themselves, lies principally in the fact that a

\* Of the manner in which such a modulation may be made available we shall speak later, page 124.

proper choice and adaptation of the same is apt to prove a failure. Outside the fact of the (usually) exceedingly poor musical quality of the interludes thus offered, they very rarely have any æsthetic relationship to the tune chosen. The inappropriateness of playing a little piece between the verses foreign in style to the hymn selected, and having nothing in common with it but the key of the piece, needs no comment.

Recognizing, then, the fact that interludes must or may be occasionally introduced, let us consider whence they may be derived, and some points of their technical construction, necessarily assuming that the pupil has some invention of his own and sufficient harmonic knowledge.

As regards style or character, the first source from which the interlude may be derived is the sentiment of the *succeeding* verse. The justice of this principle should be sufficiently clear from the comments upon the hymn previously quoted. As to its technical nature, it may be treated in three or four parts, contrapuntally or melodically, or as a solo upon one manual accompanied upon another.

Sources from which the Style of a given Inter-lude may be derived

As to its length, it is safe to say that it should never exceed eight bars in common measure. The following example has but six, and illustrates the solo form:

Length

EXAMPLE 121.

Let us suppose this interlude to be used to introduce the *last* verse of the hymn, "Saviour, when night involves the skies," which we may further suppose set to any appropriate tune in the key of C. This simple interlude leads to the following comments:

The third verse of the hymn ending in a triumphant vein, the interlude begins *mezzo-forte*, and at a comparatively high compass. With the third measure, the *diminuendo* begins and continues to the close, introducing the pensive tone of the last stanza. To further this purpose, it will be noticed that the melody of the interlude gradually descends in compass, until it reaches the tonic more than an octave below the point it started from. Besides this, the "flats" introduced belong properly to the key of C minor, and at once lend a sombre coloring to the close. The *sense* of being in the key of C minor is not so firmly established, however, but that the interlude may be satisfactorily concluded, and the following verse naturally begun in the key of C major. Besides this, as far as tonality is concerned, we know that any composition in minor may close with the major instead of the minor tonic chord. Still, different shades of expression may be obtained by varying the number of flats introduced in Example 121.

Influence of Compass, Diminuendo, and Minor Chords as means of accomplishing change of sentiment.

Shades of Expression.

Let the student test this by playing the phrase first as given, then with the E flat omitted (in both melody and accompaniment), then omitting the A flat and E flat, and finally omitting all the flats given.

In so doing, he should keep ever in view that the object to be attained is not what he may deem the happiest melodic effect considered by itself, but that best suited to introduce the final stanza of this particular hymn.

The three Elements employed in preceding example not obligatory.

Three elements, then, lend their aid in gradually introducing the changed sentiment of the stanza referred to—namely: (1) *descending compass*, (2) *diminished power*, and (3) the *introduction of special minor intervals within the major key*.

The above remarks (as in many instances in this work) are given simply as a hint to the student, but in no sense as an obligatory formula to which he should necessarily confine himself, even under precisely similar conditions.

Example without dynamic change, and with ascending compass.

Even in the case cited, the interlude *might* contain no diminution of power, no descending compass, and no marked leading towards the minor key. In such a case, however, the interlude *would* require to be held “piano” throughout, if it be intended to meet the sentiment of the following verse. An example of this kind follows, which, we think, will not be found inappropriate to this specific case.

#### EXAMPLE 122.



Here there is no decrescendo, no tendency of a decided character towards the minor key, and the general direction of the compass is upward.

Beginning in Minor at once.

For a similar change of sentiment, a fitting interlude may also be constructed by beginning in minor at once. In such case, the return to the major key must be made early enough to insure the sense of tonality, which the voices require in order to begin the following verse—perhaps somewhat after the following manner:

#### EXAMPLE 123.



Use of “remote” Modulation.

A word or two may be said here in regard to the use of remote modulation in an interlude. Such modulation is not absolutely to be prohibited, but it is dangerous except under the hands of a master. Its tendency is to spin out the interlude to an undue length, and he who attempts it should have some given motive for introducing it, and should, furthermore, have the whole harmonic system at easy command. He should also be able to compress such unusual effects into the ordinary scope of an interlude, and, within that limit, must lead away from and back to the key of the piece without doing violence to the singer’s sense of tonality. He who attempts this without the presupposed qualification is tolerably certain—to use a common phrase—of “coming to grief.” This expression is particularly applicable here, as it describes not only the result as it affects the player, but also the sensations of those who listen to him. We will risk giving one example of this class without precisely recommending its imitation. The student should previously play over some tune of a quiet character in the key of F,  $\frac{3}{4}$ , so as to well establish the tonality.

## EXAMPLE 124.



In all the remarks that have thus far been made in regard to the construction of interludes, we shall have failed in our purpose if we have not made evident to the reader the one thought which should underlie the whole—to wit: that he who would extemporize an interlude should have a definite musical and æsthetic purpose in so doing. The mere breathing opportunity for the voices is not enough. A given mood should be depicted, a given situation portrayed, if possible.

Among the disturbing influences which an inexperienced player may create in extemporizing an interlude, is that of uncertainty of rhythm. Outside of change of *tempo* (which may sometimes be permitted), change of *measure* during the interlude will often produce a disturbing effect. Thus, it is by no means of so rare occurrence to hear a tune in common measure ( $\frac{4}{4}$ ) followed by an interlude in triple measure ( $\frac{3}{4}$ ).

Recurring to Example 121, the student should note the opening of the interlude, as beginning with an incomplete part of the measure—thus:



This manner of beginning the interlude is especially useful when a solo-stop is to be employed, and when at the same time the interlude is to be of a quiet character. It enables the organist to avoid absolutely any break between the close of the tune and the beginning of the interlude.

## EXAMPLE 125.

Supposing the tune to end *forte* as at *a*, the organist can play the ending as at *b*. Here it is seen that the interlude is begun before the voices cease, the organ first really asserting itself in the following measure. This prevents the break above alluded to.

Attention is also called to the fact of the prolongation of the pedal tone at the close of the tune (Example 125, *b*) after the organist has removed his hands from the last chord of the accompaniment. This prolongation of course implies the withdrawal of the Great to Pedal Coupler.



Occasional  
retaining the  
Break be-  
tween Tune  
and Interlude.

On the other hand, in interludes of a jubilant character with a strong registration (for instance, the Full Swell), the break between verse and interlude may be made evident, and treated as a part of the musical effect. Thus, many forms similar to the following example may be employed in which the "eighth-rest" introduces the interlude after the voices have ceased. In this instance, the rhythmic effect which the rest produces is continued imitatively throughout, thus giving the interlude a certain unity of design.

## EXAMPLE 126.

Voices cease

Poco All'o

f

poco, all

Ped 8ves.

Use of domi-  
nant Cadence  
as a means of  
closing Inter-  
lude and be-  
ginning the  
Tune.

In the majority of instances, a close connection between tune and interlude is preferable. The desire to accomplish this sometimes prompts the better harmonists among out church-players to give the interlude some other form of close than that of the complete cadence in the tonic—in other words, to construct the interlude in such a way that its close *creates an expectancy of the tonic chord*, which chord is immediately supplied by the re-entrance of the voices. The expert harmonist can accomplish this in many ways, but the underlying principle which governs all the varied forms will always be that of the "half," or "dominant" cadence.

Choice of  
Harmonies  
as leading to  
Tone with  
which the  
Soprano part  
begins.

The choice of these means, and the various inversions employed, should depend largely upon the particular interval of the chord *with which the Sopranos commence the tune*. Experience shows that in an interlude of this class, where the tune follows without break, it is safer so to construct it that the Soprano may, so to speak, hear her tone coming, or realize what it is to be. This is because the Soprano carries the melody, and the prompt entrance of the melody is all-important.

A few illustrations will exemplify the truth of the above; and, to avoid any possible misunderstanding, we state the required conditions once more.

It is desired to construct an interlude, which, at its close, shall avoid the complete cadence to the tonic; transferring the same to the opening of the tune itself. Furthermore, the interlude is to be so constructed that it shall, in an especial manner, give the Soprano voices their pitch for the opening chord of the tune.

## EXAMPLE 127.

End of interlude accomplished  
by dominant seventh (and ninth)

Tune beginning on the 5th in Sopr.

Allegro

f

p

Voices begin

"O God, our help in a - ges past;"

## EXAMPLE 128.

Ending accomplished by "leading-note" of scale and "passing" sevenths

Tune beginning with *tone* in Sopr.

"A moun-tain fast-ness is on God:"

## EXAMPLE 129.

Ending with augmented fifth

Tune beginning with *third* in Sopr.

"Soft - ly now the light of day,"

## EXAMPLE 130.

Leading from above through dominant seventh.

Tune beginning with *third* in Sopr

*p* *poco rall.* "Soft - ly now the light of day:"

## EXAMPLE 131.

Ending with diatonic passage, ascending.

Tune beginning with *tone* in Sopr.

*Sw.* *Gr.* "Tri - umph - ant Si - on! lift thy head:"

## EXAMPLE 132.

With diatonic passage, descending.

*Sw.* *Gr.* Tri - umph - ant Si - on! etc.

Forms similar to the above might be multiplied *ad libitum*, but the six examples given contain the essence of the principle advocated. This the student should seek to apply in other ways and in varied keys.

When the "half" instead of the complete cadence is employed to end an interlude, it becomes very important that the singers *listen*, in order to begin the tune promptly. No trouble need be experienced if an organist will but call his choir's attention once or twice to this manner of introducing the tune.

“Motion” in  
the Interlude  
as compared  
with the tune

It may have been noticed that a number of the examples previously given in this chapter conclude with a slight *ritardando*. This is owing to the quicker *motion* given the interlude, but not necessarily quicker *tempo*. That is, when the tune is written in half notes, the prevailing notation of the interlude may, with advantage, be given in quarters. If the tune be written in quarters, the motion may be in eighths. Thus, the *ritardando* mediates between the interlude as a whole and the resumption of the tune in simpler rhythm. The relation of half notes to eighths will sometimes, but rarely, occur. When employed, the tempo should be moderate, and it should be chiefly introduced in interludes of a joyous character. Even then, the eighth-note motion is preferable in the bass rather than in the upper voice. Otherwise, the interlude is apt to become too florid, and out of keeping with a church service.

“Thematic  
Treatment.”

We now proceed to consider another means by which interludes may be constructed, and one which demands of the organist considerably greater artistic qualifications than the construction of the forms thus far given.

We refer to what is termed “thematic treatment.” This is the great source of development of large compositions from small germs or “motives,” and requires long-continued studies in composition proper. As it exceeds the theoretic knowledge demanded of the pupil (in the preliminary requirements stated at the beginning of this work), it can not be expected that a treatise on the subject should be introduced here. In the first place, the interlude is *not* a large composition, nor does it require development in the sense stated. On the contrary, it needs the utmost possible condensation of thought. Notwithstanding this, thematic treatment proves, even here, of such eminent value that we venture to introduce a few examples, and say a few words as to its possible application for our purpose. May it attract the student to the study of this most important branch of musical theory, or, at least, give him some idea of the possibilities of its application.

Application  
where no  
change of  
sentiment oc-  
curs in the  
words chosen.

We have seen that the character of an interlude may be derived from the *following* stanza of a hymn, a given verse of which has just been sung.

This was justified more especially by an approaching change of sentiment.

Sentiment of  
Verses which  
can not be ex-  
pressed in  
Music.

Now, in many cases where an interlude may be desired, we have no particularly marked change of sentiment. Besides this, we have metrical versions of the Psalms (not to speak of other so-called sacred “poetry”) which are so didactic in character, with so slight, if any, vestige of the lyrical element which music requires, that a plain choral tune is about the only adaptation to which they can be set. Among these (chorales) there is frequently no particular choice as to which is selected. Thus, the following verse, which is to be found in many of our hymn-books, would scarcely excite the invention, not to say inspiration, of the most expert organist :

“The hand that gave it still supplies  
The gracious light and heat ;  
His truths upon the nations rise,  
They rise, and never set !”

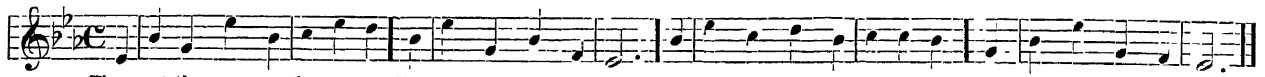
And this by no less a poet than Cowper ! In such cases, the (qualified) organist can “fly for refuge” to the thematic treatment of motives derived from the tune sung.\*

---

\* It is not to be understood that thematic treatment is to be *confined* to such conditions as the above ; nor that it is only to be used as a last resource. It has its own intrinsic value, and is not simply a mechanical resort, or technical means of evading a difficulty. It can, under proper conditions, express feeling or sentiment as truly as if the player were not confined to a given “motive.” To well accomplish a musical result, within bounds which a musician sets himself voluntarily, is art, even in so insignificant a thing as an interlude

To illustrate this as simply as may be, we recur to our former Example 14, giving, for brevity's sake, only the melody, and in the modern (quarter-note) notation.

*"London-New."*



Thou art the way, to thee a-lone From sin and death we flee, And he who would the Father seek, Must seek him Lord by thee.

These words are worthy of being called sacred poetry, but they contain a theological proposition—nothing with which music has any thing in common. The remaining verses are virtually of the same character. But it is to be sung! Therefore, for a musical setting, we turn to a plain choral tune—dignified, indeed, in style, but containing no marked characteristics which would hinder it from being used for hundreds of other and similar hymns. For a similar reason we turn for material for our interlude to thematic treatment and the tune itself.

A "motive" taken from a tune is—to put it familiarly—a "bit" of the tune itself, taking more or less of it according to the development desired. It is self-evident that no motive can consist of *less* than two notes. Careful examination of the choral theme given shows that it is

What constitutes a "Thematic Motive"

made up largely from the following thematic bits—namely: being in

the one case the skip of a fifth, in the other that of a fourth. We find other skips of thirds and sixths (G—B $\flat$ , G—E $\flat$ ), as well as progressions by degree, but we think the student can not but perceive that they arise by way of simple imitation and variation of the first two notes. At all events, we select these first two notes (see above at *a*) as the short "motive," out of which to develop an interlude thematically by means of simple "imitation."

EXAMPLE 133.



Within the scope of four Measures

This is thematic treatment in its simplest form, and made almost exclusively through imitation of the skips of fifths and fourths contained in the tune itself. The bass happens here to bring the identical notes of the second strain of the chorale, the last measure but one being in augmented values.

Should a longer interlude be desired, a half cadence, introduced in place of the previous complete cadence, will carry us further—thus:

Development by postponing tonic Cadence.

EXAMPLE 134.



Unity o.  
Thought.

The student should very carefully compare Example 134 with the choral melody, in order to fully realize the fact that no new material is introduced. The intimate musical relation thus established between tune and interlude will be evident, for the thoughts offered are the same as those contained in the tune, but clothed in another dress—viewed in another light. Thus, the interlude is of the same musical essence as the tune, and the result is musical unity.

It is not to be forgotten that we may *not* desire unity of musical thought, as in case of a radical change of sentiment in the words. In such case, we have no need to have recourse to the thematic mode of constructing interludes.

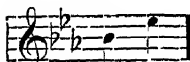
Treatment by  
means of  
repeating a  
whole strain

Another (and freer) species of thematic treatment occurs when, instead of a couple of tones, we take a whole strain of the original chorale to be treated as an interlude. In the example which follows, we take the last strain for this purpose:

EXAMPLE 135.



Change of  
Harmonies  
upon repeti-  
tion

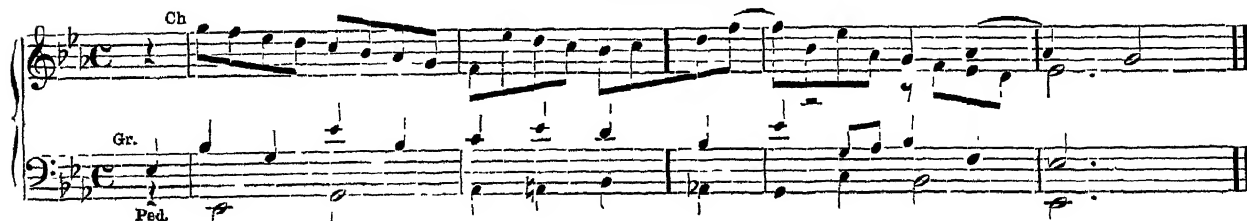
By comparison with the tune, it will be perceived that the last strain is repeated three times, the last time in the tenor. In the literal repetition of such short phrases, the principal thing to observe (besides preserving the harmonic motion when once established) is the change of harmonies with each repetition of the strain. Thus the skip  is first har-

monized  afterwards  and finally 

Another mode  
of treatment.

Another form of interlude which can not be termed "thematic," but yet is somewhat akin to it, consists in the repetition of a couple of strains; literally as to melody, with other harmonizations, and, perhaps, a florid contrapuntal figure accompanying it. This form is especially effective if the choral theme is put in the tenor range with comparatively strong registration. The following example treats the first two strains of the tune:

EXAMPLE 136.



Recapitula-  
tion.

The several sources from which we may draw material for interludes should now be sufficiently evident to the pupil. Let us, before proceeding further, briefly recapitulate them. We have, first, the free interlude which employs melodies and harmonies *not* derived from the tune itself; secondly, the thematic interlude constructed from "motives" of the tune;

thirdly, the employment of a strain or two of the choral theme, varied as to its harmony, or with the addition of a free contrapuntal part. This we have illustrated in Example 136.

The free form finds its most natural employment when a decided change of sentiment is to be expressed. This change of sentiment goes far towards justifying the introduction of new musical material foreign to the original tune.

The thematic form is especially available when the sentiment does not change, and its employment preserves musical unity of thought where the organist would not otherwise know *what* to express in his interlude.

It only remains for us to speak of the possible union of these two forms (changing sentiment and thematic treatment) in one and the same interlude. This, in many cases, is not so difficult for a good harmonist who possesses some invention. The problem, then, be it understood, is this: on the one hand, to construct an interlude which shall form the appropriate link between two verses of widely varying sentiment. On the other, to construct such an interlude solely from thematic material derived from the tune itself. The following example attempts to illustrate a union of this kind. We again take the hymn, "Saviour, when night involves the skies," the purpose being to lead from the sentiment of the third to that of the last stanza, introducing the same by a half cadence, so that the voices may enter upon the tonic. We set the words to the tune given, as Example 47, to which the student should refer for its harmonic character.

Treatment of  
change of  
sentiment by  
thematic  
means

When noon her throne in light ar-rays, To thee my soul tri-umphant springs;  
Thee, throned in glo-ry's end-less blaze, Thee, Lord of lords and King of kings.

The student has here a good example of simple thematic treatment as applied to the construction of the *theme itself*—the whole tune being constructed out of the slight material offered in the first measure, the necessary cadences excepted. Keeping, then, in mind the above sentiment, and that the last stanza (see page 120) begins "O'er earth, when shades of evening steal," etc., the interlude might proceed as follows:

Thematic  
origin of the  
theme itself.

#### EXAMPLE 137.

*mf* without Ped. *pp* Ped. (Voices enter See Ex. 47.)  
O'er earth when shades, etc.

The thematic motive is given in large notes, in order that the student may everywhere recognize its employment.

Objection  
which may be  
raised against  
the examples  
here given

To the young organist who is desirous of extemporizing his interludes, the following objection or criticism may occur, applicable to all the examples given in this chapter. "It is all very well for the author," we can imagine him saying, "to write out these interludes as illustrations of the doctrine he is advocating. He can deliberately design them, put them on paper, alter, and remould them to suit his purpose. I can not think of all these points of construction, etc., when an interlude is suddenly demanded of me in church." Such comments would imply a far higher compliment to the specimens given than they deserve. A great talent is not necessary to *extemporize* examples fully as good as those given, but a knowledge of treatment and some practical experience *are* required.

He who would  
extemporize  
Interludes  
must be theo-  
retically com-  
petent.

It is true that the player can not be thinking of rules, nor is it required. It is, nevertheless, an absolute necessity that he who would aspire to play a good interlude must unconsciously be governed by these very laws. He must have previously recognized their force, and digested the ideas involved in their execution. Thus, the workings of his mind in regard to them are the same as in case of the literary workman in regard to the rules of grammar—namely: a controlling force, of which he is practically unconscious at the very time he is applying the principles they involve. The student may rest assured that, to justify his playing extempore interludes at all, he should be able to construct, offhand, similar forms to those given.

We have dwelt upon this subject at some length, that we might, if possible, impress upon the minds of those interested in this matter the possibility of giving interludes a definite purpose, and thus avoid the empty, meaningless wanderings over the keys which we are so frequently called upon to endure in our churches. Even the organist naturally possessing plenty of musical invention requires to be guided by the laws of musical construction. This chapter will not have been written in vain if it lead students to make themselves familiar with these laws; neither will it have been written in vain if it bring to those who have no inventive gift nor theoretical knowledge such a perception of what is actually required to produce an acceptable interlude, *that they cease to attempt it*. Such persons (as we have before indicated, page 120) should confine themselves to repeating one of the strains of the tune sung.

The Writing  
of Interludes  
as a prelimi-  
nary to ex-  
tempore per-  
formance.

The young organist who is studying music as a profession, or any of our gifted amateurs who may have the privilege of an extended course of theoretical instruction, will find it a most useful exercise to *write out* interludes to given tunes. By so doing, and by striving to give the interlude a meaning of its own, they will greatly strengthen their powers in this direction. It will be found the best preparation for extemporizing interludes which shall not be destitute of "form and void." The less frequently interludes are introduced the better. This being the case, such as are introduced should be musically and æsthetically worthy.

## CHAPTER XII.

### EXCEPTIONAL USE OF STOPS.

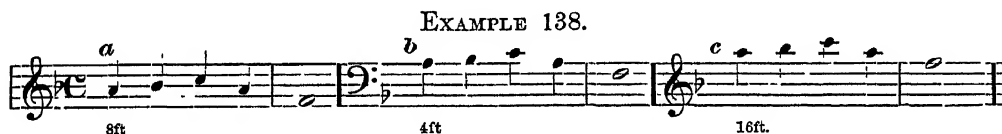
THE organist who always plays the notes simply *as written* (in pieces requiring the use of eight-foot stops only), loses sight of a means of accompaniment which, in given cases, may prove of much value. This is the exceptional use of the stops.

Characteristic  
"Range" of  
various Regis-  
ters

Most organ-registers, if examined tone by tone, will be found to have a "best range," where their quality is most individual, although their compass may extend throughout the keyboard.

Now, if we play in chords, making use of these stops singly, at a range which is relatively too high or too low for their best qualities, we obtain an effect either too piercing or too thick and muffled in character, as the case may be.

Again, the pupil has seen in Chapter I. that the various lengths of the pipes produce many duplicates of the same tone. Thus, the following three phrases,



will be found to be identical with each other in pitch when played alternately with the stops indicated, and with such only. Both the phrases at *b* (four feet) and at *c* (sixteen feet) will sound the tones represented by the phrase at *a* (eight feet) in actual unison.

The same practical test at the instrument, while showing this identity of pitch, reveals a more or less marked discrepancy as to quality or character of tone, and sometimes as to power. This discrepancy will vary in different instruments, and must therefore be sought out by the player, and the various stops compared with each other in the respect indicated.

Variations in  
Quality at the  
same pitch

The following remarks may serve to indicate to the student the general manner in which he may pursue this examination, and the practical use which may be derived from such differences in quality. Bearing in mind the variations in degree which various stops of various organs exhibit, it will be found, as a general rule, that a stop of low pitch (sixteen feet), when played in chords an octave higher than written, gives a larger and frequently more mellow tone than a stop of eight feet played as written. The tone does not necessarily change in power, but rather in quality. It is to be premised that the same notes are played in each case, the difference lying only in the octave touched by the fingers.

On the other hand, a stop of four feet, played in chords an octave lower than written, gives



a tone of less fulness than the eight-foot stop played as written, although in quality it may be brighter or more sparkling.

Comparisons  
instituted  
between Stops  
of the same  
Manual.

It should be understood that comparisons of the kind to which we refer apply only to stops of a given manual, and not to any two stops of different manuals. This is because the relative balance of single stops is only fairly to be judged by their relation to the remaining stops of the manual to which they themselves belong. Furthermore, such comparisons should, at first, be only instituted between stops of a similar nature—that is, comparing metal pipes with metal, wood with wood, etc. Thus, the Open Diapason (metal) of sixteen feet may be compared with the Open Diapason of eight feet, and the Principal or Octave of four feet by transposition in the octave above and below. The same may be done with the string-toned stops of the Swell and Choir Organs. Even the smaller instruments are now usually provided with a string-toned stop of eight feet and one of four feet in the Swell (Salicional or Keraulophon and Violin). The Great Organ rarely has a string-toned stop of either sixteen or four feet, except in the largest instruments.

Differences  
sufficient to  
modify ef-  
fects.

Slight as these differences may prove in a given instrument, they are sufficiently marked in most cases to afford the player just the slight modification of effect, in simple accompaniments, which he may desire, and which the normal use of the stops may not give him.

After the comparison of stops of varying lengths, but of similar character, has received due attention, the student may proceed to examine the shades of difference between comparatively unrelated stops, testing them by the same transpositions. This may be accomplished by short progressions, somewhat after the following manner:

EXAMPLE 139.

Practical ap-  
plication in  
Accompani-  
ment.

The explanation of these differences lies chiefly in the varying scales (dimensions) of the pipes, comprising the various stops of similar or of contrasting tone. Their practical application in accompaniment will be found principally in solo work, or at least in passages where but few voices are employed. There will rarely be any thing gained in comparing an Open Diapason of sixteen feet with one of eight feet, as the discrepancy in voicing will usually be too slight, but among the softer stops, and especially among the family of Flutes, good results may often be obtained. Thus, supposing a solo or recitative (of considerably greater length than the following example) to be continuously accompanied in chords, lying rather high, after the following manner:

EXAMPLE 140.

MENDELSSOHN

My God, with - in me is my soul cast down! etc.

If a four-foot Flute be employed, instead of a Melodia or Stopped Diapason, playing the chord (Example 140) an octave lower, a tone of perhaps less fulness (especially as compared with the Melodia), but of greater brightness (especially as compared with the Stopped Diapason), will be obtained. This may, under conditions, better agree with the voice accompanied, or the contrary effect may result therefrom.

Transposi-  
tion in the  
lower Octave.

It is evident that such treatment becomes a matter of judgment and experiment on the part of the organist. It is also evident that this kind of transposition in the octave must be confined to accompaniments of limited compass, as they would otherwise pass beyond the range of the keyboard when so transposed, and, should but a single key be lacking, the phrase might thereby be mutilated. This use of the stops is, however, by no means confined to a limited range of chords, but may often advantageously be employed for many passages founded upon the scales.

Transposi-  
tion in the  
upper Octave.

EXAMPLE 141.

At *a*, Example 141, the bass passage is given as written for the piano. This, it will be seen, descends below the manual compass of the organ. It may, notwithstanding, be literally executed by the employment of two manuals—registering the right hand with eight-foot stops, and the left with the Great Open Diapason (or Bourdon) of sixteen feet, and playing the bass an octave higher than written. Should special distinctness be desired in the bass, an eight-foot stop may be added to the sixteen-foot, thus giving the passage in octaves. In this way, many pedal passages may be performed, where not too great power is required, which might otherwise be found to exceed the clear and comfortable execution of the player. Instances also occur when transposition to the lower octave with eight-foot stops produces the best effect.\*

At *b*, Example 141, compare the effect of the ascending passage played as written with the Choir (or Great Organ) Melodia, and the same played an octave lower with the Flute of four feet. It must be remembered that an effect not exceeding *mezzo-piano* is desired.

If the Pedal Organ is large, and provided with stops of eight and even of four feet, a choral melody may sometimes be given to the pedals, while the real (fundamental) bass is executed by the left hand upon the manual with sixteen- and eight-foot stops; the sixteen-foot tone being omitted from the pedals. Taking our former example, No. 57, as a theme, the form proposed would be as follows:†

Eight- and  
four-foot use  
of the Pedals  
in giving out  
a theme.

EXAMPLE 142.

\* See Chapter IV., page 80, on "Employment of eight-foot Manual-stops in the lower octave instead of the Pedal."

† In this connection, the student should also refer carefully to the reading matter given with Example 57.

It will be noticed that (the Pedal having no sixteen-foot stops drawn) the theme is given out as a *Cantus Firmus* in the Tenor. In this respect, it is identical with Example 57 itself. Due consideration of the condition as exhibited in Example 142 will show, however, that wholly different effects of registration are here attainable. In Example 57, the left hand was confined to the principal manual and the theme itself. Here both hands are free to execute the *accompaniment* upon two manuals, with contrasting registration, if desired. If the Pedal Organ is powerful enough by itself, and if a three-manual organ should chance to be at the disposal of the performer, he has then three manuals from which to draw effects in registration, leaving to the Pedal alone the duty of supporting the theme. If the Pedal is not sufficiently powerful in stops of eight and four feet, he can couple with the Swell reeds or other stops of eight and four feet. There will still remain to him two manuals for purposes of registration. If the organ possess but two manuals, he must either rely upon the Pedal Organ alone for giving the theme prominence—in which case a soft accompanimental registration may be employed—or he may couple with that manual which has no sixteen-foot stop drawn. This is also the way to be employed when the organ possesses no eight-foot pedal-stop. In such case, the effect is only to be obtained, if at all, through coupling. The use of the pedals, then, becomes a purely mechanical one, as they utter no tone of their own, but simply free the hands for other purposes.

Pedal eight-foot effect through coupling

This treatment is by no means recommended as a form to be employed off-hand, when giving out the tune from the book, but to be maturely considered by the student as a means of registration, and possibly written out by him as an exercise.

An example of far more elaborate character coming under this head is offered in the Variations by Rink on "God save the King" (Variation 8). We give but two measures, as the work itself is well known among organists and easily procurable:

EXAMPLE 143.

Ch. Flutes, 8 & 4ft

Gr. 16 & 8ft.

Ped. Clarion 4ft.

etc.

etc.

It will be seen that the registration (by W. T. Best) calls for a pedal reed of four feet. This will not only give the *Cantus Firmus* a decided prominence, but it will also cause the theme to be heard in tenor range *above* the contrapuntal bass as played by the left hand. It is scarcely possible to perform this variation without a stop of this kind in the Pedal Organ, on account of the upward range of the choral theme, which precludes its being played an octave higher with eight-foot stops.

Transposition of Pedal-part in the upper Octave.

It not unfrequently occurs that the principle of transposition in the upper octave may be advantageously applied to the sixteen-foot stops of the Pedal Organ, when the compass allows of such transposition. This finds its most frequent use when a light pedal bass, of equal fullness, but of less positiveness than the lower notes of the Violoncello, eight feet, is required. The Violoncello consisting of open metal and the Bourdon of stopped wooden pipes, the lower

end of the former will naturally have a more incisive tone than the upper notes of the latter. As the Bourdon speaks an octave lower than written, the pitch will not be changed by the mere mechanical transposition of the passage.

By means of this treatment, in such organs as do not possess a Pedal Flute of eight feet (a most useful stop), a tolerable makeshift for the same can be obtained from the upper notes of the Bourdon, providing that the stop is a good one. Organists who may test this should not be satisfied with listening to this stop at the keys, but try it (by the aid of another performer) at a distance and in different parts of the church.

The "stopping" of the Bourdon pipes (with a wooden plug) causes them sometimes to sound a harmonic, usually the fifth, in connection with their fundamental tone, the harmonic being at times unpleasantly distinct. This same cause, together with the manner in which these pipes are usually placed within the organ—on opposite sides and to the rear of the instrument—may lead the player to consider the voicing defective, when judging it at the keys. Of two adjoining tones, one may appear too strong and one too weak, not to speak of variations in quality. If the stop is well made, he will find that these apparent defects—both as to balance and as to the harmonics—will disappear when heard at a proper distance.

Characteris-  
tics of the  
Pedal  
Bourdon.

The use of the Bourdon in the upper octave (uncoupled) proves especially useful when it is desired to have the actual bass tone lie near the harmony. This, on account of a more intimate blending of the parts, with which, if played in the lower octave, it would not readily unite itself. By returning to the lower octave, at the same time coupling with the Swell or Choir Organ, the effect of a sixteen-foot stop is produced.

The following example (from the Septuor of Beethoven, transcribed for the organ) illustrates such a transposition in the octave.

#### EXAMPLE 144.

Ch. Clarinet Solo.

Sw. P.

a etc. b

N.B.—Bourdon 16ft. only, uncoupled

At *a*, the pedal gives the tone of an eight-foot stop, played an octave lower, and is thus identical with the low A of the Violoncello. Were the Bourdon employed in the lower octave, the actual tone would be two octaves distant from the nearest manual tone. The student should regard the above example, at *a*, from the standpoint of simple accompaniment, viewing the Clarinet Solo as a vocal one.

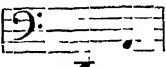

At *b*, the *melody* being given in a higher octave, a *lower bass* is required. The Bourdon descends to the lower octave, where it first may be said to assert its definite sixteen-foot

character. Distinctness of tone enunciation in the Bass is provided for by the pedals having been previously coupled to the Swell, which is registered with eight-foot stops.

Of the "First  
and Second  
Octave" in  
the Pedal  
Open Diapa-  
son.

This treatment can rarely be resorted to in case of the Pedal Open Diapason of sixteen feet, on account of the large scale of its pipes, and the radical quality of its tone in the second octave.

It is none the less true, however, that the second octave may be preferable, in many cases requiring, at least, a *mezzo-forte* bass, where but few voices are singing, and where a definite but strong foundation is required. By *definite* foundation, we understand a tone the pitch of which is easily determined by the ear in its relation to the voices. This is not the case with the low pedal tones, unless they form the foundation to quite a powerful combination involving the use of stops of high pitch. The student may, perhaps, best appreciate this, by comparing with

each other the relative qualities of tone between  and  with the

chromatic intervals; the Pedal Open Diapason, of sixteen feet, only being drawn. That the lower octave of this stop is far too frequently used in accompaniment by the majority of organists is certain.\* Even when necessarily thus employed, a change from the lower to the upper octave gives variety of effect. In the latter case, the obligato form of pedal-playing should be made use of, the left hand playing the Tenor part (in four-part harmony), and leaving the Bass to the pedals. When the lower octave is employed, the left hand may duplicate the Bass in the upper octave upon the manual, or supply fuller harmonies if necessary.

Omission of  
eight-foot  
Tone.

We have seen that the fundamental principle of registration consists in the predominance of the eight-foot tone. An exception to this is sometimes made in *solo-playing*, where a peculiar brilliance of effect is desired, by omitting the eight-foot tone entirely, and substituting two stops, one of sixteen and the other of four feet. The tones thus produced are necessarily two octaves apart.

Meantime, the accompaniment is played upon another manual with a soft eight foot registration. Thus the accompaniment really occupies the middle ground, as to pitch, between the two. The general rule is not entirely set aside, except so far as the eight-foot tone does not predominate. It still serves to call special attention to the peculiar distance from each other occupied by the solo-stops for a peculiar purpose. In such a combination, the passage must not run too low, as the sixteen-foot stop would then render it too gloomy.

Stops of eight  
and two feet,  
without those  
of four feet.

A somewhat similar and still brighter effect may be produced by combining stops of eight and two feet to the omission of all four-foot stops. The accompaniment differs here from the former instance, in that it does not supply the missing interval—namely, the four-foot stops—but must still retain an essentially eight-foot registration. The Clarionet of the Choir Organ lends itself particularly well to this effect, as the lower stop of the solo combination, using the Piccolo or (in default of it) the Fifteenth for the upper tone.

Conditions of  
use with  
voices.

If the above combinations are to be sparingly introduced in solo-playing, the same holds good to a still more decided extent in accompanying voices. It may occur, however, that just this peculiarity of effect may be desirable for a short time, by way of contrast; or it may be desired to make prominent a certain figuration of the accompaniment for a certain number of measures, as an essential characteristic of the piece. Where many dissonances occur in the figuration between voices and accompaniment, they are felt far more in case of the organ than when they are produced by either piano or orchestra. In such cases, this exceptional registration may find

\* See remarks on "Pedal abuse," Chap. IV., page 80.

use. An example follows of the possible employment of stops of sixteen and four feet, to the exclusion of those of eight feet :

## EXAMPLE 145.

*Allegro moderato*  
*Tenors & Basses.*

Ky - - - ri - e e - le - - - i - son, etc.

We remark, at first, that, although the G clef is here conventionally used for the Tenor and Bass voices, yet they actually sound an octave lower. This being noted, it will be seen at once that a strong eight-foot registration of the accompanimental figure would cross in and out among the voices, tending to disturb them and blur a clear vocal performance. If the passage were given to Sopranos and Altos, this criticism would not hold good, as the vocal parts would then sound an octave higher. As it is, however, the male voices *do represent the eight-foot pitch*.

Relation of  
Accompani-  
ment to male  
voices in a  
given case.

Let us now suppose the instrumental Bass to be registered with the Great Organ Open Diapason (or Bourdon) of sixteen feet, and the Principal or Octave of four feet. In case the latter should be too strong, the Harmonic Flute of four feet may be strong enough. It must be borne in mind that the fingers execute the passage precisely as given in Example 145, but the sixteen-foot stop gives the octave lower than written, while that of four feet sounds an octave higher than written. The following example shows the effect in relation to the voices :

## EXAMPLE 146.

4ft  
8ft  
16ft

Ky - - - ri - e e - le - - - i - son! etc.

This unusual treatment is only justified on the ground that the voices clearly predominate.

As voices, whether male or female, correspond in pitch with the eight-foot stops of the organ, it will be seen that this registration is apparently rather than really exceptional, in so far as it conflicts with the fundamental principle previously stated. In other words, the *voices* assume and clearly maintain the eight-foot pitch in lieu of the stops. The small notes in Example 146 represent the part of the right hand in the accompaniment. The registration is eight feet, but is seen to bear a four-foot relation to the male voices.

The eight-foot  
Pitch repre-  
sented by the  
voices as a  
constituent  
part of the  
combination.

The following is a parallel illustration for female voices with registration of eight and two feet—say Choir Clarinet and Piccolo. The voices are not duplicated by the accompaniment, as in the previous example.

## EXAMPLE 147.

Sopr. and Altos.  
Ky - - - ri - e e - le - - - i - son!

Ch.

Sw.

etc

Use of eight  
and two foot  
stops with fe-  
male voices

The Piccolo will here give the octave above the voices, as did similarly the Octave, four feet, in the previous example; the voices preserving the same relation as before—namely: lying between the octaves of the accompanying figuration. As a harmony in chords underlies this example, it does not devolve on the voices, in this instance, to create a realizing sense of eight-foot pitch, as in the previous illustration.

Accompani-  
ment in  
"Double  
Counterpoint  
of the Octave."

The expert harmonist will understand that where the accompaniment admits of such exceptional treatment as the above, it should be so constructed as to permit of the inversion of the figuration. This occurs through the repetition of such figuration in the octave above the voices, and must not thereby create false or forbidden intervals or progressions in its new relation to the voices. In other words, it must be written in Double Counterpoint.

Choir to Great  
"Sub-octave"  
Coupler

Some three-manual organs contain a "Choir to Great Organ *sub-octave* coupler." By means of this, a number of charming special effects of this class may be obtained. When used as a solo, the right hand plays the upper notes upon the Great Organ, and the lower octave is mechanically obtained (by means of the coupler) from the Choir Organ. In this way, too, delicate sixteen-foot effects, of varying qualities, according to the combination, may be obtained by playing full chords in both hands upon the Great Organ.

Contrasting  
Basses.

Under the head of exceptional use of stops as applied to accompaniment, may also be classed the registration of basses (and sometimes other parts), with a different quality of tone from that employed to supply the remaining parts of the harmony. Special illustrations of this character are scarcely necessary, and may easily be discovered by the student. In making practical use of such basses, it should be for a purpose, and not simply for the sake of having one hand differently registered from another. Such contrasts will usually be made between the various Flutes and the reeds and string-toned stops—the two latter being preferable for such basses. They may also be contrasted with the Diapasons.

Motive which  
should  
prompt such  
treatment.

The motive which prompts such treatment should be found in some particularly significant melodic or harmonic progression in the part so registered, and which is thus made plain to the listener's perception by the peculiar registration.\*

As a general rule, the Bass should agree in kind with the prevailing registration—as reeds with reed basses, flutes with flute or stopped diapason basses, etc. Mixtures alone may be said to have no exceptional use, and should be strictly confined to a powerful chorus accompaniment, either with or without reeds.

\* See remarks following Example 26.

In concluding this chapter, the student should understand that the effects herein treated of are not, so to speak, of the every-day description, nor to be introduced at random. In some organs, they might sound badly, or at least disappoint his expectations. Of one thing, however, he may be positively certain: that such examinations into the relations of qualities of tone, among and between given stops, will result in a far more thorough acquaintance with the merits and demerits of the particular instrument with which he has to do than can be obtained in twice the time in any other way. This more than compensates for time expended in this direction, even if the student prefers to reject all exceptional effects after making the practical test.

*If the general principles which govern the matter have been well mastered*, the search for these same exceptional effects (of which comparatively few have been touched upon here) will bring him suddenly, as it were, to that which so many *blindly* seek, and therefore do *not* find—to wit: a competent knowledge of the Art of Registration.

Benefit of ex-  
perimental  
and excep-  
tional combi-  
nation



## CHAPTER XIII.

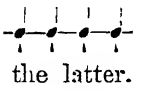
### THE STACCATO TOUCH.

Effect of  
mechanical  
improvements  
upon the use  
of this Touch.

THE ability of the organ to sustain tone at the option of the player, renders it particularly well suited to compositions requiring the use of the legato touch and style. Notwithstanding this, the staccato touch, as applied to accompaniment, as well as to solo-playing, may frequently be made use of with the best results.

The great and general improvement in both voicing and mechanism, which has shown itself among our organ-builders of late years, has resulted in such an increased promptitude of "speech" from most of the pipes, that certain differences of touch may be permitted the performer of to-day, upon our modern organs, which it would be useless to attempt upon our older instruments. Besides the greater rapidity of execution now attainable, the possibility of getting a prompt staccato has been markedly affected by this change for the better.

Characteris-  
tics of the Or-  
gan Staccato  
as compared  
with the  
Piano.

Upon the piano we have two kinds of staccato, differing in degree—namely:  the former being much shorter and more sharply defined than the latter.

Upon the piano this is easily accomplished, as every tone is produced by striking a key even in case of legato-playing. Upon the organ, the first kind of staccato given above is extremely rare. We have principally to do with the second species, and it is accomplished not so much by the blow of the finger upon the key as by a prompt "letting-go" of the same.

Modern Organ  
Touch other  
than Staccato.

It is a fact, however, that the promptness of speech of our modern organs, with the greatly increased execution demanded, admits, and even frequently requires, a touch more nearly approximating that of the piano than was formerly the case. This, too, applies not so much to any "blow" of the finger, as to the similarly prompt rise and fall of the fingers from the knuckle-joint, as in piano-playing.

This in contradistinction to the old "wiping" touch, with the finger slightly drawn-in upon the key, once so common with the old instruments and players.

Duration of  
Organ Stac-  
cato as com-  
pared with  
the Piano.

When we examine the staccato effects producible upon the organ, we find that they are most telling when treated as contrasts. As such, they should be of comparatively short duration, previous to and after which the legato touch should prevail.

Here the true nature of the instrument reveals itself; for we have piano pieces which demand a continuous staccato from beginning to end. Upon the organ, the ear would soon weary of this effect and demand a return to the legato. This is not necessarily the case in a piano piece of the kind referred to.

On the other hand, the staccato of the organ is not to be excluded or neglected because of the fact that the nature of the instrument usually calls for legato treatment. The organ staccato is all the more marked in character when judiciously employed, for the very reason that the effect is comparatively exceptional to the usual manner of handling the instrument. Considering this fact, the few thoughts upon this subject which follow may prove of use to the student.

One of the first causes which may prompt the accompanist to the use of the staccato touch, is in case the choir hold back or "drag" the tempo. This is more likely to occur with a large than with a small choir, while, at the same time, it is equally true that the staccato effect upon the organ usually sounds better with a strong rather than with a light registration. This use of the instrument will almost invariably restore the tempo, but may injure the musical effect designed by the composer. It also frequently has a demoralizing influence upon the player himself—in this sense, that an organist who constantly allows himself to resort to this means of steadying a choir, is apt soon to *form a habit* of staccato accompaniment, far beyond the exigencies of the case. He soon gets to think that he can not obtain unity of performance from his singers without it. This is an error, so far as the author's experience goes. The best cure for the fault which demands the continuous staccato accompaniment is rehearsal, after the following manner.

Staccato as a means of "steadying the tempo" Abuse of the same.

If the organist should perceive that he can not pass a certain point in a given piece without having recourse to the staccato to prevent unsteadiness in tempo, let him immediately rehearse the passage *at the close of the service* in which the "dragging" has occurred. The fault is then fresh in the minds of the singers. Let it be first rehearsed *without accompaniment*, the organist or director beating the time, and beginning at once with the passage in question; then *with* the organ, taking pains to play the passage as legato as possible, so as *not to help the choir in rhythm or accentuation*. The singers having previously had the purpose of the rehearsal explained, their attention called to the passage, and forced to rely upon themselves as regards promptness, will rarely fall into the same fault again at the same place. Thus future rehearsal is saved. They instinctively remember the special rehearsal when they approach the spot where the fault occurred.

Rehearsal, instead of undue use of the Staccato.

It is well, before closing such rehearsal, to try the piece the third time, beginning at least sixteen measures previous to the critical point. All this need not occupy but a few minutes (*from the moment of commencing*) with an ordinarily intelligent choir. The object of this third trial is that the test may be made *in connection* as well as in the isolated manner first adopted.

Final test.

It not unfrequently happens that a difficulty, whether of time or intonation, conquered by itself, will cause new trouble when taken in connection with the antecedent portion of the composition. It is but fair that the director should have full assurance that the difficulty has been overcome before closing the rehearsal.

It should be evident, then, that the mere desire to assist singers to a steady performance of a given passage should not, by itself, be accepted as a sufficient justification of a continued use of the staccato touch. The proper guide, as to when and where the staccato should be or may be employed, should be derived from the nature of the phrase itself, *as music*.

The musical phrase the proper guide for the introduction of this touch.

To lay down definite rules as to the occasions when this touch may be permitted and when not, would be impossible, owing to the innumerable forms that such phrases may assume. Besides this, the use of the staccato is, to a certain extent, a matter of taste, but should be governed by the nature of the phrase and of the instrument.

Epitaphical  
use of the  
Staccato in  
"Climax Pas-  
sages"

We have seen that the organ usually calls for a more or less speedy restoration of the legato touch, as giving a sense of repose to the ear.

Taking this into consideration, the student will ordinarily find that *climax passages* will prove best suited to the staccato touch; where the compass gradually rises (in the Soprano more especially), and where notes of longer duration break the continuous staccato effect. This may be illustrated as follows:

## EXAMPLE 148.

*Allo furce* *meno accel* *rall*

ff sing  
O sing un-to the Lord, O sing un-to the Lord, ex-alt His name for-ev-er!

The staccato  
confined to  
the accom-  
paniment.

In the above example, the "slurs" simply show the touch as applied to the instrument. Neither do the staccato marks, as given here, necessarily imply that the notes over which they are placed are to be sung in any especially short and disconnected manner by the voices. The clear articulation of the syllables by the singers will ensure sufficient distinctness.

It will be noticed that we have here, as regards the accompaniment, a contrast between staccato and legato in each alternate measure. This staccato use of the organ may well be considered "legitimate" as lending fire and energy to the passage. In this sense, it is deduced from the nature of the passage as a musical effect, and not from any absolute requirement on the part of the voices. These could render the passage here given without such assistance, but that it *is* an assistance, besides agreeing with the nature of the phrase and aiding the "motion" of the same, is evident.

Prolongation  
of the stac-  
cato in short  
phrases.

The staccato touch may also be prolonged beyond the limits of one measure, in simple phrases of this kind, especially when the passage leads directly to a climax. Of this we give an illustration in the following example at *a*:

## EXAMPLE 149.

*a* *b*

For-ev-er praise His name, for-ev-er praise His name. Al-le-lu-ia! Praise the Lord!

It still remains a matter of taste whether the last three chords of the second measure (Example 149, *a*) shall not be played legato. The student should compare the two effects.

Staccato with  
descending  
upper voice.

At *b*, Example 149, we have a case of the Soprano descending while the male voices rise, admitting of a momentary staccato of three chords. This shows us that the application of this touch need not be confined exclusively to passages in which the melody ascends, although we

believe the latter form will more usually be found suited to the staccato; especially if the passage is to have a strong registration.

Recurring again to Example 148, we note in the third and fourth measures the sustained tone (A) in the Alto, likewise the D in the Tenor. This leads to various comments and the examination of another class of effects.

Union of sustained Tones with Staccato.

In the first place, a practical test will show that such a sustained tone does not essentially alter the general staccato effect, when the other notes comprising the various chords are struck in a detached manner. On the contrary—so far as the organ is concerned—the effect is better. The holding tone, being necessarily a common factor of the various harmonies, helps to give the passage a unity which it would otherwise lack, while the staccato chords serve to brighten and diversify it. Thus, the holding tone produces, as it were, a compromise between the legato as the essential nature of the organ and the staccato as opposed to it.

The student will now find that *where such sustained tones can be introduced, the staccato can be prolonged* with good effect, and to a considerably greater extent than where *all the tones* partake of the detached character.

Effect of sustained tones upon prolongation of Staccato Vocal Legato against Staccato Accompaniment.

A continued staccato may also be preserved by the organ, without a holding tone, for some time, and without offence to the ear, when the voices thus accompanied themselves assume the role of the holding note; or at least move in legato style, with notes of longer duration against a staccato accompaniment. The following example, from Spohr's cantata (Op. 98), "God, thou art great," furnishes us with a good illustration:

EXAMPLE 150.

Alto and Bass  
Soli  
Unisons.

Accomp't.

*Andante.* *p* *cres.* *f*

Walk ye, walk ye hun - dred thou-sands, on the

*pp* 1. 2. 3. *cres.* 4. *f* 5.

face of earth now dwell-ing, Walk ye on in love and truth. etc.

6. *dim.* 7. *p* 8. *cres.* 9. *f* 10. *p* 11. etc.

*con svi sempre.*

It is seen that the accompaniment is here continually staccato, but with the second measure the two solo voices, Alto and Bass, enter in legato style. It should be borne in mind that these voices actually represent octaves in pitch, both as compared to each other and the harmonies of the accompaniment, although here written on one staff to economize space. It should also be remembered that the effect we are considering is that of the union of voices and accompaniment *simultaneously heard*, not their separate relation.

Compound effect of Example 150.

Limitations  
in staccato  
transcriptions  
for Piano

We have seen in Chapter IX. that in cases of adaptation of piano accompaniments from the original orchestral score, the figuration of the stringed instruments, together with the fundamental harmonies, is the first thing transcribed. When this has been done, it is frequently impossible to transcribe the wind parts, even if the instrument could sustain them so far as duration of tone is concerned. The impossibility of their transcription arises from the fact of the fingers being fully occupied in executing the figuration above spoken of. Besides this, the wind instruments may be sustaining the identical chord which the stringed instruments give in staccato. The latter can not give way to the former in transcription, on account of preservation of the rhythm.

Advantages  
of the use of  
two manuals  
upon the Or-  
gan

Upon an organ, however, it not unfrequently occurs, in accompaniments of slight technical difficulty, that the wind parts may be executed upon a second manual, thus modifying what would otherwise be too great a prolongation of the pure staccato effect. Our Example 150 is a case in point, and examination of the orchestral score will show the manner in which the composer has avoided a monotony in staccato, while never deviating from the measured rhythm.

We proceed to give a short analysis of Spohr's orchestral treatment of the passage. In this way, we hope to afford the student an idea how a staccato effect may be continuously preserved, and yet so modified as to bring it more into keeping with the nature of the organ.

The staccato chords given in Example 150 represent the identical notes played by the stringed instruments throughout the passage.\*

Proportion of  
Staccato to  
Legato in  
Spohr's work.  
Motive for the  
same.

The whole composition consists of seventy-two measures, not counting a *postludium* which leads directly to the following and final movement. Within this limit, twelve measures are without accompaniment, and the staccato passages comprise forty-three measures. Should the student ask why Spohr has thus prolonged this effect, the answer may be found in the significance of the initial line of the text:

"Walk ye, walk, ye hundred thousands!"

The essential march character of the accompaniment is obligatory, or at least highly appropriate. We have already alluded to the modifying influence of the entrance of the solo voices (in the second measure) upon the staccato, qualifying it as by the entrance of wind instruments. This continues until the seventh measure. Here, Spohr introduces the wind instruments themselves as follows:

EXAMPLE 151.

The musical score for Example 151 is written for five parts: Clarionets (I, II), Bassoons (I, II), Oboe 1, Trombone 1, and Trombones (II, III). The key signature is one flat (B-flat), and the time signature is common time (C). The score is divided into measures numbered 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, and etc. The Clarionets and Bassoons play a staccato melody starting in measure 7, marked with a piano (p) dynamic. The Oboe 1 and Trombone 1 play a staccato accompaniment, also marked with a piano (p) dynamic. The Trombones play a staccato accompaniment, marked with a piano (p) dynamic. The score is labeled '1mo.' and '2do.' for the first and second measures of the staccato passages.

\* They differ only by a note or two from Novello's piano score, page 15. When they do so, it is because, in the Novello copy, the transcriber has introduced a few important sustained notes of the wind instruments.

Here, let the student (carefully comparing Example 151 with the corresponding measures of Example 150) notice that the wooden wind instruments (1st Clarinet and 1st Bassoon) enter, as it were, unobserved—that is, they enter *piano* on the unaccented part of the measure. Moreover, this tone is “tied” to the first note of the following measure. In this way, they do not obstruct the clear accent and articulation of the two voices on the first beat of measure 8. The instruments assert themselves more decidedly as the crescendo progresses.

Influence of the sustained tones upon the Staccato.

At the tenth measure, the 1st Oboe reinforces the 1st Clarinet, this accession being more plainly felt by its entrance on the second beat of the measure as a syncopation. Meantime, the three Trombones complete the remaining harmony parts of this group of instruments.

Thus, with the addition of instruments sustaining tone, and in this sense opposed to the staccato, we have two new “tone-colors” added—namely: the reed instruments and the brass. These latter, especially, contrast strongly in quality of tone, as well as by their legato treatment, with the staccato of the stringed instruments in Example 150. In order that the brass may blend perfectly, without covering either voices or string accompaniment, it will be seen that they enter *piano* when the other instruments and voices have reached the *forte*. (Measure 10.)

Contrast in quality of tone between Staccato and Legato

Notwithstanding these various additions (Example 151), such masterly advantage has been taken of the nature and characteristic tones of these instruments at the particular compass employed, that, if they are well played, the voices will not be covered nor the rhythmic staccato of the stringed instruments concealed. The rhythmic effect remains, while the sharply defined and broken effect of the pure staccato temporarily disappears.

Thus we see on what grounds an expert organist is justified in adding certain holding notes (or chords upon a second manual) which do not exist in a staccato accompaniment as written in the piano score, but which may very well exist in the original orchestral score of the work. On the other hand, if the work be originally written for piano, he may add such holding tones for the organ, on the ground that it *would be done* were the work to be scored for orchestra.

Addition of sustained tones justified by this example.

Although the use of two manuals will frequently give the truest transcription in cases of this kind, especially if *contrasting* qualities of tone are desired, one manual will often prove adequate for the purpose. Thus, our present example might be treated as follows upon the Swell Organ:

Staccato with sustained tones upon one Manual.

#### EXAMPLE 152.

The general legato is here resumed at the tenth measure, on account of the momentary prominence that the wind instruments gain at this point. (See Example 151.) Another reason for resuming the legato here, and one which undoubtedly governed Spohr, in his orchestral setting, is the cadence of the modulation to G minor. The ear should not be allowed to doubt for a moment as to whither this is tending. The staccato, although not precisely insufficient for

With two Manuals the purpose, does not accomplish this in so complete a manner as the sustained form with connected harmonies. With two manuals, the treatment might be as follows:

## EXAMPLE 153

Ch. Org. with string tones, or Gr Org with Flute 8ft and Dulciana

7. 8. 9. 10. etc

Reeds, Sw Org

Ped

16 & 8ft.

The pedal assumes the legato in the tenth measure for the same reason given under Example 152.

Choice of  
tones to be  
sustained  
against a  
Staccato Ac-  
compani-  
ment.

It is evidently advantageous to have some idea of the nature of the parts usually played by the wind instruments in orchestral scores. This knowledge will enable the organist to modify such continuous staccato passages as may present themselves, with more or less certainty of not violating the composer's intentions. It is not necessary that holding notes thus introduced by him should be the identical sustained tones of the orchestral score; but if so, all the better. It may very likely be the case that the organist is not familiar with the orchestral score, or can not get access to the same, or, again, that the reading of such a score would be a "sealed book" to him. It suffices for the purpose that the tones sustained do not assert themselves too radically. To this end, it is usually best to keep them in the middle of the harmony, and sometimes even lower. Besides this, in case two manuals are employed, the second manual should be so registered as to be subordinate to the first in quantity of tone.

If we did not know what this specific case requires, the following treatment, on the principle above advanced, would be appropriate as an organ effect for one manual qualifying the staccato:

## EXAMPLE 154.

Walk ye, walk, ye hun - - - dred, etc.

etc.

con 8ft.

Other sustained tones may also be employed, as for instance :

## EXAMPLE 155.

In selecting the form to be employed thus, the relation of the sustained tone to the vocal part should always be considered. The student will perceive that the *principle* here involved is essentially identical with that which we have already considered under the head of "Adaptation of Piano and Orchestral Accompaniments to the Organ." (See Chapter IX., pages 100, 101.)

Relation of  
sustained  
tone to vocal  
part

When the staccato accompaniment is sufficiently varied melodically in the *upper tones* of the chords which constitute it, these upper tones may sometimes be treated as a legato melody, when relief from continued staccato is desired. Our former illustration, treated thus, would assume the following form:

Upper tone of  
Staccato  
changed to  
Legato.

## EXAMPLE 156.

In this case, such legato treatment would, of course, give the opening measures quite a different significance from that intended by the composer. It is, nevertheless, identical with the means he has subsequently employed. (See Measure 8, Example 151.) With the latter half of the fifth measure (see Example 150), it would already cease its independent melodic progress, and ally itself to the voices in unison.

This form is here applied to this example only as a specimen of treatment which may sometimes be found useful in *other* continued staccato passages.

Where florid bass passages occur, accompanied by full chords, it is frequently preferable to play these chords with the staccato touch. This holds good, whether the bass passages are intended to be executed by the pedals or manuals. The strictest legato should meantime be maintained in the bass passages themselves—the same constituting the *essential figure* which it is desired should predominate and characterize the piece. The staccato renders the accompaniment transparent, and the ear is the more readily attracted to the figuration in question. An illustration of this treatment may be found in the following quotation from the chorus, "Fixed in his everlasting seat," from Handel's oratorio of "Samson:—"

"Florid"  
Bass passages  
with Staccato  
chords.



## EXAMPLE 157.

Voices

*ff* His thun - der roars, Heav'n shakes, and earth is a - ghost! etc

Accomp

*ff* Man.

Ped.

The manual here supports the pedal in the octave. The mode of avoiding interference of both hands upon the same note should here be noticed, and the student should compare the above with the passage as given in the piano score of the oratorio.

Avoidance of  
"string-tone"  
in soft Stac-  
cato Regis-  
tration.

It has been remarked that staccato passages generally prove most effective upon the organ with at least a *mezzo-forte* combination. This is because stops of slower speech are assisted to the short, prompt utterance required, by means of stops of quicker speech combined with them.

When it is desired to make use of a soft staccato effect, the combination requires more care. In such case, string-toned stops should usually be avoided, certainly never used in this manner alone. As we have elsewhere seen, these stops are only properly suited to legato-playing, if their best characteristics are to be made evident.

Of other applications of the staccato touch, the following may be briefly alluded to:

Melody with  
cul *libitum*  
Staccato Ac-  
compani-  
ment.

When a melody which has previously moved principally in quarter notes suddenly changes to half-note motion, accompanied by legato chords, the organist may find it advisable to change the accompaniment to the staccato. We give an example of such a melody in the Bass. On account of the relatively low pitch of the voices, the staccato accompaniment serves here the double purpose of continuing the rhythm, and calling attention to the melody itself.

## EXAMPLE 158.

*Allegro.*

*ff*

Et vi - tam ven - tu - ri sæ - cu - li.

An example analogous to the above, but presenting some differences, is furnished by the ending of Barnby's anthem, "O risen Lord!"

## EXAMPLE 159.

*Sop'r. Alto*  
sing Al - le - lu - ia, A - - - - men, A - - - - men!

*ff*  
sing Al - le - lu - ia, Al - le - lu - ia, Al - le - lu - ia, A - men, Al - le - lu - ia, A - men

*Allo moderato*  
A - - - - men, A - - - - men

*f ff*

This example agrees with the former in that the piece has been characterized throughout by quarter-note motion, and suddenly changes to notes of longer duration as it nears its close. The staccato of the accompaniment, however, now serves the purpose of a *stretto* or climax, preserving the sense of motion to the close. In this it aids (and also contrasts with) the Tenor vocal part, which maintains a series of syncopations. The rhythmic accentuation is hereby perfectly preserved in the voices without the aid of the accompaniment. Still, the climax is much heightened by the powerful and independent accents of the accompaniment, the effect being equivalent to a union of two separate rhythms.

Preservation  
of rhythm  
with syncopa-  
tion.

We may now leave the student to judge for himself as to when and in what manner he may avail himself of the staccato touch upon the organ. If he has thoroughly digested the ideas advanced in the previous pages, he should find no trouble in deciding in what cases the pure staccato touch should be used, and when it is better to employ it with accompanying holding tones or chords. In either case, he should use it sparingly.

## CHAPTER XIV.

---

### THOROUGH-BASS, AND PLAYING FROM VOCAL SCORE.

Supposed  
benefit of the  
study.

THE impression seems to prevail largely among a certain class of organ students (to wit, such as have had but little theoretical instruction), that the study of Thorough-Bass will, in some mysterious way, greatly assist them in playing the organ.

The manner in which Thorough-Bass has been taught, in certain manuals and by many teachers in this country, has been little less than a thorough humbug and waste of time and money. This so far as the acquisition or application of the "art of playing church-music from figures"—as they please to call it—is concerned.

The object of this chapter is simply to explain the ancient and modern value of a figured bass, and give the pupil, if may be, a clear conception of its former use and application in accompaniment. A technical treatise on this subject would be out of place here; besides which, we have assumed (see close of Preliminary Remarks) that the pupil making use of this work is already familiar with the fundamental principles of harmony.

Relation be-  
tween Thor-  
ough-Bass  
and Harmony.

And first to get a clear idea of the difference between Thorough-Bass and Harmony.

Harmony is an extremely elastic word, frequently used in a loose way in speaking of treatment involving a knowledge of the advanced laws of musical theory, while, at the same time, it includes and covers the subject of Thorough-Bass. This latter, strictly considered, is nothing but a series of figures placed over (or under) a given Bass. By means of these figures, the player recognizes the remaining notes which he is to play in conjunction with each bass note given; each bass note forming one of the component intervals of the several chords thus resulting. It is evident that the thorough-bass figures simply call attention to *each chord considered by itself*, and without reference to the proper connection of a given chord with that which precedes or succeeds it. To accomplish such connection, and give us a proper succession of chords, whose constituent parts shall have a good, natural progression under established rules, is the specific mission of Harmony. With this, Thorough-Bass has, as a system, nothing whatever to do.

Evils attend-  
ing the use of  
the figures  
without more  
extended har-  
monic know-  
ledge.

When a pupil who simply knew the meaning of the figures attempted to play a common church tune, the result was a crude performance, with three parts constantly given to the right hand and the bass only to the left. This not only led to a mere mechanical performance, but to a total disregard of the proper flow of parts and interconnection of the chords among themselves; besides being subversive of the proper mode of handling the organ as an instrument.

The absurdity of introducing a figured bass into our older church-music books, is made further manifest by the misplacement of the vocal parts to which it gave rise. In the first place, the *natural order* of parts—namely: Soprano, Alto, Tenor, and Bass—was destroyed by placing the Soprano immediately above the Bass. This was done in order that the Soprano, as the highest part, might determine the particular form of the chord desired. Melody and Bass thus being given, a person at all conversant with the subject could very nearly guess at the remaining tones necessary to complete the harmony. The simple structure of most of these tunes required no figuration whatever, the score being given at the same time. Still the Bass was figured more or less carefully. Meantime the Tenor was written on the first or upper staff of the score, the Alto upon the second *above* the Soprano. This unnatural mode of placing the voices made it materially more difficult for the beginner to learn to “read from score”—that is, to take in the chord with one glance of the eye, allotting to each voice its proper part. The true construction of a vocal score demands that the natural order of voices, as to pitch, be followed. In this way, what the ear hears corresponds logically with that which the eye perceives. But the American hymn-tune willed it otherwise and disturbed this symmetry.

Disarrangement of “natural order” in the Score

Even with the natural order of the score changed as above described, it was an easier task to acquire the facility of reading the several parts, than to learn the whole system of thorough-bass figuring; at least with such expertness as to be able to apply it instantly. Besides this, playing from score brought with it the immeasurable advantage of directing the player’s attention to the *melodic progress* of the several parts. This the figuring did not do, but concentrated the student’s attention upon each chord as an individual item. Thus, consecutive octaves and fifths, undesirable “doublings” of certain intervals, and the like, were frequently made. The church-books, of later years, have indeed dropped the useless figuring, but neither the Tenor nor Alto has yet been restored to its proper place in the score in books of the class referred to.

Advantage of “Playing from Score” rather than from Figures

In such books as have been printed with a separate accompaniment, this has been done. These remarks do not, of course, apply to the modern “Hymnals,” “Hymnaries,” and the like, where, for economy of space, the tune is printed upon two staves in so-called “compressed” or “short” score. This form gives the accompanist a literal transcription of the voices at their proper relation to each other. The only possible objection to this mode of setting the tunes, is the fact that it compels the Tenor voices to sing from the bass clef. This rarely proves any real objection, owing to the simplicity of the music usually treated thus.

“Compressed” or “short” Score.

The use of a figured bass in our church-music is a thing of the past—a custom virtually extinct—if, indeed, it ever amounted to a custom in this country. It had a *learned look*, but a practical use we firmly believe it never had in any broad sense.

What, then, is the present value of the study of Thorough-Bass, and whence came its former reputation?

The value of the study is as great to-day as it ever was, for it gives the student a knowledge of all possible chord-formations, and classifies them for his convenience. In one point of view, this study is more important than ever, as the tendency of modern times has been to develop “new harmonies,” so called. In truth, there is no such thing possible, nor have any “new chords,” strictly speaking, been constructed since the day of Bach and Handel, and even before their time. There has been, however, a modern application of old principles, resulting in some forms rarely used by the old masters. A good knowledge of Thorough Bass will easily enable the student to discover the laws which govern these apparently strange formations, and reduce them easily to first principles.

Present value of the study.

Use of Thorough-Bass in former times.

When we turn to the *practical* application of Thorough-Bass as made use of in former times, we soon recognize the reason of the high value set upon it, and upon the abilities of those competent to make a ready and expert use of it.

In the days when this system was established,\* engraved or printed music was scarce and expensive. Especially in the old churches and cathedrals of Europe, manuscript music was the rule, and printed copies the rare exception. As separate parts had to be furnished to the singers, it was a great saving of labor to be able to hand the organist a simple bass part figured. Otherwise it would have been necessary to write out all the four parts and condense them for the organ, not to speak of full chords sometimes required. The saving of labor in case of a whole mass or long cantata is evident.

Thus, for composer, organist, and copyist, a figured bass was a labor-saving invention—a species of musical “short-hand.”

A competent knowledge of Harmony preceding the use of a figured Bass

The knowledge required by this mode of writing had a far greater significance than the mere deciphering of the chord by means of figures. It involved a familiarity with the whole harmonic system and the laws governing the *progression of chords among themselves*. To commit the multiplication-table to memory is not to become thereby a mathematician; but the mathematician uses the multiplication-table as a familiar and necessary acquirement. So the expert *harmonist*, of the times referred to, turned back (in a scientific sense) to the figured bass as to an elementary formula which showed him the various chords required. It was expected of him to give the correct harmonic *progressions* of the composition, as well as merely play chord for chord as denoted by the respective figures. This implied a harmonic knowledge far exceeding the mere mechanical interpretation of the thorough-bass figuration itself.

Accompaniment not necessarily coincident with vocal melody

In accompanying in this manner (from a bass part only) it might easily happen that the player would not give the same form of the chord *melodically* as was represented by the voices. This was a matter of trifling importance, so long as the voices were supported by the same chord *harmonically*. The student is doubtless familiar with the rule that where no figure is annexed to a given note, the common chord of which that note forms the fundamental bass is indicated. From this circumstance arose the custom, in the old figuration, of giving the accompanist a hint as to the particular form desired by placing the figures 8, 5, or 3 over a given bass note, in cases other than where a “resolution” was to be expressed. Where the melody as well as the bass was given, as in case of our older American church-music books referred to, such figuration was manifestly useless.

“Basso Continuo.”

As the vocal bass might cease at times, the instrumental bass, or fundamental part given the organist, was called “*Basso Continuo*,” or simply *Continuo*. It was the player's only guide. As a simple illustration of this, Luther's chorale, “*Ein' feste Burg*” would be indicated thus:

#### EXAMPLE 160.

The example shows two staves of music. The top staff is labeled 'Written' and the bottom staff is labeled 'Played'. The 'Written' staff shows a series of figures: 8, 3, 5, 5, 8, 6, 3, 6, 5, etc. The 'Played' staff shows the corresponding musical notation for these figures, with chords and single notes indicated by the figures.

\* The invention of Thorough-Bass is attributed to Ludovico Viadana, chapel-master of the cathedral of Fano, a small town on the Gulf of Venice, about the year 1605.

In this manner, the identical melody might often be followed. The more important use of the figured bass was, naturally, in compositions of much larger scope, and where the particular inversion of the chord was of secondary importance to a correct harmonic progression. This was particularly the case when the orchestra was employed with the organ.

The student may now perceive that Thorough Bass played a great rôle in the early days of accompaniment. All the cantatas and oratorios of Bach and Handel, in which the organ was calculated upon as an important element in the accompaniment, were originally composed with only a "continuo" to represent the duty of the organist. This is greatly to be regretted, for the weakness of the system (with all its convenience) lies in the fact that such a bass may be variously interpreted as to inversions, etc., especially when not fully figured. This is frequently the case with the old masters. An explanation of this may doubtless be found in our knowledge that many of these compositions were written in haste; and furthermore that Bach usually, and Handel frequently, played the organ themselves at the performance of their compositions. They would, of course, require the least possible memoranda of the treatment proposed.

Even in the chamber music of that day, the harpsichord-player—the forerunner of our modern pianist—was expected to accompany concerted music for voices or instruments from a figured bass.

The Organ part in the Oratorios, etc., of Bach and Handel.

Use of Figures in Chamber Music.

The following example, from Corelli's sonatas for two Violins, Violoncello, and Harpsichord illustrates this:

EXAMPLE 161.

CORELLI \*

Grave

Violino I.

(Sonata I Introduction)

Violino II.

Violoncello & Continuo.

\* "Arcangelo Corelli, founder of the Roman school (or what may now be termed the ancient school) of violinists. Born at Fusignano, Italy, in 1653. Published his first twelve sonatas at Rome about 1683." For particulars regarding Corelli, his life and works, see Moore's "Encyclopedia of Music," page 225.

Defects of the  
system

A defect of the figured-bass system shows itself here in the second measure where the figuring  $\frac{5}{4} \frac{3}{3}$  occurs. It is manifest that in cases of this kind the actual duration of the dissonance suspended can not be given. In fact, the inference is that the resolution of the dissonance occurs

simultaneously with the progression of the bass, thus :



The same indefiniteness naturally exists in other forms where the chord or its inversions change upon a given bass note, as in the figuring 5-6 : 7-6 : 9-8, etc. The accompanist helped himself here in two ways : first, by a glance at the full score, if he had it before him ; secondly, by his ear, and his sense, as a musician, of the requirements of the phrase. This was an easier matter than might be supposed ; as in the old masters, of what might be called the "figured-bass period," there was a certain mannerism in the treatment of cadences with which the accompanist might be supposed to be familiar.

Accompani-  
ment to rapid  
passages in  
concerted  
music.

When rapid passages occurred, in the stringed or other accompanying instruments of a concerted movement, the harmonic support which the accompanist was to give upon the piano or organ usually became simpler.\*

We give as an illustration a few measures of the opening *allegro* from the same sonata :

#### EXAMPLE 162.

*Allegro.*

\* Upon the principle that where harmonies are intricate, with much modulation, etc., the ear requires time to appreciate their purpose and effect. The judicious composer writes the movement accordingly in a moderately slow time at least. For a similar reason, quick tempos, with florid figuration, demand a comparatively simple harmonic basis; the "passages" themselves being usually diatonic in character, or, when chromatic, being based upon very simple harmonies.

Here the simple chords are given upon which the violin passages (abounding in single and double passing notes) are founded. This would not sound wholly satisfactory to the modern ear if played upon a grand piano of to-day. There would be too great an interference between these passing notes and the resonance of the piano. It must be remembered, however, that the old harpsichords and early pianos did not possess such resonance. For the above reason, we do not find such harmonic freedom allowed when the accompaniment was intended for the organ. Simple as the given bass in Example 162 appears, if the student would make evident to himself the harmonic expertness required to properly accompany the passage, let him attempt to harmonize the first three measures in four parts, without falling into the error of consecutive octaves or fifths. Practically, a freedom was allowed in this respect, by allowing one part to disappear temporarily, and letting the chords consist sometimes of three and sometimes of four or more tones.

Character of the instrument as affecting the figured Accompaniment

One application of Thorough-Bass, which lingered even after its general use had been superseded by carefully written accompaniments, was its employment to indicate the harmonies to vocal recitatives. These the accompanist played upon the harpsichord, or upon the organ if the performance was held where an organ could be made available. The orchestra meanwhile waited until the next "concerted" accompaniment.

Thorough-Bass as Accompaniment to Recitatives.

Almost all the recitatives of Bach, Handel, and Haydn were written to a mere figured-bass part. It found use in the opera as well; and even in such a work as Mozart's "Don Juan," we find the recitatives figured in many cases. This was usually the case in the Italian operas, until a comparatively recent date. The older masters occasionally wrote separate accompaniments in the original score to their recitatives. In such case, these were specifically called "*accompanied*" *recitatives*. Illustrations of these in Handel's "Messiah" are, among others, the "Comfort ye my people," and "And lo! the angel of the Lord came upon them."

After a long time, the interpolation of the harpsichord or piano tone in works of this kind began to be felt as incongruous, when the other numbers were provided with full orchestral accompaniment. The same objection could not apply to the organ, owing to its capacity for sustaining tone. The result was the assignment of the chords which the figured bass represented to the stringed instruments of the orchestra. All modern piano editions of these works are now given with the accompaniment to the recitatives and other passages fully written out. Nothing is left to the option of the accompanist as to the form of the chords themselves.

Incongruous effect of the Piano or Harpsichord interrupting the Orchestra

Playing from vocal score, not to speak of orchestral, is a much more valuable accomplishment than the mere expert deciphering of a figured bass. To acquire it, the students should first be familiar with all harmonic progressions, resolutions of chords, etc. He should then commence with simple four-part pieces in which the middle voices have little or no independent motion. His harmonic knowledge will speedily enable him to recognize at a glance the given chord, its particular form, inversion, etc., although printed upon four staves. The same knowledge will also enable him to *anticipate* the succeeding chord or progression in many cases.

Playing from Vocal Score—its relative value. How to acquire it.

In doing this, the eye may either glance downward (from the Soprano), through the score, or upward, from the Bass. The latter method will probably be found preferable in the majority of cases. It will be governed, however, by the motion of a given part; as, for instance, if the Soprano moves while the Bass does not, and *vice versa*.

When the student has acquired a tolerable degree of facility in playing pieces of a simple harmonic character, he may proceed to such as contain more motion in the middle parts, and finally to those where all the voices have an independent, melodic progression.



Mendelssohn's four-part songs furnish good material for such practice.

Orchestral  
Score

In regard to the requirements demanded in playing from orchestral score, the student will find a suggestive and valuable, although by no means exhaustive, article under the head of "Playing from Score," in Moore's "Encyclopedia of Music."

Recapitula-  
tion

In conclusion and likewise in recapitulation, the student will perceive that the use of Thorough-Bass, as a means of playing accompaniments, is practically a thing of the past, but that its value in theoretical study has not diminished, and can not do so in the slightest degree.

He who qualifies himself to be a *thoroughly good* harmonist will find no great difficulty in playing from a figured bass, should such occasion present itself. Of course, the accompanists of former days acquired, from constantly using this system, a readiness in playing from it, especially at sight and in a comparatively quick tempo, which would not readily be found now. The broadcast dissemination of musical literature, at comparatively low prices, in which the accompaniments are fully written out, has done away with the necessity of such an application of Thorough-Bass in our day.

Such organists as have occasion to use much manuscript music in their choirs, may, however, find it a convenient mode of short-hand writing, as saving the labor of writing out their own part in full.

## CHAPTER XV.

### ACCOMPANIMENT WITH ORCHESTRA.

BUT few, perhaps, of those making use of this book will have the opportunity offered them of playing the organ part in works composed for voices, full orchestral accompaniment and organ. Nevertheless, there must come a "first time" when some young organist of ability will be called upon to make this experience.

For such an one—and what talented and faithful student may not, at least, aspire to it?—it is hoped this chapter may contain useful hints; while, in an artistic point of view, the subject can not fail to have some interest even to those to whom the practical experience may never come.

Before proceeding to examine the conditions governing this class of accompaniment, we will quote, and comment upon, certain passages bearing upon this subject from Berlioz's "Art of Instrumentation."

Hector Berlioz on this subject

Under the head of "The Organ," he says:

"It is doubtless possible to blend the organ with the divers constituent elements of the orchestra; and it has even been many times done, but it is strangely derogatory to this majestic instrument to reduce it to this secondary condition" (namely, of subordinate accompaniment). . . . "Moreover, it should be felt that its smooth, equal, and uniform sonorousness never entirely melts into the variously characterized sounds of the orchestra, and that there seems to exist between these two musical powers a secret antipathy."

"Whenever I have heard the organ played at the same time with the orchestra, it has seemed to me to produce a detestable effect, and to impair that of the orchestra instead of augmenting it."

No matter what rank different individuals may assign to Berlioz as a composer, there are, at least, no two opinions as to his intimate acquaintance with special orchestral effects.

As to his stricture upon the use of the organ with orchestra being "derogatory to the majestic instrument," our greatest masters in oratorio, Bach, Handel, and Mendelssohn, have evidently not thought so. They have, on the contrary, relied upon the organ in all of their works of this kind, for some of their grandest effects. In the most modern treatment of the modern orchestra, we find composers still resorting to it, as a means of effect unattainable in any other way. Of this, we have an ultra illustration in the "*Christus*" of Liszt, and (in purely instrumental work) in the same composer's symphonic poem, entitled "*Die Himmenschlacht*."

Use of the Organ with Orchestra by recognized masters

---

\* Berlioz's "Art of Instrumentation." Novello's edition, page 127.

' Uniform  
Sonorous-  
ness ' "Anti-  
pathy between  
Organ and  
Orchestra,"  
etc

As to its "uniform sonorousness" proving an objection, the simple fact is that it need not, and should not be employed at such uniform sonorousness. On the contrary, the tone should be varied, through the skill of the performer, to suit the requirements of the composition. Most organs now found in concert-halls, here as well as in Europe, are provided with mechanical means to assist the performer in such cases.

As to the "secret antipathy which seems to exist between these two musical powers," there is a certain amount of truth in Berlioz's remarks; but this "antipathy" is not radical, but qualified by various conditions which we will consider later.

Peculiar gain  
from addition  
of the Organ  
in certain  
works.

From the third quotation, we can only deduce the opinion, that Berlioz was unfortunate enough never to have heard the organ properly played in connection with the orchestra; for the effect, in such case, is generally considered, both by professional critics and amateurs, to be any thing but "detestable." Indeed, those who have had the opportunity of hearing a *good* performance with orchestra *and* organ of such choruses (and many more might be cited) as Handel's "Hallelujah!" from the "Messiah;" Bach's "Ye thunders, ye lightnings," from the "Passion Music according to St. Matthew;" or the "Thanks be to God," from Mendelssohn's "Elijah," can scarcely be satisfied with ever so good a performance by the largest chorus and orchestra, *without* the organ.

We dwell upon this point that the student may not be rendered doubtful in his own opinion, should he meet with a hostile one from so eminent an authority, in matters pertaining to combined tone effects, as Berlioz.

Grounds of  
Berlioz's criti-  
cisms

Having seen that the practice of the masters has been to make extensive use of the organ in connection with the orchestra, let us now examine the grounds which Berlioz had for making the criticisms given. Although exaggerated, they do not proceed from mere idle prejudice, and are therefore worthy of examination. In this way, we shall ascertain in what the "secret antipathy" referred to consists, and the student will gain a clearer idea of *what he should avoid*, before proceeding to consider *what he should do*.

Equal Tem-  
perament.

When voices sing or an orchestra plays "in tune," conventionally speaking, they sing or play in *perfect* tune as compared with our keyed instruments, the piano, and, more especially, the organ. These two are *never* in perfect tune, mathematically speaking. The modern system of tuning distributes the inequalities of the scale among different intervals of that scale, and in such a way that perfect octaves are obtained, but the other intervals slightly modified. The ear accepts them, however, as practically "in tune." This system is called "The Equal Temperament."\*

The Organ  
never in tune.

Besides this, a large organ is never *strictly* in tune, even upon the compromise of equal temperament; not even when the tuners have but just left the instrument. This is owing to the greatly varying size, material, and relative exposure of the different pipes to atmospheric changes. This applies likewise to barometric as well as thermometric influences.

Mixtures with  
Orchestra.

We have also seen (in Chapter I.) that the principles upon which the Mixtures of the organ are constructed, introduce into any given harmony a series of tones wholly foreign to that harmony. This is utterly opposed to the nature of the orchestra, and, if allowed to assert itself in connection with it, the effect might well be pronounced "detestable."

This is by no means saying that the Mixtures may *never* be employed in connection with the orchestra, but simply that they are only to be used when the great force of combined orchestral and choral effects, upon a large scale, conceals their *harmonic* character. This is,

\* It is necessarily impossible to treat, with even measurable fulness, of this important subject here. Such students as may not be familiar with it are referred to an able exposition of the same in Cornell's "Primer of Modern Tonality," Chapter VI., page 33. G. Schirmer, New York.

indeed, the same principle upon which they are to be used in simple organ accompaniment. In this case, however, still greater care is to be exercised that their individual character is *wholly* absorbed in the general harmonic mass.

In order, then, that the best effects may be obtained from the organ in the connection of which we are now speaking, it is necessary for the organist to forego all attempts at display. He must so handle his instrument that the listener experiences the effect of a great pervading force, sustaining the whole harmonic superstructure without obtruding its individual tone upon the ear.


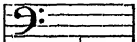
It is certainly the part of an artist to sink his own individuality and that of his instrument in the more perfect rendering of a master work requiring the combined resources of organ and orchestra. Where the effect thus produced is more sublime than without it, it can scarcely be deemed "derogatory to the majestic instrument" to be called upon to lend a subordinate assistance to a more perfect and therefore more artistic result.

The two qualities of tone which the organist must be cautious of employing are the Mixtures and the Manual Reeds.

We need say no more as regards the Mixtures.

The reeds do not assimilate well with the orchestral tone, except in passages where they lend increased power to the general *fortissimo* without their characteristic quality being perceived. In this respect, their use is nearly identical with that of the Mixtures, although, if in good tune, they may be introduced somewhat earlier. Should they be employed in soft passages, they would (as imitative stops) compare unfavorably in tone and intonation with the actual orchestral instruments from which their names are derived. They may sometimes be employed (as well as the Flutes) in performances upon a comparatively small scale; as, for instance, when the orchestra is represented virtually by the stringed instruments only. In such case, the organ may supply the actual wind parts with an effect more or less closely approximating the composer's intention in the original orchestral score.

The chief value of the organ, as an addition to an orchestral accompaniment, is unquestionably the gain resulting from the deep foundation furnished by pedal tones. Nothing in the orchestra equals these in gravity, weight, nor in ability to sustain the same. Here, the effect of the "uniform sonorousness" frequently produces results of little less than electrical effect.

The lowest tone of the orchestra is the low E  of the Double Bass (Contrabasso), sounding an octave lower than written. The pedal organ, with sixteen-foot stops drawn, gives us a major third lower yet—namely:  and, should the instrument be provided with

a pedal-stop of 32 feet, we obtain tones *two octaves* and a major third lower than the written notes, and one octave and a major third lower than any sounds producible by orchestral instruments. It is not the mere additional compass which alone makes these tones valuable, but their power of indefinitely sustaining them, and their pervading quality.

Almost valueless as musical sounds, considered by themselves, they become of infinite importance when serving as a foundation to a grand and massive superstructure.

The manual-stops best uniting themselves with the orchestral tone are the Diapasons and Flutes (eight, four, and even two feet), especially in *piano* and *mezzo-forte* accompaniments. The sixteen-foot stops of the manuals should not be employed where the accompaniment is held *piano*, as the lower octaves which they give would cause the same to be heard in an unpleasant way, when the orchestral standard is essentially eight feet. This is especially the case in

The Organist should here sink the individuality of his instrument

Reed-stops with Orchestra.

Value of the Pedal tones with Orchestra.

Stops most readily blending with Orchestra. Use of Sixteen-foot Manual Tone.

fugued movements where the theme is led off in the Soprano, Alto, or Tenor, and where the organ has no sustaining *harmonies*, but simply supports the voices in unison. In this latter instance, it is well to avoid the sixteen-foot tone even in fortissimo. An illustration of this avoidance of sixteen-foot tone would be the *commencement* of the following chorus from Handel's "Samson:"

## EXAMPLE 163.

Then shall they know, that he, whose name Je - ho - - vah, is a - lone, etc.

Then shall they know, that he whose, etc.

After the entrance of the Bass, the sixteen-foot stops may appropriately be added. Novello advises the opening of this chorus with Full Organ without reeds. Such registration would more plainly call attention to the underlying octaves than would the Full Organ complete. For another example of this kind, see the opening of the chorus, "And the glory of the Lord shall be revealed," from Handel's "Messiah."

If the fugue theme leads in the Bass, there can rarely be any objection to the use of "Doubles."

Deduction  
from preced-  
ing remarks

The deduction from the preceding remarks is evidently this, that it is the duty of the organist (1) so to subdue his instrument that it blend into the general effect without being specially perceived as to its own tone-color—in a word, that it is to be *felt* rather than heard; (2) except in *fortissimo* passages, its Diapasons and Flutes are principally of value, not excluding the use of even the Full Organ when the size and power of orchestra and chorus admit the same. Even in such case, the subordinate relation is to be preserved. Let us now proceed further, and consider *what* the organist should play and what he should omit.

The vocal  
parts as a  
guide

By general consent of the best authorities, his primary duty is to support the voices by playing the vocal parts, *not as condensed in a piano accompaniment*, but reading from the vocal score. In addition to this, to support the instrumental bass wherever requisite, when the vocal bass may for the time be silent. This would ordinarily give the organist but four strict parts to play. But it so happens that, as a "filling-in" effect, chords of eight and even ten tones are sometimes desirable. Thus, in the chorus (No. 35) from "Elijah," Mendelssohn has given the organ accompaniment as follows at *a*:

## EXAMPLE 164.

*ff* "Ho - ly, Ho - ly, Ho - ly is God the Lord!"

*ff*

Ped. I

Fuller Har-  
monies.

If the student will turn to this chorus, and notice the effect produced by the burst of all the voices, full orchestra and organ, as a response to the Soprano solo ("Holy, Holy," etc.) which precedes it *without accompaniment*, he will see the justice of the treatment at *b*, Example 164.

The form as given by Mendelssohn (at *a*) is evidently intended as a sketch to guide the player. This is shown by the great distance between the bass and the chords of the right hand;

as well as in the third measure by the extremely inferior effect of the upper F, as compared with the lower, given to the pedal bass.

It may also occur when voices syllabically repeat a number of tones belonging to the same chord, that the effect may be enhanced by simply sustaining such chord upon the organ. This too, not unfrequently, without reference to passing tones. From this we see that even the vocal parts can only be a guide, not a final decision, as to the organist's duty.

Unfortunately, Bach and Handel have written out no organ-parts to their great works, as they played them or would have them played. They have left us only a figured bass, which, as we have seen in the previous chapter, may be variously interpreted as to inversions, etc. Neither have they indicated when and where the organ should cease, the figured bass frequently continuing (for the benefit of the harpsichord-player of that day) when the use of the organ is objectionable on technical as well as æsthetic grounds.

Bach and  
Handel.

As, then, neither Bach nor Handel has furnished us with any specific examples, but merely with general indications of their purpose, we therefore turn to Mendelssohn, who, as the connecting link between the ancient and modern schools, thoroughly understood the capabilities of the organ in this direction; and has also furnished the best specimens of oratorio since the time of the two musical giants before mentioned.

In two instances, at least, Mendelssohn has shown his desire to have the organ handled in *a particular way* in connection with the orchestra. These instances are his "*Lobgesang*" (Hymn of Praise, Op. 52) and his "*Elijah*," Op. 70.

Mendelssohn.

To show the importance he placed upon the effect of the organ in these compositions, it suffices to call attention to the fact that, in the first mentioned work, he has carefully written out the accompaniment as he desires it played, even to hints in registration.

In the latter work, the orchestral score contains only indications of *when* the organ is to be used, and *when not*, by means of the terms "*Senza Organo*" (without organ), and "*Col Organo*" (with organ), placed under the contra-bass part. Mendelssohn subsequently wrote out an organ-part to "*Elijah*," evidently for the purpose of assuring the proper treatment of the instrument, without trusting to the taste and judgment of the performer. This organ-part is now published separately (by Simrock, in Bonn), in sheet-music form, and bears upon its title the remark—"from the original manuscript of the composer." This accompaniment is not so carefully prepared as that to the "*Hymn of Praise*"—that is, Mendelssohn has written it out without continuously indicating the proper use of the pedals, as to their employment in the upper or lower octave. He has also sometimes omitted the evidently desirable "filling-in" of full chords, as in Example 164. He has so constructed the part (probably as a matter of personal convenience in writing) as though it were intended for a so-called cabinet or reed organ. It is, of course, easy for an experienced organist to supply what is lacking in this respect.

Manner of in-  
dicating use  
and cessation  
of the Organ  
in full scores.

Turning to the "*Hymn of Praise*," we proceed to give certain illustrations and to analyze to some extent the treatment. By a careful study of these and the following examples, the student should not only be enabled to gain an insight into Mendelssohn's purpose, but also be able to deduce therefrom valuable information as to the proper treatment of the organ in similar works,\* which chance to be unprovided with a special accompaniment by the composer.

Mendels-  
sohn's  
"Hymn of  
Praise."

In the first chorus of the "*Hymn of Praise*," the voices, with orchestra and organ, present themselves as follows:

\* Mendelssohn also wrote out an organ part to Handel's "*Israel in Egypt*," for use in England, and published by the Handel Society of London in their folio edition of Handel's works.

## EXAMPLE 165.

2 Flutes.  
2 Oboes  
2 Clarionets.

*ff All'o moderato maestoso.*

2 Bassoons.

4 Horns.

2 Trumpets.

3 Trombones.  
Drums.

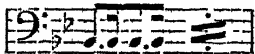
Strings.

Voices.

*ff* All men, all things, all that hath  
all that . . . .

*All'o moderato maestoso.*

Organ.

In this example, the first thing which attracts our notice is that the progression of the voices is not followed by the organ in the first two measures. Even the voices themselves do not give the *essential* rhythm of the piece, which is represented by the figure of the Second Violins, Violas, and Basses, thus:  It will be seen that the Horns and Trombones likewise assist this figure in the latter half of each of these two measures. Meantime the organ sustains the chords, *rising with the accent of each measure* in unison with the soprano voices.

## EXAMPLE 165.

The musical score for Example 165 is arranged in a system of staves. The top two staves are for the organ, with a treble and bass clef, showing a series of chords and single notes. The third staff is for the drums, with a treble clef and a 'Drums' label, showing a rhythmic pattern of eighth and sixteenth notes. The fourth and fifth staves are for the vocal parts, with a treble and bass clef, showing the lyrics 'life and breath.' and 'has life and breath.' The sixth and seventh staves are for the organ, with a treble and bass clef, showing a series of chords and single notes. The score is divided into two measures by a vertical line. The first measure contains the organ, drums, and vocal parts. The second measure contains the organ, drums, and vocal parts, with the lyrics 'etc.' appearing at the end of the vocal lines.

This, in the first two measures, brings the Soprano voices lower than the organ accompaniment on the second (unaccented) half of these measures, even as compared with the eight-foot registration only. This is partly compensated for by the progression of the 1st Trumpet, in unison with the Sopranos. The student should endeavor to make evident to his mental ear the bright tone of this latter instrument. The whole instrumentation is evidently based upon the assumption of a large chorus. This shows us that where the harmony changes but slightly (of the five measures given four are represented by the chord of B flat), it is unessential for the organ to repeat



the rhythm of either voices or instruments. The essential *motion* is kept intact by the orchestra.

The mission of the Organ to blend together the tone-mass. It is then evident that the mission of the organ, in such cases, is to reduce the passage to its essential *harmonies*. In so doing, it exerts a strong influence as a "blending-in" effect and means of unity. The student should bear in mind that, as the accompaniment is here marked *ff*, other octaves are sounding in the organ part, besides those which appear to the eye.

It may be said here that as a full exposition of this subject would greatly exceed our space (through the necessity of giving many examples in score), it is expected that the student will, at least, supply himself with the piano scores of the works referred to for purposes of comparison.

For this reason, comparatively familiar and easily accessible works have been selected from which to draw our illustrations. This being assumed, we return to our former example.

The Organ considered as a member of the orchestral body.

The organ proceeds, in the general manner shown, for fifteen measures, and on reaching the "*Animato*" (sixteenth measure from the vocal opening) ceases. Subsequently, it resumes, during the last seven measures of the *Animato*, to cease again at the "*Allegro di molto*" ("Praise the Lord with lute and harp").

This calls attention to the fact that the organ is not here being used as a *continuously* accompanying instrument, but as essentially one of the orchestral family, mingling its tone at stated intervals in the harmonic mass for a given purpose. The cessation, as well as the re-entrance, of its tone, is one of any composer's most decided means of heightening the effect, and of this Mendelssohn always avails himself.

#### EXAMPLE 166.

The musical score for Example 166 features three staves. The top staff is for Sopranos, with the lyrics "And let all flesh. . . . mag - ni - fy his might and his glo - ry." and "etc.". The middle staff is for Altos, with the lyrics "And let all" and "etc.". The bottom staff is for the Organ, marked "with 16 ft." and "etc.". The organ part is written in a grand staff (treble and bass clef) and includes a "Sixteen-foot Manual Registration".

Example of Sixteen-foot Manual Registration.

We have, in the above example, an illustration of the manner in which the organ may be employed when but one vocal part for the time being continues the piece. The stringed instruments here supply the rhythmic accompaniment continuously (for which see piano score), while the Oboes and Horns reinforce the voices in unison and in the octave.

The student should carefully note the effect of the sixteen-foot registration. Were the passage given to the bass voices, the accompaniment would "overlie" the voices. This, with the sixteen-foot registration, would be too thick and gloomy, especially in case of a small chorus. As it is, the sixteen-foot stop "underlies" the Altos, and does not disturb the clearness of the passing notes given them.

## EXAMPLE 167.

The musical score for Example 167 is written for Soprano, Alto, Tenor, Bass, and Organ. The key signature is one flat (B-flat major or D minor), and the time signature is common time (C). The lyrics are: "And let all flesh . . . mag-ni-fy his might and his glo-ry". The Soprano part begins with a high note in the second measure. The Alto part has a long note in the first measure. The Tenor and Bass parts have a long note in the first measure. The Organ part has a long note in the first measure. The lyrics are: "And let all flesh . . . mag-ni-fy his might and his glo-ry".

We call attention to the "pedal point" in the accompaniment to Example 167, as occupying three out of the four measures given; likewise, the deceptive cadence of the accompaniment to B flat at the close of the same—the voices, considered by themselves, making a cadence in D minor. This pedal point does not occur in the voices ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  measures excepted), but it is given to a part of the orchestral basses as well as to the organ.

"Pedal point"

Such a pedal point may frequently *not* occur in the piano score, although it does in this instance. If it does in the orchestral basses, it should be reinforced by the organ as best qualified to sustain it.

It is evident, then, that the accompanist should familiarize himself in advance with the main features of the orchestral scoring of a given piece, especially as to the character and treatment of the basses. This applies particularly to such works as have not a definitely written out organ accompaniment by the composer.

Recurring to Example 167, we also observe that, in the second measure, the Soprano springs to the upper "A," and that the organ *does not* follow suit. The Sopranos are supported upon this high tone by the first Violins and two Oboes in unison. Supposing the accompaniment of this measure to have only a strong *eight-foot* registration, we see that the A of the accompaniment fills a gap in the vocal harmony between the Soprano and Alto. The fact is that sixteen-, four-, and two-foot stops are also employed here, the passage being *ff*. This gives the actual high A of the Sopranos, as well as the octave higher and lower; while the sense of a "filling-in" part, and of a blending together of the harmonies, is much better preserved by the form given. Were this vocal skip followed in the accompaniment, the organ would step into the foreground unduly through the octave repetition of its tone—eight, four, and two feet.

High compass of Sopranos not followed by the Organ.

Attention is called to the progression of the Tenor, in the latter part of the second measure to the accent of the third, as compared with the same passage for the left hand in the accompaniment. It is seen that consecutive octaves are the result. Treatment of this kind should

Purity of harmonic progression.

ordinarily be avoided. The excuse here is that the vocal parts, considered by themselves, and the accompaniment, considered by itself, show two correct, though varied, leadings of the parts, with coincident harmonic progressions. We give one more illustration, covering the sustaining of chords while voices move, as well as the avoidance of a high tone in the Soprano, from the first chorus of "Elijah," commencing with the 49th measure.

EXAMPLE 168.

Musical score for Example 168, Organ part. The score is written for a single organ on a grand staff (treble and bass clefs). It begins with a key signature of one sharp (F#) and a common time signature (C). The music consists of sustained chords in the left hand and moving lines in the right hand. There are markings "N B." and "etc" in the right hand.

The student should compare the above with the vocal score.

EXAMPLE 169.

Musical score for Example 169, Orchestral and Organ parts. The score is written for multiple instruments: 2 Flutes unisono, 2 Oboes, 2 Clarinet unisono, Strings, and Organ. The key signature is one sharp (F#) and the time signature is common time (C). The score is divided into measures. The organ part is marked "With soft stops. (8ft)" and "cresc.". The strings are marked "p". The flutes and oboes are marked "p". The clarinet part has a note "(From here 1st Clar Solo in unison with Flutes)". The score ends with "etc".

Sustained  
tones with  
soft stops.  
Chromatic  
passing notes  
in Orchestra.

We cite Example 169, from Bach's "Passion Music, according to St. Matthew" \* (No. 35), as an instance of sustained tones with soft stops. The inexperienced organist or harmonist might well hesitate, in view of the passages given to the Flutes, to introduce sustained harmonies of this kind. But a careful examination of the organ part, as compared with the melodic progression of the Flutes, will show that the majority of the tones belong to the essential harmony, and that the "passing notes" are comparatively few in number. Of course, the registration must be so subordinated as in no way to cloud over or render doubtful the figuration in sixteenths.

\* Piano score published by O. Ditson, Boston.

The student should observe the varied rhythmic support lent respectively by the stringed instruments and the two clarionets in unison. The strings will be but faintly heard here, but they will be *felt*.

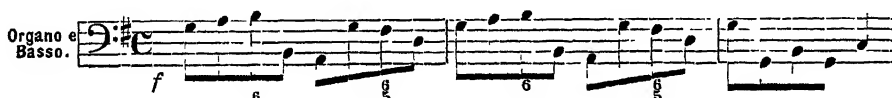
Another example of the Orchestra preserving the rhythm

It will also be seen that the organ part has been derived principally from the harmonies sustained by the Oboes and the stringed basses. The accompaniment, as originally written by Bach, comprised, beside the orchestral instruments, simply a "Continuo" (as described in the previous chapter), with the necessary thorough-bass figuration. The present "translation" of it into notes is from the celebrated score edition, edited by Robert Franz, and published by Breitkopf & Haertel, in Leipzig. In this, the obsolete wind instruments of Bach's day have been replaced by modern ones. The organ part has everywhere been written out in full, upon three staves, and in a most masterly way—in the very spirit of Bach himself—instead of depending upon the thorough-bass figuration. This great work is thus made available to modern conditions without losing any of its essentially original characteristics.

As soon as the student finds himself confronted with a work to which no special organ part has ever been written, but wherein, notwithstanding, the organ is expected to assume a prominent *rôle*; he must rely (in forming his accompaniment) upon the æsthetic significance of the piece, even more than upon the nature of the passages themselves, as being suited or not to the organ. Thus, at the beginning of the chorus, "For unto us a child is born," from Handel's "Messiah," the original organ part—if we may so term it—begins as follows :

Conditions to be observed when a work has no separate Organ Accompaniment.

#### EXAMPLE 170.



This is a "Continuo," and by no means very amply figured. The term "*Organo e Bassi*" (organ and orchestral basses) would imply that the organ should commence at once. This, however, is not traditional in this piece; for to begin at once is to throw away the subsequent climax. Besides this, the instrumentation of the opening is so thin, and the progression of the bass so marked, that the employment of the organ would here be positively injurious. The use of the pedal basses especially would tend to give a clumsy effect.

In this particular case, custom and common-sense have sanctioned reserving the organ until the first climax at the words, "Wonderful, Counsellor, the Mighty God," etc. After this, the organ may be sparingly employed, until the recurrence of the same passage in another key. After this, the organ part may again be continued to the close. So far as the "Continuo" may be accepted as indicating Handel's own intention, it was probably written for the harpsichord, which (as we have seen in a previous chapter) was then employed with the orchestra.

Reserving the Organ to heighten climaxes.

We have observed that the vocal parts, or at least their essential harmonies, constitute the player's guide in introducing the organ with orchestra. We now cite an instance, frequently occurring in Handel's music, where the voices have a continued florid figuration.

## EXAMPLE 171.

Avoidance of  
florid figuration.

It is a virtual impossibility for voices, orchestra, and organ to move concisely together were the organ to play the florid voice parts of Example 171. This is not on account of any lack of capability in modern organs or executants, but rather on account of the distance of the organ from the voices and orchestra, as usually placed. Besides this, were it a perfectly feasible matter to get a united effect in such passages, it would deprive them of a certain lightness and fluency which must be their essential characteristic. The larger the chorus, the greater is this difficulty. This being the case, the organist turns to the essential harmonies, not considering the figuration except to avoid it, somewhat after the following manner :

## EXAMPLE 172.

Cutting short  
of phrases.  
Use of the  
pedals only.

This example should be carefully compared with the preceding. It will be noticed how short the phrases are cut off in Example 172. This is absolutely necessary in order to preserve unity between orchestra, organ, and chorus. The same reason frequently leads to the use of the pedals only in florid accompaniments. This latter treatment can very frequently be adopted when the use of the manuals, in any form, would but tend to blur the effect desired.

Impossibility  
of relying  
upon the ear  
for unity of  
performance.

The organist who undertakes this class of accompaniment should be a perfectly steady and reliable "timeist," for nothing can more quickly disturb a chorus than to have the organist hold back the tempo. To the inexperienced player, it may seem a slight matter to avoid this fault. It is, on the contrary, extremely difficult. In case of a large chorus of four to six hundred voices, necessarily occupying considerable space, the collective tone always arrives perceptibly

late to the ear of the accompanist. Should he strive to keep with the voices *as they sound to him*, the effect in the audience would be that of the accompaniment being constantly behind time.

Secondly, and in addition to this uncomfortable relation between voices and organ, the brass instruments and drums are generally placed at the rear, in close proximity to the organist, and between the chorus, the rest of the orchestra, and himself. These instruments (brass and drums) not only frequently prevent the organist from hearing the vocal parts, but their own part usually contains many syncopations or other deviations from the general rhythm. Mean-  
Other in-  
drances. The  
brass instru-  
ments and  
drums.

time the sound of both voices and instruments is thrown out *from*, and not *towards*, the organist. Under such circumstances, the accompanist can depend but little upon his ear, but must rely almost exclusively upon the conductor; playing exactly with his beat. The difficulty is greatly enhanced by the fact that such precision on the part of the organist will (to *his* ear) *seemingly* produce an *anticipation* of given harmonies; as though the organ were in advance of the rest of the instrumental and choral forces. None who have not had actual experience with a large chorus can imagine how difficult it is, at first, not to yield in tempo. Only in this way, however, can true precision, which will be recognized by the audience as such, be attained.

When the number of performers is very large, the organist should all but anticipate the conductor's beat.

The same precision is requisite at the close of phrases where the organ ceases and the orchestra continues. This is especially necessary at the final close of a piece. Here the slightest "after-sound" of the organ is very offensive when orchestra and voices cease promptly. The player must remove both hands and feet from the instrument simultaneously with the sign from the conductor. Nor is it allowable for the pedal tone to linger a moment, as we have seen is frequently done with good effect, in church music, the organ being then the only accompanying instrument. That Mendelssohn realized the importance of this cessation of tone may be seen by comparing the close of Example 164 with the voice parts. (See piano score of "Elijah.")

Avoidance of  
"after-tone"  
at final close.

We now proceed to give certain extracts from the organ accompaniment to Mendelssohn's "Elijah." The student should carefully compare them with the piano score at least, viewing the piano score as an outline of the orchestral accompaniment.

Examples for  
comparison  
from "Eli-  
jah."

### EXAMPLE 173.

No. 1.—*Andante, Lento.*

In this example, it is evident that the pedal should be used in the lower octave during the *ff*. Neither is it necessary to repeat the chords, as given in the first four measures, in view of the accentuation of the voices and the figuration of the orchestral accompaniment. Beginning with the ninth measure, the pedal only is employed.

Manner of  
Study.

The student will find it a great source of improvement if, in such cases as the above, he ask himself, "Why has the author done this?" Careful study of voice parts, accompaniment, and organ part will almost invariably reveal the reason.

#### EXAMPLE 174.

No. 9 — (Beginning with 27th measure)

#### EXAMPLE 175.

(No. 20.)

"ELIJAH,"

#### EXAMPLE 176.

(No. 20. Tenth measure from the end.)

#### EXAMPLE 177.

(No. 24.)

Observe in Examples 176 and 177 the relations of the accompaniment as given to voices and orchestra.

In leaving the student to pursue this study at his own option, it is simply necessary to call attention to one or two points, by way of summing up the requirements of this class of accompaniment. Musicianship  
required

(1.) In employing the organ with orchestra, it is musicianship rather than mere technique that is required, although the technique must be ample.

(2.) The organist must have nerve to follow the conductor steadily. He must do this regardless of conflicting sounds arising from acoustic relations, and produced by the grouping of a large number of vocal and instrumental performers. Nerve

(3.) He must so handle his instrument, that, except in the rarest instances, it does not obtrude its tone upon the ear, but blends into the general tone mass. It is manifest that the more familiar he may be with the nature and construction of an orchestral score, the more ready he can solve the problem presented to him. In this connection, it would prove exceedingly profitable for the student to possess himself of the complete organ part to "Elijah" and the "Hymn of Praise." The full score of Bach's "Passion Music," also his "Magnificat" (both edited by Franz), containing the organ accompaniment in full upon three staves, offer most extended and valuable material for further study of this subject. Familiarity  
with the work  
to be per-  
formed



## CONCLUDING REMARKS.

---

Résumé.

In the preceding pages, it has been the author's endeavor to make clear some of the modes of treating the organ as an accompanying instrument.

He has striven to show that, while the pianist may confine himself to the notes of an accompaniment as he finds them, the organist must modify the same in many cases, in order to adapt them to his instrument.

If this has been understood, it must have been perceived that such deviations from the exact notation have not been idly made, but were advocated for the purpose of conforming to the spirit, rather than to the letter, of a given composition; also to afford the voices unimpeded support.

He has further endeavored to make evident that an accompaniment must not be considered by itself, but in its compound relation to the voice or voices accompanied; the two elements together forming the complete whole.

Rehearsal  
with Piano  
instead of  
Organ

Although no better support for voices can be found than that afforded by the organ, it nevertheless frequently proves a poor instrument *to rehearse with*. Both its merits and defects as an instrument contribute to this result.

In the first place, the distinctness with which it sustains every tone of the harmony, causes it to render *too much* support to the voices for purposes of rehearsal. Besides this, it measurably prevents the organist (supposing him to be the director of the choir, which he always should be) from accurately hearing the mistakes and faults of the singers, especially if the choir is a large one.

In securing promptness of accentuation and rhythm, in the first practice of a new composition, the piano is far preferable to the organ.

When a choir has once made itself fairly familiar with a piece, the organ will then furnish all the rhythmic accent necessary, if properly handled. The piano, beyond securing intonation and accent, does not support the voices in the sense that the organ accomplishes this. With the piano, the singers are forced to rely upon themselves to a far greater extent, and defects in performance are far more readily detected.

For these reasons, every choir should hold their rehearsals, of new compositions at least, with piano. Afterwards the piece may be rehearsed with the organ, if, in the judgment of the director, it is necessary. This will sometimes be the case, more especially in pieces provided with an obligato accompaniment for the organ.

Rehearsal  
without Ac-  
companiment.

The young organist taking charge of a choir will likewise find the frequent rehearsal *without accompaniment* (or such portions of pieces as seem to present peculiar difficulties)

to be of the greatest value. In this way, even timid singers learn to be independent, while the director can give his entire attention to the true balance of the voices. This is the more important, as even in choirs (quartet or chorus) where the parts may be termed well balanced, it is frequently necessary for one part to sing louder or softer than another. This occurs not merely in case of a melodic design, which is intended to be "brought out" in some particular part; it may also be necessary to the proper blending of a single chord. Here it becomes the director's duty to see that the voices which have such intervals as fourths and fifths do not unduly assert themselves, and that the thirds and sixths are so sustained that the harmony may seem complete to the ear.

Glancing back over the various chapters of this work, the author is fully sensible of many shortcomings in the presentation of the different subjects. He has been encouraged to proceed, however, by the fact that no previous attempt has been made (so far as he is aware) to put in print a certain amount of what may be termed "traditional matter" bearing upon accompaniment. The various organ "methods" have but little or nothing to say on this subject, nor does it strictly come within their province. Our better organists become familiar with various modes and expedients in organ accompaniment, partly from some good teacher's example, and partly through their own natural talent. In the latter case, such knowledge comes to them after long experience, and as a result of familiarity with the nature of voices, as well as with that of their instrument.

It furthermore comes to them in the light of an original discovery in this direction.

To hasten such discoveries has been the principal purpose of the preceding pages.

It may possibly seem discouraging to some readers of this work that they are called upon to familiarize themselves with *so many* points of treatment, often trifling in themselves, in order to accompany well.

To such faint-hearted ones, the author would fain say a word or two in conclusion.

He has not pretended to treat his subject exhaustively, and therefore fully believes that any church-player (to be thoroughly worthy of the name of a good choir-accompanist) must be familiar with the majority of the ideas herein advanced; even if he apply the principles they involve in a practically unconscious manner.

As regards counsel and advice towards accomplishing this end, no language of his own could here prove so applicable as the following golden lines of encouragement :

" The more an artist faithful toils,  
The more unto his work gives heed,  
So much the more doth he succeed.  
Therefore each day thy task renew,  
And thou shalt see what *that* will do ;  
Thereby each purpose is attained,  
Thereby what seemed so hard is gained,  
And, step by step, thou shalt discern  
The knowledge which thy hand must learn."

GOETHE (" *Artists' Apotheosis*").



# INDEX.

	PAGE		PAGE
Accent.....	36	Close, Exceptiona .....	25
Accompaniment above Melody, and aid of Pedal in this form.....	63	"Col-Organo".....	161
'A charge to keep." (Quartet) .....	35	Combination Pedals.....	20
Adaptations to the Organ, Necessity for.....	90	Comparison between Stops of the same Manual. ....	132
Adaptations, etc., upon one Manual. ....	92	Compass.....	5
Ditto, upon two Manuals.....	95	Consonance of sustained Tones with Voice.....	92
Adaptations, Recognition of; Appropriate form for.....	96	Contrast.....	12
Addition of Four-foot Tone.....	6	Continuity of Organ-Tone.....	57
"    Sixteen-foot Tone.....	7	Coupling, Conditions of Temperature affecting. ....	110
Agreement with Rhythmic Accent.....	23	Crescendo (and Diminuendo) by Registration.....	23
Alternation of Manuals.....	96, 103	Curtailment of Tune in "giving it out".....	67
Amateur Organists .....	2	Derivation (Orchestral) of a Piano Accompaniment. ....	99
Anthems, Accompaniment of.....	8	Diapason, Character of.....	8
Apparent "Obligato".....	70	"    Derivation of Word.....	9
Arpeggios, Forms of.....	55	Diminuendo.....	34
"As panting in the sultry beam." (Quartet).....	47	"    (Stop and Swell).....	26
Avoidance of Reed-Tone.....	78	Dissonances in Figuration... ..	97
"    Florid Figuration in Accompaniment with Orchestra... ..	168	"    Faulty absorption of, in Accompaniment....	97
Avoidance of "After-Tone" at final close.....	169	Doubling the Manual Bass.....	14
Balance, as regards Voices.....	6	"    Intervals of a Chord.....	53
"    in Crescendo obtained by a certain use of Swell Pedal....	38	"    Difference between, and adding Sixteen-ft. Stops	54
Balanced Swell Pedal .....	112	"Downward-Roll". .....	26
Bass, executed by Pedals, "as written".....	60	"Drum-Rolls".....	107
*Basso Continuo".....	152	Dulciana, Relation to String-Tones and Diapasons.....	11
Beginning Tune after giving it out, another mode, etc., 14,	15	Effect, Clearness of, in Obligato Accompaniment... ..	80
"Blessed be Thou." (Quartet).....	49	"    in the Distance (Reed Obligato).....	82
Bourdon in Swell Organ, Value of a Divided.....	33	"    see foot-note .....	73
Bourdon in Pedal Organ, Characteristics of.....	135	Eight-foot Tone, Omission of.....	136
Cadences, Avoidance of.....	67	Eight and Two-foot Tone, Omitting Stops of Four feet... 136	
Carrying over of Tone, Effect of Elevation upon.....	110	"Elijah" (Mendelssohn's), Illustrations from.....	73
Chant, Variety in Accompaniment of.....	51	(See also Chapter XV.)	
Chant, Gregorian.....	57	Equalizing Temperature in Swell-box.....	110
Chanting, Faults in.....	52	"Felt, rather than Heard" (Mixtures).. ..	8
Chanting, How Organist may aid proper Performance of..	52	Fifteenth.....	8
Change of Fingers upon Sharp Keys.....	18	Figuration, Contrapuntal.....	65
"    Manuals .....	60	"    in the Bass.....	98
"    Registration after giving out Tune.....	61	"    Triplet and other.....	94
Characteristics of High and Low Tones.....	6	Flutes combined with Diapasons.....	9
Chorales, Characteristics of.....	18	"    Double and "Rohr".....	84
Classification. (Quartet Accompaniment).....	29	"    Characteristic range of these latter.....	85
Climax.....	34	"    "Open" Eight-foot Range.....	85
		"    of Four feet.....	85

	PAGE		PAGE
Four-foot Tone, when to be added .....	6	Mental Requisites. ....	42
Freeing the Hands .....	20	Method to indicate Accompaniment sometimes employed. ....	68
Full Swell, Use of, in small Organs.....	117	“ ditto, Objections to .....	69
General Principles only useful.....	5	“ ditto, how to modify and improve the same.....	69
Given Pieces, Marking Registration for.....	4	Mixtures .....	7, 158
Good Accompaniment, what constitutes.....	1	Modulation, Remote, in an Interlude.....	122
Gregorian Tones (Foot-note) .....	52	Motion, Rhythmic.....	60
“Hail to the Lord’s anointed” (Quartet) .....	45	“ Continuance of.....	65
Hands, Substitution of .....	20	“ Relative, between Voice and Accompaniment ....	70
Harmonic Tones .....	7	“ Conditions under which it may cease in Accompaniment.....	71
Harmonies, Change of, as affecting Crescendo and Diminuendo of Stops .....	23	“ by rhythmic means only.....	91
Harmonies, Supplementary.....	15	“ below sustained Tones .....	92
Harmony and Thorough-Bass, Relation between .....	150	“ above “ “ .....	93
High Compass of Sopranos not followed by the Organ, when with Orchestra. ....	165	“ Transposition of, from Right to Left Hand.....	99
Incompetence of Tune to express continuity of Thought .....	119	Musical Cadences, their Relations to Punctuation of Text. ....	32
Interludes, First condition of Introduction.....	118	Natural order of the Vocal Score, Disarrangement of..	151
“ Second ditto .....	119	“New Technique” of Balanced or Ratchet Swell Pedal..	112
“ Objections to Use of .....	118	“No change of time” Quartet .....	58
“ Points of Introduction of.....	120	Obligato, Nature of the .....	78
“ Simplest form of .....	120	“ Use of Solo Stops .....	78
“ Books or “Collections” of .....	120	“ Form of Accompaniment.....	78
“ Sources from whence Style may be derived, length of .....	120	“ Use of Eight-foot Open Diapason.....	84
“ Means of accomplishing change of Sentiment in.....	121	“ “ “ Flutes.....	84
“ Beginning with incomplete Measure.....	123	“ Form, sometimes so-called.....	87
“ Motion in, as compared with Tune.....	126	“ Use of Reeds (see Reeds)	
“ Objections to Examples given.....	130	“ Form, value of, as source of motion .....	88
“ Writing out as preliminary to Extemporizing .....	130	“ Treatment, Objection to.....	89
“ Close of, by dominant Cadence .....	124	Octaves, Consecutive.....	15, 53
Intonation.....	24, 31, 37, 116	“ by means of Four-foot Registration.....	104
Inversion of Theme, when to be avoided .....	64	Octave Passages (Legato) in Skips .....	104
“ Another form of .....	65	Omission, Occasional, of an Interval.....	98
“ of Accompaniment.....	107	Open Diapason, Sixteen-foot, in Pedal Organ, of the First and Second Octaves .....	130
“ of Accompanimental Chord.....	101	Organ Studies proper not sufficient in Accompaniment ...	1
“ Possibilities and Varieties of.....	102	Organ with Orchestra, manner of Study, etc., etc.....	170, 171
“ Harmonic Difficulties arising from.....	64	Ornamentation sometimes introduced in Chants.....	56
“ with sustained Tones and Syncopation.....	106	“O Thou to whose all-searching sight.” (Quartet) .....	33
“Jesus, who on Calvary’s Mountain.” (Quartet).....	42	“Overlying” and “Underlying” Accompaniment.....	73
Judgment in Application of Means.....	27	Passing Notes, Chromatic, when Organ is employed with Orchestra.....	166
Leading Tone.....	24	Peculiar Difficulties, Accompaniment of Solo Voices.....	68
Left Foot, Use of.....	115, 116	Pedal Stops, Use in Lower Octave.....	15
Legato, of the strict.....	17, 21	Pedals in Upper Octave.....	16
Legato Pedal-Playing.....	113	Pedals, Combination.....	20
Locality, Effects of, upon Swell Organ.....	111	“ Use of, when Left Hand is free.....	20
Manual Bass in Octaves.....	30	“ Eight and Four-ft., Use of, in giving out a Theme .....	133
“ Stops employed in lower Octave instead of Pedal. ....	30	“ Similar effect by Coupling.....	134
Member of the Orchestra, the Organ considered as a.....	164	Pedal-Note before and after Tune.....	25
		“Pedal-Abuse.”.....	30
		Pedal-Entrance, steadying Effect of.....	52

	PAGE		PAGE
Pedal Simplification .....	98	Staccato Touch, with sustained Tones upon one Manual..	145
“ Registration.....	103	“ “ ditto, upon two Manuals....	146
Pedal-Tone, Prolonged. . . . .	123	Staccato Chords, with “florid” Bass.....	147
Pedal-Tones, with Orchestra .....	159	Stop-Addition, Principles of .....	22, 24
Pianissimo Sixteen-foot ending .....	39	Stopped Diapasons .....	10
Piano Accompaniments, Originally so Written .....	90	String Tones, Character and Use of. ....	11, 83
Ditto, Derived from Orchestral Score .....	90	Substitution, one Solo Voice for another .....	81
Piano and Organ Accompaniments, Contradistinction between ..	91, 105	Support, without Playing Voice Parts .....	37
Piano Adaptation, Procedure in case of.....	100	Sustained Tones .....	17, 93, 98, 101
Pitch required by certain Voices....	50	Sustained Chord. ....	96
“Playing from Score”.....	151, 155	Swell Organ, Effect of elevation upon .....	110
Preludes (Choral.) .....	65	“ Pedal, improper use of .....	111
Principal.....	8, 9	“ “ Balanced and Ratchet.....	111
Purpose, Definite, in construction of Interlude. . . . .	123	“ “ Disadvantage of old style.....	113
Quartet Choirs.....	28	“Swell with Reed”.....	80
Quality (of Reeds) <i>versus</i> Power .....	79	Syllabic Repetition....	14
Quantity at Expense of Quality (Swell Registration) ....	114		
Quintadena, The.....	12	Temperament, the “Equal” .....	158
Range, Characteristic, of various Registers.....	131	Thorough-Bass and Harmony, relation between. ....	150
Recess, when the Organ stands in a.....	110	“ “ Present Value.....	151
Recitative (of Chant) support during .....	54	“ “ as Accompaniment to Recitatives .....	155
Recitatives, Accompaniment of .....	75	Thought, Connection of, between Verses of a Hymn....	119
“ closing Cadences.....	76	“ Unity of.....	128
Reeds, Use of, in Chords.....	10	Three and Two-part Accompaniment.....	69
“ Additional, in large Organs .....	11	Three Tone Qualities in Obligato Accompaniment.....	86
“ Use and Avoidance of, in Solo Accompaniment 73, 74, 78		Thematic Treatment.....	126, 127
“ Application in Obligato Accompaniment.....	79	Tone Qualities.....	8
Reed Tone, Relation of, to Voices, whether above or below them .....	80, 81	Touch .....	15
Rehearsal .....	172	Transposition.....	49
Registration.....	4, 6, 9, 114	“ in Upper and Lower Octave by Registration..	133
Rhythm, Uncertainty of, in Interludes.....	123	Treatment of Tunes in Solo, form of “giving out”...58, 62,	78
Repeated Chords.....	14	Tremulant, the Use of the.....	60
Repetition of Melody in Accompaniment.....	68	Trio-Playing.....	59
“ of same Pedal-Note. ....	98	Tuning.....	10
“Repose” in Accompaniment.....	89		
“Saviour, when in dust.” (Quartet) .....	38	Unisons between Solo-Stop and Accompaniment.....	61
“Saviour, source,” etc. (Quartet).....	40	Unison of Voice and Accompaniment.....	70
“Senza Organo.”.....	161		
Shake (or Tremolo) in Bass.....	95	Variation from Written Form of Accompaniment.....	30
Singers who “Sharp”.....	117	Variations in Quality of Tone at the same Pitch.....	131
Sixteen-foot Tone, when Added.....	7, 53	Varied Figuration, as affecting Registration.....	96
Staccato Touch, Duration of.....	140	Vocal Parts, as a Guide in Accompaniments with Orchestra.....	160
“ “ as a means of steadying Tempo .....	141	Voices, Qualifying Effect of, upon the Accompaniment... ..	35
“ “ Use in Climax Passages.....	142	Voices, of High and Low Pitch, Relations of Accompaniment to .....	72
“ “ Effect of sustained Tones upon prolongation of.....	143		
		Words, Importance of, familiarity with.....	51
		“ Adaptation of, to the Music.....	31
		Without Accompaniment.....	37, 112

























UNIVERSAL  
LIBRARY



138 248

UNIVERSAL  
LIBRARY

## “Nicholas Nickleby”

Représenté pour la première fois, à Paris, sur le théâtre  
de l'Ambigu-Comique le 29 janvier, 1842.

### DISTRIBUTION DE LA PIÈCE.

NICHOLAS NICKLEBY.. .. .	MM. Albert.
JOHN BROWDIE ( <i>fermier</i> ) .. .. .	Saint-Ernest.
RALPH ( <i>banquier</i> ) .. .. .	Chilly.
LE COMTE DE CLARENDON (38 à 40 ans)	Anatole Gras.
SQUEERS ( <i>maître d'école</i> ) .. .. .	Boutin.
PROSPECTUS ( <i>élève de M. Squeers</i> ) ..	Charles Pérey.
BECKER ( <i>ancien affidé de Ralph</i> ) .. ..	Charnoz.
BELJAMBE ( <i>cul de jatte</i> ) .. .. .	Alexandré.
UN JEUNE LORD .. .. .	Bertollet.
SMIKE ( <i>enfant élève par charité, 15 ans</i> ) ..	Mlles. Prosper.
MADELEINE CLARENDON ( <i>fille du Comte</i> )	Davenay.
CATHERINE NICKLEBY ( <i>sœur de Nicolas</i> )	Racine.
L'HÔTESSE DE LA TAVERNE .. .. .	Sylvia.

UN SHÉRIF. UN CONSTABLE. UN MÉDECIN. UN GARÇON DE THÉÂTRE ET UN GARÇON DE TAVERNE. JEUNES SEIGNEURS. ÉLÈVES DE M. SQUEERS. MENDIANS ET MENDIANTES. ETC., ETC.

Le premier acte se passe dans un petit village du Northumberland; le deuxième, a troisième, le quatrième et le cinquième, à Londres.

The French play, according to Thackeray, contained many glaring, not to say outrageous, excrescences, and the departures from the story as told by Dickens would be inexcusable if they were not, as told by Thackeray, so intensely amusing.

When “Nicholas Nickleby” was first acted in America, Joseph Jefferson made a great impression as Newman Noggs.

## CHAPTER IX

### “THE OLD CURIOSITY SHOP”

IN the summer of 1839 Dickens first got the idea of bringing out a weekly publication, to be called “Master Humphrey’s Clock,” in which his new story—“The Old Curiosity Shop”—became one of the chief attractions, with other interesting matter from other writers. That was the original scheme. Writing in the summer of 1870, Theodore Taylor said: “The first number of ‘Master Humphrey’s Clock’ appeared on the 4th of April, 1840. Not content with the unexampled success which had attended the issue of ‘Nicholas Nickleby’ in shilling numbers, the publisher conceived the mistaken idea of altering the size of Mr. Dickens’s new work. . . . Messrs. Cattermole and ‘Phiz’ (Hablot K. Browne) had undertaken the illustrations, and the work proceeded; but it soon became a matter of policy, or rather of necessity, to revive the public interest; and this was done by the resuscitation of Mr. Pickwick and the two Wellers—father and son. Thus helped

## “The Old Curiosity Shop”

forward, the new work began to make its way steadily; and the two principal tales, ‘The Old Curiosity Shop’ and ‘Barnaby Rudge,’ are among the best and most popular of Mr. Dickens’s stories.” Eventually the author thought fit to separate the stories, which were issued in complete form together, and “Master Humphrey’s Clock,” said the author himself, “became one of the lost books of the earth—which, we all know, are far more precious than any that can be read for love or money.”

Several of the characters in “The Old Curiosity Shop” were drawn from real life, and they had their prototypes in the unlucky days, in Dickens’s own early years, of the Marshalsea and the blacking warehouse at Hungerford Stairs. The Marchioness was first suggested by the maid-of-all-work who waited upon the Dickens family in Bayham Street, Camden Town. She originally came from the Chatham workhouse. The Garlands were drawn from the landlord and his family where Dickens resided. Mr. Garland “was a fat, good-natured, kind old gentleman. He was lame, and had a quiet old wife; and he had a very innocent grown-up son, who was lame too.” The poetical Mr. Slum was derived from the ingenious gentleman who wrote the rhyming advertisements in praise of Warren’s blacking. The story was dedicated to

## Dickens and the Drama

Samuel Rogers, the banker-poet, and Dickens said :  
“ It is a great pleasure to me to add that for a beautiful thought in the last chapter but one of ‘The Old Curiosity Shop,’ I am indebted to Mr. Rogers. It is taken from his charming tale ‘Ginevra.’ ”

“ ‘ And long might’st thou have seen  
An old man wandering as *in quest of something*.  
Something he could not find—he knew not what.’ ”

In the first volume of “ Peter Parley’s Penny Library,” edited by Samuel Goodrich, under the pseudonym of Peter Parley, were a number of selections from the novel in the form of dialogues to be recited and given as scenes and small plays. Dickens naturally was greatly incensed at this wholesale piracy and said so, which had the result of giving him considerable satisfaction.

“ The Old Curiosity Shop ” has ever been a favourite with the theatrical adapter, and before the story was finished several versions were seen on the public stage. Not only that, there was actually a “ Master Humphrey’s Clock ” done in just two months after the first number appeared. This was by Frederick Fox Cooper, a notorious annexer of other men’s brains, and was first acted at the Victoria Theatre, May 26th, 1840. It was thus set forth in the bills (the play was printed in Cumberland’s “ British Theatre ”):

# “The Old Curiosity Shop”

## MASTER HUMPHREY’S CLOCK.

A Domestic Drama in Two Acts. Founded on the first story in the work of Charles Dickens.

JOE TODDYHIGH	.. ..	Mr. C. Bender.
MASTER HUMPHREY	( <i>the Deformed</i> )	Mr. Harding.
GILBERT GRAY	( <i>of Grayling, a Cavalier, and a Gay Gallant</i> )	Mr. Hicks.
MASTER HARGREAVE HARTLEY	( <i>the Unknown</i> )	.. .. Mr. Dale.
SIMON TRADELOVE	( <i>the Anti-quary</i> )	.. .. Mr. Burton.
CHRISTOPHER CURIOUS	( <i>the City Apprentice</i> )	.. .. Mr. Manders.
DYKE OF THE FERRY	( <i>a Reprobate and Cutpurse</i> )	.. .. Mr. Courtney.
JASPER	.. ..	Mr. Morton.
MARTIN	.. ..	Mr. Hitchenson.
HUBERT	( <i>Esquire to Gilbert</i> )	.. Mr. McDonald.
ELINOR	( <i>the Child of Mystery</i> )	.. Mrs. Howard.
ALICE	( <i>the Tenant of the Lone House</i> )	.. .. Miss Cooke.

GUARDS, CITY WATCH, ROYSTERERS, CUTPURSES, ETC.

The representative of Gilbert Gray was the celebrated N. T. or “Brayvo Hicks,” beloved alike of the groundlings and the gods. Toddyhigh is a sort of Christopher Sly, and is seen no more after delivering—

## THE PROLOGUE.

*Drop Scene representing Ancient Guildhall. Figures of Gog and Magog. (See the plate in No. I.)*

*Music. Toddyhigh discovered asleep on the ground. Rises and looks round—rubbing his eyes, etc.*

## Dickens and the Drama

Here's a fuss, indeed ! bar rigmarole,  
A feast of reason and a flow of soul.

*(Clock strikes one.)*

In the good days of early rhyme and fun,  
When fearing bogies, boys have cut and run,  
I do remember me, a nursery tale  
So very marvellous—'twas very like a whale.  
'Tis said when they (*points to figures*) should hear it strike  
the hour

They'd take a chop in some snug looking bower ;  
A clock has struck, and now they ask the way  
Of Master Humphrey, to the Victoria play.  
They heard him strike—his fame they now behold ;  
And as they crossed the bridge they there were *toll'd*.  
Arrived—the Lessee he began to stare,  
And wondered why they left behind—the Mayor.  
In haste they entered—the Lessee led the way—  
They were so high, they could not stoop to pay ;  
And like the nobs—I speak to their disgrace—  
They came so late, they could not find the place.  
And now, one word about our play to-night,  
The why and wherefore that has made us write,  
'Tis Boz composes with such railroad speed  
He leaves unfinished half of what we read.  
We beg a hearing—perhaps he'll make no quail—  
He gives a head—we furnish forth a tale.  
He the Colossus great—we side by side,  
The pigmy men that 'neath his legs must stride.  
We have no monstrous puff to aid our cause,  
But trust to your good sense for your applause—  
With smiling faces then I see our champions sit,  
The critics of the Gallery, Box and Pit.  
We argue hence, that nightly you will flock—  
If not to Master Humphrey, at least our Clock ;  
For which, fair dames and sirs, we nightly pray,  
For your applause will be—the time of day !

*Exit L. H.*

## “The Old Curiosity Shop”

The first acting version of the “Old Curiosity Shop” itself was by Edward Stirling. This was described on the day bills as “a Burletta in Two Acts; founded on the celebrated, widely circulated, and universally admired papers by Boz.” On the title-page of the printed book, however, it is simply called “a drama in two acts.” The sub-title was “or, One Hour from Humphrey’s Clock.” This piece was done at the Adelphi Theatre, November 9th, 1840.

MASTER HUMPHREY	..	..	Mr. Maynard.
THE GRANDFATHER	..	..	Mr. Thos. Lyon.
KIT..	..	..	Mr. Wilkinson.
LITTLE NELL	..	..	Mrs. Keeley.
FRED TRENT	..	..	Mr. J. F. Saville.
DICK SWIVELLER	..	..	Mr. E. Wright.
QUILP	..	..	Mr. Fredk. Yates.
BRASS	..	..	Mr. Griffin.
TOM CODLIN	..	..	Mr. Paul Bedford.
SHORT TROTTERS	..	..	Mr. Wieland.
BOY	..	..	Master Thomas.
MR. GARLAND	..	..	Mr. Cullenford.
MRS. GARLAND	..	..	Mrs. Pearse.
MRS. QUILP	..	..	Miss Lee.
MRS. SIMMONDS	..	..	Miss O’Neil.
MRS. GEORGE	..	..	Mrs. Gower.
MRS. NOBSCLAW	..	..	Miss Sidney.
MRS. JINWIN	..	..	Mrs. Fosbroke.

On October 4th, 1853, “The Old Curiosity Shop,” dramatised by an unnamed writer, was done by E. T. Smith, at Drury Lane Theatre. It



## Dickens and the Drama

was for one performance only. G. V. Brooke had to appear at Cambridge, and returned for the next night for "Virginius," in which he was starring.

Andrew Halliday once again showed his skill as an adapter, and provided the Olympic Theatre with a very interesting drama in "Nell," November 19th, 1870.

### NELL; OR, THE OLD CURIOSITY SHOP.

GRANDFATHER	..	..	..	Mr. George Belmore.
QUILP	..	..	..	Mr. John Clarke.
DICK SWIVELLER	..	..	..	Mr. David Fisher.
SAMPSON BRASS	..	..	..	Mr. W. Blakeley.
KIT	..	..	..	Mr. George Elliot.
FRED TRENT	..	..	..	Mr. H. St. Maur.
SHORT	..	..	..	Mr. E. W. Garden.
CODLIN	..	..	..	Mr. Butler.
JOWL	..	..	..	Mr. E. Newbound.
TOM SCOTT	..	..	..	Mr. H. Jordan.
NELL	..	..	..	Miss Florence Terry.
MRS. JARLEY	..	..	..	Miss Charlotte Saunders.
SALLY BRASS	..	..	..	Mrs. Poynter.
THE MARCHIONESS	..	..	..	Miss Eliza Johnstone.
MRS. QUILP	..	..	..	Mrs. Joseph Irving.
MRS. JINIWIN	..	..	..	Miss Ewell
MRS. GEORGE	..	..	..	Miss Sutherland.
MRS. SIMMONDS	..	..	..	Miss Ashton.

The Nell, Miss Florence Terry, a charming actress, the youngest sister of Ellen Terry, who died all too soon, was excellent in the title *rôle*.

Mr. Murray Wood, who played the Grandfather and Dick Swiveller, prepared a version for his wife, Miss Virginia Blackwood, at one time a very popular

## “The Old Curiosity Shop”

transpontine actress, which first saw the footlights at the Surrey Theatre, November 23rd, 1872, where she played a round of plays based on the novelist's works. Subsequently, in 1877, she revived the piece, which was christened “Little Nelly,” at the Royal Park Theatre, Camden Town, and also in the same year at the Royal Aquarium Theatre, Westminster. Long associated with Virginia Blackwood was Mr. Harry Cornwall, a very capable comedian, Miss Lilian Adair, Miss Kate Graham, and Miss Jane Rignold. In the eighties Miss Blackwood migrated with her company to Astley's Theatre in the Westminster Bridge Road, where later Lord George Sanger reigned supreme. Charles Rice, who, in 1873-4-5 provided the pantomimes for Covent Garden, also perpetrated a drama on the subject.

In 1873 “Mrs. Jarley's Far-Famed Collection of Waxworks,” by G. B. Bartlett, was presented somewhere in town—but I know not where. Then George Landor gave “The Old Curiosity Shop,” a drama in four acts, at the Theatre Royal, York, May 14th, 1877. In this Miss Katie Logan doubled the parts of the Marchioness and Little Nell. Supporting her were Miss E. Miller, Miss Oliph Webb, and Messrs. Duncan Campbell, Whit Rogerson, C. E. Stevens, T. W. Rogerson, and Jessie St. Clair. In March,

## Dickens and the Drama

1881, Mr. Fred J. Stimson toured the provinces, commencing at Liverpool with "The Old Curiosity Shop," prepared by Joseph Mackay and Horace Lennard. At the Opera Comique, in 1884, another dramatisation was done, of which Charles Dickens the younger wrote: "An adaptation of my own, which was produced at the Opera Comique in January 12th, 1884, was deprived of any merit it may have possessed by the interpolation by the American lady for whom I wrote the piece (she doubled Nell and the Marchioness) of a preposterous act from a ridiculous version by Mr. John Brougham, which she had been accustomed to play in the States." However this may be, it was generally conceded at the time that Lotta (her surname was Crabtree) was the best representative of both characters hitherto seen. She had adequate support, and it was acknowledged on all hands that Mr. Frank Wyatt completely realised the humour of Dick Swiveller.

### THE OLD CURIOSITY SHOP.

THE MARCHIONESS AND NELL	Miss Lotta.
SWIVELLER .. .. .	Mr. Frank Wyatt.
QUILP .. .. .	Mr. Robert Pateman.
BRASS .. .. .	Mr. Howard Russell.
GRANDFATHER .. .. .	Mr. Stanislaus Calhaem.
FRED TRENT .. .. .	Mr. Cecil Rayne.
MR. WITHERDEAN .. .. .	Mr. T. Merridew.
JOWL .. .. .	Mr. Henry.

## “The Old Curiosity Shop”

LIST	..	..	..	..	Mr. James.
SLUM	..	..	..	..	Mr. J. Phipps.
KIT	..	..	..	..	Mr. Charles Coote.
SALLY BRASS	..	..	..	..	Miss Fanny Coleman.
MRS. JARLEY	..	..	..	..	Miss T. Lavis.
MRS. QUILP	..	..	..	..	Miss Bella Howard.

Robert Pateman's Quilp was a “revelation” in realistic acting. The Marchioness and Dick Swiveller are joyous characters such as Dickens delighted to depict, and such as many dramatists have under various disguises interpolated in the lists of *dramatis personæ* of their plays. “An Angel on Earth” was the title chosen by Alfred M. Dalor for his version of “The Old Curiosity Shop,” presented at the Theatre Royal, St. Helen's, February 12th, 1902, and again in the following September, and I believe on tour.

“Little Nell”—dramatised by David James, the clever son of the creator of Perkyn Middlewick, “Inferior Dosset” in “Our Boys”—was produced at the Pier Pavilion, St. Leonards, January 20th, 1902. At the Grand Theatre, February 23rd, 1903, Mr. Oswald Brand gave his view of “The Old Curiosity Shop” in yet another “Little Nell,” in which Mr. Ivan Berlyn made a hit as Quilp: an actor, by the way, who has also done a number of Dickens's characters on the Variety Stage. “The Marchioness,” an operetta by B. W. Findon and Edward Jones was played

## Dickens and the Drama

at His Majesty's Theatre, June 23rd, 1904, on the occasion of the Clement Scott benefit *matinée*. And there are many other adaptations, including one by the present writer, called "Dick Swiveller."

A very pretty ballad describing the death of Little Nell, written by Miss Charlotte Young and composed by George Linley, was an especial favourite with Charles Dickens, to whom the effusion was dedicated. He was very fond indeed of the song, and his eldest daughter had been in the habit of singing it to him constantly since she was quite a child.

They told him, gently, she was dead,  
And spoke of heaven and smiled;  
Then drew him from the lonely room  
Where lay the lovely child.  
'Twas all in vain, he heeded not  
Their pitying looks of sorrow;  
"Hush! hush!" he cried, "she only sleeps;  
She'll wake again to-morrow."

They laid her in her lonely grave,  
Where winds blew high and bleak,  
Though the faintest summer breeze had been  
Too rough to fan her cheek.  
And there the poor old man would watch  
In strange though childish sorrow,  
And whisper to himself the words,  
"She'll come again to-morrow."

One day they missed him long and sought  
Where most he loved to stray;  
They found him dead upon the turf  
Where little Nellie lay.

## “The Old Curiosity Shop”

With tottering steps he'd wandered there,  
Fresh strength and hope to borrow,  
And, e'en in dying, breathed this prayer,  
“Oh, let her come to-morrow.”

After the death of the novelist there was quite an epidemic of Dickens, and the dramas from his works were revived and new ones produced in almost every capital and theatrical town in Great Britain. For instance, “Grandfather’s Little Nell” was a drama done at the Theatre Royal, Bristol, December 3rd, 1870, while two days later “Dick Swiveller,” by Charles Rennell, appeared at the Theatre Royal, Brighton. This was in four acts, and I expect Rennell, who was a clever but very eccentric actor, undertook the part of the versatile Dick. On February 6th, 1871, “The Old Curiosity Shop ; or, the Life and Death of Little Nell,” by W. Sidney, was performed at the Theatre Royal, Norwich. Then on April 8th, at the Bradford Theatre Royal, “Gentle Nelly” was put on, and on the 10th “Quilp ; or, the Wanderings of Little Nell,” at the Prince of Wales’s Theatre, Wolverhampton. This was by T. G. Paulton. “Poor Nell,” by Edward Price, saw the light at the Theatre Royal, Aberdeen, November 18th, 1872. And doubtless there were many patchwork and other plays on the subject prepared. It is wonderful to contemplate the money

## Dickens and the Drama

that must have been made out of Dickens's books from first to last—and the adapters are still busy.

I have myself just upon fifty printed plays based on the novels of the immortal creator of "Pickwick"—and programmes more than I can count.

The very latest edition was by Oswald Brand, produced at the Grand Theatre, Islington, on February 23rd, 1903, to which I have already referred.

### LITTLE NELL.

DANIEL QUILP .. ..	Mr. Ivan Berlyn.
THE GRANDFATHER .. ..	Mr. Tom Paulton.
SAMSON BRASS .. ..	Mr. Frank Collins.
RICHARD SWIVELLER .. ..	Mr. Albert Harding.
THE SINGLE GENTLEMAN .. ..	Mr. C. A. Clark.
CODLIN .. ....	Mr. E. C. Linden.
SHORT .. ..	Mr. Hugh Webb.
GRINDER .. ..	Mr. T. Morton.
FRED TRENT .. ..	Mr. George Wareham.
GEORGE .. ..	Mr. Sidney Kearns.
KIT .. ..	Master Garnet Vayne.
QUILP'S BOY .. ..	Miss Aimee Vivash.
BILLY .. ..	Master John Sedger.
MAG .. ..	Miss Millie Searle.
NELL .. ..	Miss Isla Garnet-Vayne.
SALLY BRASS .. ..	Mrs. H. Gascoigne.
MRS. QUILP .. ..	Miss W nnie Ryan.
MRS. JARLEY .. ..	Miss Nellie Gilmore.
MRS. JINTWIN .. ..	Miss Gwinnie Vayne.
THE MARCHIONESS .. ..	Miss Fay Garnet-Vayne.
MRS. GEORGE .. ..	Miss Nellie Clarence.
A VISITOR .. ..	Miss Winifred Wood.
MR. WITHERDEN .. ..	Mr. Surrey.

## “The Old Curiosity Shop”

The great success of this production was the life-like Quilp of Mr. Ivan Berlyn. On April 20th the performances were repeated at the Crown, Peckham.

Much controversy has arisen from time to time over the right locale of “The Old Curiosity Shop,” and though Dickens himself never definitely gave any direct information on the subject, tradition dies hard. As an interesting statement, I quote the following from the *Daily Telegraph* of May 16th, 1908 :—

“If this is not the ‘Old Curiosity Shop,’ where is it? This was a question put by Mr. William Hurst Flint, the auctioneer, in offering at the Mart yesterday the quaint tenement in Portsmouth Street, Lincoln’s Inn Fields, which bears on its plaster front the declaration that it was ‘immortalised by Dickens.’ Nobody answered the challenge, for in truth no one knows exactly what spot Dickens had in his mind’s eye when, at Bath, he conceived the story of Little Nell and her grandfather. Mr. Flint himself hesitated to offer a definite opinion. ‘According to many well-known authorities—I won’t go further than that—this is the building.’ But, whatever the real facts, the auctioneer maintained that sentiment gave the property a practical value. In the summer, he remarked, as people passed up and



## Dickens and the Drama

down Portsmouth Street, they would see lines of chars-à-bancs laden with Americans. 'They come in hundreds, stand and stare at this beautiful old building, go in and purchase picture postcards and other printed matter, and when they get home say to their friends, 'Here is the Old Curiosity Shop of which you have read.'

"For a few moments Mr. Flint carried the company back to the days when lawyers were unknown in Lincoln's Inn Fields. He pictured the neighbourhood as dotted with the houses of the nobility, and the holders of aristocratic names as smoking their cigars in the cool of the evening as the cattle were driven off the mead, in the direction of a not too adjacent homestead. In all this, of course, there was a certain appropriateness, for there are those who say that the 'Old Curiosity Shop' was once nothing more nor less than a part of the dairy of the engaging Duchess of Portsmouth. Coming back to the particulars, the auctioneer spoke of the site as to-day being of value by reason of its nearness to the Law Courts, not to mention the Bankruptcy Court, and as having gained further importance owing to the opening of Kingsway."

The property was eventually sold privately, but it did not fetch a fancy price.

Mr. Charles W. Dickens, the grandson of the

## “The Old Curiosity Shop”

famous novelist, declares that the Portsmouth Street shop Lincoln's Inn Fields was not the place at all, but one simply invented by Dickens. In the novel the shop is described as “a place which was one of those receptacles for old and curious things which seem to crouch in odd corners of this town, and to hide their musty treasures from the public eye in jealousy and distrust. There were suits of mail standing like ghosts in armour here and there, fantastic carvings brought from monkish cloisters, rusty weapons of various kinds, distorted figures in china and wood, and iron, and ivory ; tapestry and strange furniture that might have been designed in dreams.”

My own opinion is that Dickens did have some particular shop in his mind when he wrote the above description. Perhaps the shop that stood at the corner of Green Street, Leicester Square, where now stands the Garrick Restaurant, inspired him with the idea. I remembered the place well and the old fellow who kept it. In fact, it suggested an article to me which I wrote for the *Evening Standard* some years ago called “Curious Shops.” In the book it will be recollected that Dickens tells how Kit would take his children to the street where his mistress had lived, but “new improvements had altered it so much, it was not

## Dickens and the Drama

like the same. The old house had been long ago pulled down, and a fine broad road was in its place. . . . But he soon became uncertain of the spot, and could only say it was thereabouts, he thought, and that these alterations were confusing."

The statement that No. 14, Portsmouth Street, was the "Old Curiosity Shop"—there were two claimants, by the way, the other being on the opposite side of the thoroughfare, and both were duly labelled—for years attracted visitors from all parts of the world, and particularly from America, who have rapturously paid fancy sums to go over the premises and to be handed souvenirs of Little Nell. No assurance that the premises were not what they were said to be was of any consequence. "Well," they would say, "we have seen the place, and that's something."

The old premises anyhow had been many things in their time. An old fellow named Tesseyman, "Thackeray's bookbinder," once occupied them as a kind of curiosity shop, and dealt in all sorts of rubbish. He was well-known to Thackeray, Dickens, Douglas Jerrold, and other writers, who used to stop and gossip with him. He had strange and odd names for all these people, which were more pithy than polite. It may be that the legend

## “The Old Curiosity Shop”

as to No. 14 being the real “Old Curiosity Shop” originated in Tesseyman’s occupancy of the place. In a print of the period by Sargent, “Ye Old Curiosity Shop” certainly appears on the front of the house, but in another print of the same date it is absent. Since Tesseyman’s time the premises as they stood in 1908 had been occupied as a ragshop, a furniture dealer’s, and, last of all, as a waste-paper store. Another scrap of information used to be circulated to the effect that a waggish sign-writer who had to write up a name over the fascia suggested that “The Old Curiosity Shop, immortalised by Dickens,” should be written up over the front of the premises. This was agreed to, and this inventive piece of information remained to cause excitement and confusion.

Although the old gentleman who kept the curio shop at Green Street—his name was Samuels—was acquainted with Charles Dickens, who in all probability was an occasional customer, he could never throw any reliable light on the point as to whether his place was, or was not, the “Old Curiosity Shop” referred to by Dickens. The author of “David Copperfield” must have made many purchases at many curiosity shops in his time—London has ever been full of them—but reading the description of the journey of the old

## Dickens and the Drama

Grandfather and Little Nell in chapter fifteen of the novel, I am strongly of opinion that it was somewhere off where the Whitechapel Road opens wide into the far country. Anyhow, neither the Green Street nor the Portsmouth Street houses have any claim to our consideration. It was doubtless a composite concoction of the writer's fancy founded on fleeting facts.

But I think Mr. Arthur S. Hearn settled the whole matter in the "Dickensian." He says: "A strong argument in an article appeared in the *Echo* during December, 1883, wherein the writer, Mr. Charles Tesseyman, says, 'My brother, who occupied No. 14, Portsmouth Street, between 1868 and 1877, the year of his decease, had the words "The Old Curiosity Shop," placed over the front for purely business purposes, as likely to attract custom to his shop. Before 1868 no suggestion had ever been made that the place was the veritable Old Curiosity Shop immortalised by Dickens.'"

This should settle the question once for all; and, if there is any desire to preserve any building absolutely associated with the name of the novelist, there is the house in Doughty Street, Bloomsbury, where he resided so long and did so much of his work.

## CHAPTER X

### "BARNABY RUDGE"

STRANGE to say references to the published bibliographies of the dramatisations of the books by Charles Dickens do not afford much reliable information. Not one that I have consulted is in any wise complete, and particularly is this evident in regard to "Barnaby Rudge," a story that from the very beginning, with the Lord George Gordon riots as a grand background, is, apart from "A Tale of Two Cities," the most dramatic of all the master's conceptions. Dickens tells us, in the Preface to "Barnaby Rudge," that as no proper account of the Gordon Riots had been introduced into any work of fiction he chose the subject as the basis of "Barnaby Rudge." All the outrages described are founded upon fact, and upon the information gathered from works and newspapers of the period in which the story is laid. Dolly Varden, Gabriel Varden, Barnaby, Joe Willet and Simon Tappertit

## Dickens and the Drama

are all such natural characters that they are bound to appeal to us all. That rascal "Grip," the raven, a compound of several ravens that Dickens himself possessed, has long been historical like so many other rogues—of the human kind, which reminds me that the following letter may find a place here. It has reference to "Grip" and appeared in the *Daily Telegraph* :—

"SIR,

"I have noticed lately that mention is made of Dickens's favourite raven, 'Grip,' being the property of the late Sir Henry Irving. This statement is incorrect. 'Grip' was purchased at Christie, Manson, and Wood's rooms in 1870 by my husband, the late Lord Mayor Nottage. I have this raven now in its original case in my library, and it still has many of the old 'cuttings' from the newspapers of the day pasted on the back, though old and brown with age. I will merely quote one out of the number I have: 'Grip, of "Barnaby Rudge," was made a combat à outrance between Mr. Halliday and Mr. George Nottage. The bidding between these two gentlemen became thrillingly exciting. Mr. Halliday's last bid was £125, but on Mr. Nottage bidding 125 guineas, thus heading

## “Barnaby Rudge”

his opponent by 30s., the hammer fell, and he became the possessor of the raven.’

“Yours truly,

“M. C. NOTTAGE.

“Sidmouth House, 35, Collingham  
Road, South Kensington,  
Nov. 24, 1906.”

Mr. Alfred Tennyson Dickens, who only arrived in England at the end of September, 1910, after an absence in Australia of forty-five years, has come to travel through the land of his birth. He is giving a series of addresses, entitled, “My Father’s Life and Work.”

Incidentally he gave the following information. “The original of the raven in ‘Barnaby Rudge,’” he said, “was one we kept at Tavistock House, not its successor which died at Gads Hill. The former bird, I remember, was an intelligent, though at the same time troublesome creature. He was an excellent linguist, and one of his favourite pastimes was to call up the coachman at the most inconvenient hours of the night. ‘Tupping,’ it would call, ‘master wants the horses—master wants the carriage.’ Tupping used to think the summons came from one of the maids, and one night he actually got the horses into the carriage before discovering the deception.”

The first drama on the subject was prepared by Charles Selby and Charles Melville, and produced



## Dickens and the Drama

as "Barnaby Rudge" at the English Opera House (the Lyceum Theatre), June 28th, 1841.

MR. GEOFFRY HAREDALE ( <i>An English gentleman</i> )	.. .. .	Mr. Robson.
MR. CHESTER ( <i>an old man of the world</i> )	..	Mr. Selby.
EDWARD CHESTER ( <i>his son</i> )	.. ..	Mr. Green.
PEAKER ( <i>valet to Mr. Chester</i> )	.. ..	Mr. Moore.
JOHN WILLET ( <i>Landlord of "The Maypole."</i> )	.. .. .	Mr. Turnour.
JOE WILLET ( <i>his son</i> )	.. .. .	Mr. T. Green.
SOLOMON DAISY ( <i>a sexton</i> )	.. ..	Mr. Thompson.
PHIL PARKES ( <i>an exciseman</i> )	.. ..	Mr. King.
TOM COBB ( <i>a postman</i> )	.. ..	Mr. Flemming.
GABRIEL VARDEN ( <i>a locksmith</i> )	.. ..	Mr. Granby.
BLACK HUGH ( <i>an ostler</i> )	.. ..	Mr. S. Smith.
SIMON TAPPERTIT ( <i>an apprentice</i> )	.. ..	Mr. Searle.
BARNABY RUDGE	.. .. .	Miss Fortescue.
THE STRANGER	.. .. .	Mr. Salter.
MRS. VARDEN	.. .. .	Mrs. Granby.
MIGGS ( <i>her maid and confidante</i> )	.. ..	Mrs. Harris.
DOLLY VARDEN	.. .. .	Miss Fitzjames.
MISS HAREDALE	.. .. .	Miss Granby.
MRS. RUDGE	.. .. .	Mrs. Selby.

The Mr. Robson named was not the great little Robson—and yet, I have often wondered, because there was a Robson at St. James's Theatre in 1839, and it was in this year that the Robson began to distinguish himself at the Grecian. There is no authentic life of Frederick Robson in existence, although many scribes have tried, including John Hollingshead, and E. L. Blanchard, to patch his eccentric wanderings together. Anyhow 1841 was

## “Barnaby Rudge”

about the Robson's time, of uncertain dates in his meteoric flights between London and Dublin, and it seems odd that there should have been two Robsons about just then. This Mr. Robson, anyhow, took the part of Geoffrey Haredale in the Lyceum production. By the way, a well-known comedian, Mat Robson, did not make his London appearance until October 14th, 1867, when he played “Buffles” in the “Two Puddifoots,” at the Olympic Theatre. He died December 22nd, 1899. In the “Era Almanack” for 1871, Frederick Robson's West End début is given as April 17th, 1865, in “Ulysses,” at the St. James's Theatre. That, of course, is sheer nonsense. Robson left the Grecian Saloon and “Bravo Rouse” in 1849. Went to Dublin for a short season and made his first West End bow at the Olympic Theatre under the elder Farren in 1853. And then began his magnetic but brief career. He remained at the Olympic until 1864, the year of his death.

Miss Fortescue, who later became Lady Gardner, undertook the title *rôle*, and pleased Charles Dickens very much indeed. Macready was greatly impressed by Miss Fortescue's Barnaby, and said of the performance in his Diary, under date, July 7th, 1841, “I went to the English Opera House, and saw a piece on ‘Barnaby Rudge,’ Miss Fortescue acting the part with great vivacity and power.”

## Dickens and the Drama

In the following December another dramatisation was given at the Adelphi under Frederick Yates's management from Edward Stirling's preparation; and, of course, at the Strand, notwithstanding Moncrieff's marvellous manifesto, one by his manipulation and direction in the previous August. Mr. Thomas Higgin had also been busy for the Victoria, and although I can find no definite trace, George Almar for the Surrey—though they are referred to, without exact dates, by various writers.

To show to what subterfuges and excuses the pirates of times gone by would descend, it is provident to quote the following: "Some London publisher about this time, having issued imitations of Dickens's former works and titles, Thomas Hood, writing to the *Athenæum*, June, 1842, on 'Copyright and Copywrong,' speaks of a conversation he had with a bookseller on a spurious "Master Humphrey's Clock" (in which both the "Old Curiosity Shop" and "Barnaby Rudge" first appeared). "Sir," said the bookseller, "if you had observed the name, it is *Bos*, not *Boz*—s, sir, is not z; and, besides, it would have been no piracy, sir, even with the z, because 'Master Humphrey's Clock,' you see, sir, was not published by Boz, but by Charles Dickens."

At the Adelphi Theatre, December 20th, 1841, the cast of "Barnaby Rudge" was as follows:—

## “Barnaby Rudge”

BARNABY RUDGE	..	..	Miss Chaplin.
JOHN WILLET	..	..	Mr. Wilkinson.
GABRIEL VARDEN	..	..	Mr. Paul Bedford.
MAYPOLE HUGH	..	..	Mr. O. Smith.
SIMON TAPPERTIT	..	..	Mr. Edward Wright.

Sir John Chester and Miggs were at first doubled by Frederick Yates, but after a few weeks he resigned Miggs to Miss Chester and Sir John Chester to Mr. Cullenford. Yates, of course, was the lessee and manager of the theatre. Mrs. Yates was the Dolly Varden. *The Era* said of this production: “This is, we believe, the fourth dramatic version, but this adapter had the advantage of referring to the completed work. The present adaptation is wanting in consecutiveness.” The piece was much applauded during its progress, and continued in the bill for some time.

On November 12th, 1866, another “Barnaby Rudge” was put on at the Princess’s Theatre by Messrs. H. Vining and Watts Phillips, as a four-act drama.

### BARNABY RUDGE.

BARNABY RUDGE	..	..	Miss Katharine Rogers.
MAYPOLE HUGH	..	..	Mr. Charles Horsman.
SIMON TAPPERTIT	..	..	Mr. Stanislaus Calhaem.
JOE WILLET	..	..	Mr. C. H. Fenton.
SIR JOHN CHESTER	..	..	Mr. J. G. Shore.
MR. HAREDALE	..	..	Mr. Henry Forrester.
THE STRANGER	..	..	Mr. Frederick Villiers.
GABRIEL VARDEN	..	..	Mr. E. Shepherd.
JOHN WILLET	..	..	Mr. H. Mellon.
TOM COBB	..	..	Mr. W. R. Robins.

## Dickens and the Drama

PARKES	..	..	..	Mr. R. Chapman.
MRS. VARDEN	..	..	..	Mrs. Horsman.
MIGGS	...	..	..	Mrs. John Wood.
MRS. RUDGE	..	..	..	Mrs. H. Vining.
DOLLY VARDEN		..	..	Miss A. Thomson.

Mrs. John Wood was a daughter of Henry Vining, and Clement Scott says, speaking of the piece, which had a terrible slating in the *Times*, while dreadful things were said of Mrs. Wood, "This was most probably produced to introduce Mrs. John Wood to the London Stage. She was for some time a member of the Theatre Royal, Manchester, when she married John Wood, the comedian, and accompanied him to America in 1854. Made her *début* there in September, at the New Boston Theatre. Five years later she was manageress of the American Theatre, San Francisco, and returning to New York, became an immense favourite." Of the Princess's Theatre a newspaper critic, speaking of Mrs. Wood's performance, observed: "If any one expected the subdued cough, the spasmodic start, and the constant rubbing and tweaking of the nose to which Miss Miggs had recourse in the frequent moments of her vexation, would have been reproduced by Mrs. John Wood in illustration of the novelist's description, they must have overlooked the peculiarities of that liberty-loving country from which the *débutante* has just come after a sojourn of some

## “Barnaby Rudge”

twelve years. . . . The Miss Miggs who appeared last evening on the stage of the Princess's is a 'Yankee girl' of the familiar down East pattern, who sings one of the high-toned ditties characteristic of her class, mixes up grotesque pantomime extravagances with nasal inflections and angular attitudes, and thinks nothing of sprawling on tables and tumbling into tubs." The piece was a failure, and then George Honey played the part, which ran until January. If one comes to think of it, Miss Miggs might have been a restrained hoyden—especially after her remarks to Mrs. Varden, when she desires to be reinstated, when the Gordon rioters had been dispersed.

“Barnaby Rudge” was licensed for the East Opera House, June 30th, 1841. This was called a musical entertainment. The possibilities of “Barnaby Rudge” for operatic treatment have not been overlooked, but up to the present no piece of any pretensions has taken the public fancy, though several have been done, one, some years ago, at the Opera Comique, which did not catch on.

Another dramatisation was :

BARNABY RUDGE;

or THE MURDER AT THE WARREN.

*A Drama in Three Acts, adapted from Dickens' celebrated work, by Thomas Higgin.*

MR. GEOFFREY HAREDALE    ..    Mr. Fitzroy.

MR. CHESTER    ..    ..    Mr. Higgin.

## Dickens and the Drama

EDWARD CHESTER	..	..	Mr. W. H. Sterling.
THE STRANGER	..	..	Mr. Chamberlain.
BARNABY RUDGE	..	..	Mrs. Traylett
GABRIEL VARDEN	..	..	Mr. Tilbury.
SIMON TAPPERTTT	..	..	Mr. W. H. Widdicomb.
JOHN WILLET	..	..	Mr. Gordon.
JOE WILLET	..	..	Mr. Davis
MAYPOLE HUGH	..	..	Mr. Craven.
SOLOMON DAISY	..	..	Mr. Rogers.
SHORT TOM COBB	..	..	Mr. Kimber.
LONG PHIL PARKS	..	..	Mr. Richardson.
MRS. RUDGE	..	..	Mrs. Gordon.
EMMA HAREDALE	..	..	Miss Brown.
MRS. VARDEN	..	..	Mrs. Higgie.
MIGGS	..	..	Miss Plunkett.
DOLLY VARDEN	..	..	Mrs. R. M. Raymond.
PEAKER	..	..	Mr. Doughty.
VILLAGERS : Misses Gordon, Cuthbert, Bloomfield, etc.			

I have not been able to discover when or where this play was produced. Thomas Hailes Lacy was the owner of the copyright, and there is the British Museum date stamp, June 5th, 1856. From the names in the cast, however, I think it must have been done at the old Strand Theatre or the Surrey.

At the Surrey Theatre, October 5th, 1872, a version called "Dolly Varden," by G. Murray Wood, was performed for the first time in London.

EDWARD CHESTER	..	..	Mr. H. T. Tempest.
GABRIEL VARDEN	..	..	Mr. S. Reed.
SIR JOHN CHESTER	..	..	Mr. Henry Lee.
GEOFFREY HAREDALE	..	..	Mr. Charles Cecil.
SOLOMON DAISY	..	..	Mr. H. Jaye.
JOHN WILLET	..	..	Mr. W. Stacey.



SCENE FROM "BARNABY RUDGE: OR THE MURDER AT THE WARREN," BY THOMAS HIGGIE.

[To face p. 168.]





## “Barnaby Rudge”

JOE WILLET	..	..	..	Mr. Clarke Nicholson.
SIMON TAPPERTIT	..	..	..	Mr. Harry Cornwall.
THE STRANGER	..	..	..	Mr. W. F. Gresham.
DOLLY VARDEN and MISS MIGGS				Miss Virginia Blackwood.
MRS. VARDEN	..	..	..	Mrs. A. H. Lacey.
MRS. RUDGE	..	..	..	Miss Blanche Marlborough.
EMMA HAREDALE	..	..	..	Miss Eversfield.
BARNABY RUDGE	..	..	..	Miss Rachel Mellor.

Miss Blackwood later took her company—she was lessee and directress of the Surrey Theatre from October, 1872, until June, 1873—with various plays from Dickens by her husband, G. Murray Wood, including “The Old Curiosity Shop” (“Little Nelly”) and “Little Em’ly” to the Park Theatre, Camden Town, to Astley’s and the Royal Aquarium Theatre, Westminster, after much touring, in 1876, 1877, 1878, and 1880.

The “Dolly Varden,” at the Surrey, by G. Murray Wood, was first tried at Bradford in April, 1872, by the way, and was done again at Astley’s April 30th, 1878. The cast at the latter house is worth quoting, as it contains the names of many well-known players.

MR. CHESTER	<i>(a Gentleman past the prime of life, a bit of a beau, a perfect man of the world)</i>			Mr. H. Such Granville.
EDWARD CHESTER	<i>(a gallant young gentleman, his son, in love with Emma Haredale)</i>			Mr. F. Bathurst.
MR. GEOFFREY HAREDALE	<i>(owner of The Warren)</i>			Mr. Edward Chamberlaine.

## Dickens and the Drama

THE STRANGER .. ..	Mr. R. H. Lingham.
BARNABY RUDGE ( <i>an idiot boy</i> )	Miss Emilie Blackwood.
GABRIEL VARDEN ( <i>the locksmith of Clerkenwell, noted for good living, good sleeping, good humour, and good health</i> ) ..	Mr. S. Reid.
SIMON TAPPERTIT ( <i>the locksmith's 'prentice, a youth with a large body and a small soul</i> ) ..	Mr. H. Cornwall.
JOHN WILLET ( <i>mine host of the "Maypole"—slow and sure</i> )	Mr. H. Williams.
JOE WILLET ( <i>his son, a lad of promise, with a sneaking-affection for Dolly Varden</i> )	Mr. Frank Cates.
MAYPOLE HUGH ( <i>a bit of a gipsy and a bit of a poacher, ostler to Joe Willet</i> ) .. ..	Mr. J. W. Robertson.
SOLOMON DAISY ( <i>Parish Clerk and Bellringer of Chigwell</i> )	Mr. J. B. Johnstone.
TOM COBB .. ..	Mr. H. Crichton.
THE WARDER .. ..	Mr. P. Anstead.
MRS. RUDGE ( <i>a widow, mother of Barnaby</i> ) .. ..	Miss Blanche Marlborough.
EMMA HAREDALE ( <i>in love with Edward Chester</i> ) .. ..	Miss E. Pyne.
MRS. VARDEN ( <i>plump and buxom—the grey mare and the better horse</i> ) .. ..	Miss Fanny Wright.
MIGGS ( <i>her Maid, shrewish, with great affection for herself, and a great contempt for the men fellows</i> ) .. ..	Miss Virginia Blackwood.
DOLLY VARDEN ( <i>the locksmith's daughter</i> ) .. ..	Miss Virginia Blackwood

Miss Blackwood was fond of "doubling" in

## “Barnaby Rudge”

Dickens, and the only piece of his that she played without doing so that I can recollect was “The Message from the Sea,” in which she contented herself with Mog.

At the Marylebone Theatre, November 4th, 1876, a new version of “Barnaby Rudge” was done, and as Mr. Joseph Arnold Cave was the proprietor of the theatre at that time, and the author of several popular plays, including “The Old Toll House,” it is just possible that he had a hand in the construction of it.

A comedy opera entitled “Dolly Varden; or, the Riots of '80,” in two acts, written and composed by E. Cypson, was produced at the Brighton Aquarium, November 4th, 1889. Mr. Walter Dexter, who is an ardent Dickensian, and who has more than once dramatised Dickens's novels, tried his hand very successfully on “Barnaby Rudge,” with the result that “Dolly Varden,” a comedy in three acts, was presented at the King's Theatre, Hammersmith, on December 16th, 1907, and other suburban theatres during the week. The piece was well done, and as it is quite new, it will doubtless be heard of again.

By the way, there was a comic opera from America presented at the Avenue Theatre on October 1st, 1903, chiefly remarkable for the clever

## Dickens and the Drama

acting, singing and dancing of Miss Mabelle Gilman. It was called "Dolly Varden," which was a libel on Dickens's creation, as it had nothing to do with "Barnaby Rudge" at all, and was simply an exceedingly bad (musical) version of Wycherley's old comedy "The Country Girl." So that may at once go by the board.

Mr. Charles Dillon, the one-time celebrated actor, provided a "Barnaby Rudge" for the Olympic Theatre, with himself in the title *rôle*, according to "Oxberry's Budget of Plays," published 1844. Apparently the piece was also done at the Queen's Theatre, Tottenham Street, about the same time, but I have not been able to discover the year of production. The only other names recognisable in the two casts are H. Widdicomb, Wilkins, Manders, and Harwood; Mrs. Campbell, Mrs. J. Parry, and Miss Wrightson. "Charles Dillon, Comedian," is credited with three other plays in the same volume, but the stage dates are absent, and I have searched authorities in vain.

## CHAPTER XI

### “MARTIN CHUZZLEWIT”

ACCORDING to Dickens himself the real origin of the novel “Martin Chuzzlewit” was the character of Pecksniff, which he had seen much of in many forms—the absolute and slimy humbug. This is how the author succinctly put it: “My real object was to show how selfishness propagates itself; and to what a grim giant it may grow from small beginnings.” The Betsey Prig and Sarah Gamp creatures really were in existence not only in the days when “Martin Chuzzlewit” was challenging criticism on both sides of the Atlantic, but until quite recent years. And perhaps, here and there, in country villages, even now. Who knows? I have met many of them. The book itself was dedicated to Miss Burdett Coutts—afterwards created the Baroness Burdett Coutts, one of the most generous and gracious women that ever lived.

“To Miss Burdett Coutts, This Tale is Dedicated with the True and Earnest Regard of the Author.”

## Dickens and the Drama

At first the work was a comparative failure, but afterwards it "picked up" and became a favourite. Mrs. Gamp was absolutely drawn from life—from nurses who in those days—when the trained nurse was unknown—attended both rich and poor, and came from the same miserable, irresponsible class, born of ignorance and neglect.

With the production of "Martin Chuzzlewit," Dickens, by an arrangement with Messrs. Harper Brothers, was enabled to forestall the American pirates, and through some understanding with various theatrical managers, to prevent, except in the minor houses, his stories from being unduly tampered with. In 1844 there were four productions of "Martin Chuzzlewit" at the following theatres: the Lyceum, July 8, by Edward Stirling, of which more presently; at the Strand, July 15; at the Victoria, same date; at the Queen's, July 29. This Queen's was known for long as the Dusthole, and upon its site many playhouses phoenixized themselves, the last and most glorious of all being the Prince of Wales's, Tottenham Street, Tottenham Court Road, where Sir Squire and Lady Bancroft made their fame and fortune, and that of T. W. Robertson the dramatist as well. The handsome Scala now stands on the site. Thomas Higgin and Thomas Hailes Lacy, sometime actor, author,

## “Martin Chuzzlewit”

and publisher, as we have already seen, appear, according to the play issued by the latter, to have been the propagators of the piece done at the three theatres named after the Lyceum. To be candid, it looks as though somebody had got hold of the day bills and shot them into the printed play, “just for the fun of the thing,” for they by no means “speak by the card.” Let me explain: In the book published by Thomas Hailes Lacy—“Martin Chuzzlewit; or, His Wills and His Ways, and What He Did and What He Didn’t,” four casts are given:—Lyceum (which is incorrect, and the play is quite different from Stirling’s), Strand, Victoria, Queen’s. In fact, the whole thing is a grotesque muddle. Thomas Higgin died March 24th, 1893, at the age of 85.

At the Lyceum the cast was very strong in names which must be quite familiar, even in these days. I give a copy of the programme:—

### MARTIN CHUZZLEWIT.

*A Drama in Three Acts, adapted from C. Dickens, Esq.,  
celebrated work by Edward Stirling, Esq.*

*First produced at the Lyceum Theatre, July 8th, 1844.*

OLD MARTIN CHUZZLEWIT	..	Mr. R. Younge.
YOUNG MARTIN CHUZZLEWIT	..	Mr. F. Vining.
MR. JONAS CHUZZLEWIT	..	Mr. Emery.
MR. PECKSNIFF .. ..	..	Mr. F. Matthews.
MR. MONTAGUE TIGG ..	..	Mr. A. Wigan.



## Dickens and the Drama

TOM PINCH	..	..	..	Mr. Meadows.
LEWSOME	..	..	..	Mr. Staunton.
JOHN WESTLOCK	..	..	..	Mr. Kinloch.
MARK TAPLEY	..	..	..	Mr. Sanders.
MR. NADGET	..	..	..	Mr. Turner.
MR. JENKINS	..	..	..	Mr. Yarnold.
MR. MOBBLE	..	..	..	Mr. Clifton.
MR. GANDER	..	..	..	Mr. Freeborn.
MR. WILSON	..	..	..	Mr. King.
MASTER BAILEY	..	..	..	Mrs. Keeley.
BULLAMY	..	..	..	Mr. Andrews.
MARY GRAHAM	..	..	..	Miss Fortescue.
MERCY	..	..	..	Miss Woolgar.
CHARITY	..	..	..	Mrs. A. Wigan.
RUTH PINCH	..	..	..	Miss Groves.
MRS. LUPIN	..	..	..	Mrs. Usher.
MRS. TODGERS	..	..	..	Mrs. Woolidge.
BETSEY PRIGG ( <i>sic</i> )	..	..	..	Mr. J. W. Collier.
MRS. SAIREY GAMP	..	..	..	Mr. Keeley.
MRS. HARRIS ( <i>her friend</i> )—a <i>fiction</i>	..	..	..	by Nobody.
PASSENGERS, BILL-STICKERS, NEWSVENDORS, PORTERS, CABMEN, WATERMEN—by Everybody and Everything.				

Betsey Prig and Sairey Gamp were, as will be seen, acted by men. Keeley made his character very droll and amusing.

At the Victoria, Messrs. J. Dale, Osbaldiston, Maynard, Seaman, and J. Vining; Miss Vincent, Mrs. Garrick, Mrs. G. Lee, Miss Hamilton, and Mr. J. Herbert as Mrs. Gamp played. I give the Strand cast later. Charles Webb did a play at this time, the production of which I have not satisfactorily traced.

## “Martin Chuzzlewit”

However, I can furnish the Queen's Theatre cast :

### MARTIN CHUZZLEWIT.

PECKSNIFF	..	..	..	Mr. Royer.
ANTONY	..	..	..	Mr. Johnson.
JONAS	..	..	..	Mr. C. Williams.
MARTIN CHUZZLEWIT	..	..	..	Mr. Norton.
TOM PINCH	..	..	..	Mr. J. Reynolds.
MARK TAPLEY	..	..	..	Mr. Gray.
MONTAGU TIGG	..	..	..	Mr. J. Parry.
CHUFFEY	..	..	..	Mr. Edwards.
BAILEY, JUNR.	..	..	..	Miss Wrighten.
MRS. GAMP	..	..	..	Mr. Manders.
MARY GRAHAM	..	..	..	Miss Stoker.
CHARITY	..	..	..	Miss Gough.
MERCY	..	..	..	Miss Rogers.
MRS. LUPIN	..	..	..	Mrs. Manders.

From *Sairey Gamp*, it may be mentioned here, we get one of our names for the homely “brolly,” which in France is known as a Robinson on account of Crusoe's gamp of that family.

To resume. Charles Dickens superintended at least one rehearsal of the Lyceum production, and he wrote to Keeley on June 24th, 1844 :—

“I cannot, consistently with the opinion I hold and always have held in reference to the principle of adapting novels for the stage, give you a prologue to *Chuzzlewit*. But, believe me to be quite sincere in saying that if I felt I could reasonably do such a thing for any one, I could do it for you.

## Dickens and the Drama

"I start for Italy on Monday, but if you have the piece on the stage, and rehearse on Friday, I will gladly come down at any time you may appoint on that morning, and go through it with you all. . . . I presume Mrs. Keeley will do Ruth Pinch. If so, I feel sure about her, and of your Mrs. Gamp I am certain, but a queer sensation begins in my legs, and comes up to my forehead when I think of Tom Pinch."

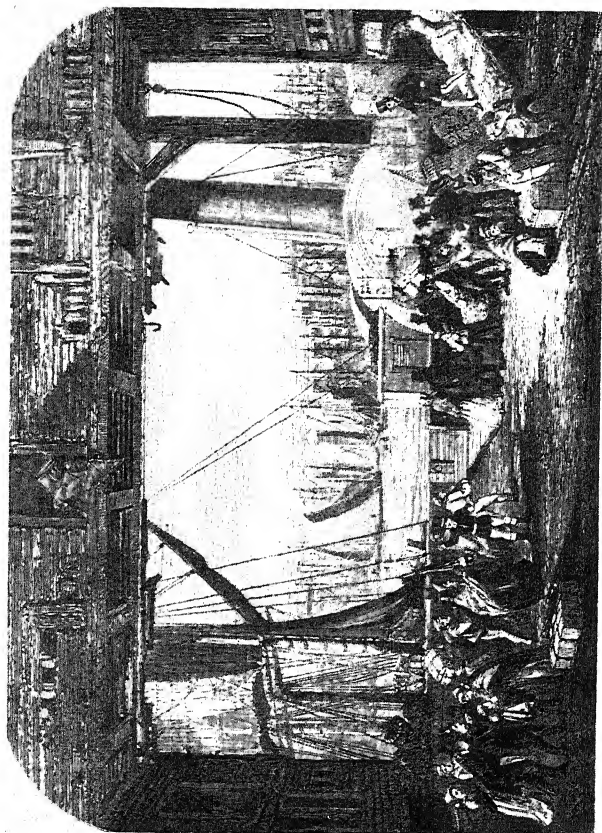
As it happened, Miss Groves played Ruth Pinch very well, but neither she nor Tom, which was acted by the capable Mr. Drinkwater Meadows, was made so important in the stage production as evidently Dickens had anticipated.

A short piece was "Mrs. Sarah Gamp's Tea and Turn Out," a Bozzian sketch in one act by B. Webster, Esq.

*First performed at the Theatre Royal, Adelphi, on Monday,  
October 26th, 1846.*

MR. MAGNUS MUFF	..	..	Mr. Cullenford.
CHARLEY MUFF	..	..	Mr. Worrell.
PATRICK MORIARTY	..	..	Mr. Redmond Ryan.
MRS. SARAH GAMP	..	..	Mr. Wright.
MRS. BETSEY PRIG	..	..	Mr. Munyard.
SELINA GAMP	..	..	Miss Ellen Chaplin.
MRS. MORIARTY	..	..	Miss M. Taylor.

At the Olympic Theatre on March 2nd, 1868,  
"Martin Chuzzlewit: A Drama," by Horace Wigan,



SCENE FROM "MARTIN CHUZZLEWIT," AT THE OLYMPIC THEATRE, 1868.

[To face p. 178.



## “Martin Chuzzlewit”

was put on, with the undermentioned dramatis personæ :

### MARTIN CHUZZLEWIT.

MARTIN CHUZZLEWIT	..	..	Mr. H. Vaughan.
ANTONY	..	..	Mr. John Maclean.
JONAS	..	..	Mr. Horace Wigan.
PECKSNIFF	..	..	Mr. Addison.
TOM PINCH	..	..	Mr. J. G. Taylor.
MARK TAPLEY	..	..	Mr. R. Soutar.
MONTAGUE TIGG	..	..	Mr. G. Vincent.
BAILEY JUNR.	..	..	Miss Nellie Farren.
MRS. GAMP	..	..	Mr. John Clarke.
MARY GRAHAM	..	..	Miss Louisa Moore.
CHARITY	..	..	Miss D'Este.
MERCY	..	..	Mrs. Lennox Grey.
MRS. LUPIN	..	..	Miss Lewis.
MRS. TODGERS	..	..	Mrs. Caulfield.

This was the first time John Clarke played Mrs. Gamp—a part that he was able to make almost his own later, particularly in a sketch called “Sairey Gamp,” with C. J. Smith as Betsey Prig, Adelphi, March 22nd, 1873, with J. B. Buckstone’s, “Jack Sheppard.” The late lamented and lovable “La!” Brough was also a capital Mrs. Gamp.

In 1878 Mr. Harry Simms, who had quite an infatuation for Dickens as appealing to him for the drama, did an adaptation for the Theatre Royal, Oxford, on the Easter Monday of that year. I believe, although it did not come to London, it made some progress in the country.

## Dickens and the Drama

We now come to "Tom Pinch," in three acts, by Joseph J. Dilley and Lewis Clifton. On the first night's programme of the production, March 10, 1881, at the Vaudeville Theatre, there was a note to this effect: "The Authors think it desirable to state that they have not attempted to dramatise the novel of 'Martin Chuzzlewit.' They have simply taken one thread of the story, and have converted that into an acting play, making alterations in incident and dialogue only where they have been found necessary, or for the sake of Dramatic effect." The cast was very strong, and the piece was a considerable success, though one critic—the satiric *Punch*—was rather sarcastic. "Those who have seen 'Tom Pinch' at the Vaudeville will readily understand why, as a rule, the late Charles Dickens so strongly objected to the dramatisation of his works. The piece now playing under this title might just as well have been called 'Tom Anybody'—say Tom 'All-Alone.' The stage is said to hold up the mirror to Nature; in this case the glass used has been of rather inferior quality. The result is a somewhat distorted reflection of an episode in 'Martin Chuzzlewit.' Mr. Tom Thorne appears in the bills as Mr. Tom Pinch, but, in spite of a wig of very peculiar construction, his identity is not at all the real article, but Pinch-beck. The Pecksniff

## “Martin Chuzzlewit”

of Mr. William Farren is sketchily suggestive of Sir Peter Teazle in modern costume; and the representatives of Cherry and Merry conscientiously preserve that reputation for burlesque which the Vaudeville enjoyed in the early days of its management.” Now there are no characters in the play called “Cherry and Merry.” *Punch* purposely so perverted Charity and Mercy, and these parts were most admirably acted by two exceptionally clever actresses, Miss Sophie Larkin and Miss Cicely Richards. So were Mary Graham by Miss Kate Bishop, and Ruth Pinch by Miss Lydia Cowell. Tom Thorne was very highly praised by Clement Scott, as Tom Pinch, and he was about the best dramatic critic London has had for many years. The Editor of *Punch* at the time was F. C. Burnand (just appointed), whose wretchedly bad play “Ourselves” was damned out of hand at the Vaudeville Theatre, Thursday, January 29, 1880. I know, because I was present. Sir F. C. (then Mr.) Burnand was very sore about the failure of his piece “Ourselves,” and so he wrote his own defence of it in the *Theatre Magazine* for March, 1880.

Here is the Vaudeville cast of “Tom Pinch.”

PECKSNIFF	..	..	..	Mr. William Farren.
TOM PINCH	..	..	..	Mr. Thomas Thorne.
OLD MARTIN	...	..	..	Mr. John MacLean.
MARTIN CHUZZLEWIT	..	..	..	Mr. J. G. Grahame.



## Dickens and the Drama

JOHN WESTLOCK	..	..	Mr. J. R. Crauford.
MARK TAPLEY	..	..	Mr. W. Lestocq.
MARY GRAHAM	..	..	Miss Kate Bishop.
CHARITY	..	..	Miss Sophie Larkin.
MERCY	..	..	Miss Cicely Richards.
RUTH	..	..	Miss Lydia Cowell.
JANE	..	..	Miss E. Palmer.

Mr. E. S. Willard thought so highly of "Tom Pinch" that he secured it for his repertoire, and has played the title *rôle* all over the world, and particularly throughout the length and breadth of America. During his season at the St. James's Theatre in 1903, Mr. Willard revived the piece with gratifying results.

Other pieces founded on "Martin Chuzzlewit" were "Mrs. Gamp's Party," done at Manchester, "Mrs. Harris," a farce by E. Stirling, presented at the Strand Theatre, with John Clarke as Sairey Gamp, while in 1844 a drama was given with the full title of the novel, in which an eccentric actor named Hall doubled the parts of Pecksniff and Sairey Gamp.

In 1864 was played and published in Germany "Tartuffe Junior, Oder Martin Geldermann und Seine Erben : " Lutspiel in fünf Aufzügen. Von H. Chr. L. Klein. (Play in five acts after "The Life of Martin Chuzzlewit.")

To Edward Stirling's Lyceum adaptation of

## “Martin Chuzzlewit”

“Martin Chuzzlewit,” Albert Smith wrote a short prologue, which is worth preserving :

We owe this story of the present hour  
To that great master hand whose magic power  
Can call up laughter, bid the tear to start,  
And find an echoing chord in every heart ;  
Whom we have learn'd to deem a household friend ;  
Who midst his various writings never penn'd  
One line that might his guileless pages spot  
One word that dying he would wish to blot.

There was also published a five-act comedy in verse founded on “Martin Chuzzlewit,” but, I believe, never performed.

Speaking of the Strand Theatre in 1847, Edmund Yates says, “My first visit to the Strand was in my very early days, when it was called Punch’s Playhouse, and the Keeleys were acting there ; but beyond those facts I have no recollection of it. What I first clearly remember in connection with the little theatre is a dramatic version of ‘Martin Chuzzlewit,’ with a clever, jolly-looking man named H. Hall, who doubled the characters of Pecksniff and Mrs. Gamp, and one Roberts, who made an excellent Tigg.” I can now add to this—the date of the production was July 15, 1844. In the company playing the various other parts were Messrs. Aycliffe (Old Martin Chuzzlewit), W. Searle (Anthony Chuzzlewit), Attwood and Ranoe (Jonas and

## Dickens and the Drama

Martin Chuzzlewit the nephews), Conway (Chuffy), Cockrill (Bailey), Nadgett a detective, Thompson, while the ladies were: Miss Fitzjames as Mercy, Mrs. C. Melville as Charity, and Mrs. Smythe as Mrs. Lupin. After a while Mercy was taken by Mrs. Montgomery.

In 1904 there was published a very interesting comedy in five acts, entitled "Mr. Pecksniff's Pupil," by Miss I. M. Pagan, which no doubt, in due course will face the footlights.

The same writer has also written "Town and Todgers," a sketch in two scenes from "Martin Chuzzlewit."

Evidently based upon Charles Dickens's "American Notes," Edward Stirling contrived a farce for the Adelphi Theatre, entitled, "Yankee Notes for English Circulation," which was produced by Benjamin Webster, January, 1843. It did not make any impression, however, and was soon withdrawn.

## CHAPTER XII

### THE CHRISTMAS BOOKS

THERE is no doubt that when Dickens conceived the idea of "A Christmas Carol," the first of the long and happy series of Yule Tide tales, which at once caught the public taste and thrilled so many hearts with peace and goodwill to all men, he brought into vogue the Christmas story proper, if, indeed, he were not the actual pioneer of it. "A Christmas Carol" anyhow marked an epoch in the history of light and homely fiction and carried charity and happiness to many a fireside. It was in October, 1843, that the conception of his memorable Christmas Carol occurred to Dickens during a brief visit to Manchester, and by the end of November the whole work was finished in London. The author said that he "excited himself in a most extraordinary manner in the composition," and declared that he was alternately "laughing and crying over it." He explains how he walked about the back streets of London, fifteen and twenty miles, many a night when all other folks had gone to bed. Thackeray, ever an enthusiastic

## Dickens and the Drama

admirer of his great contemporary—to say rival would be absurd, their genius was equally marvellous in different ways—wrote in *Fraser's Magazine*, “Who can listen to objections regarding such a book as this? It seems to me a national benefit, and to every man or woman who reads it a personal kindness. The last two people I heard speak of it were women; neither knew the other, or the author, and both said by way of criticism, ‘God bless him!’ What a feeling it is for a writer to be able to inspire such thoughts, and what a reward to reap.” Lord Jeffrey, in a letter equally enthusiastic, wrote to the author: “You should be happy yourself, for you may be sure you have done good by this publication, fostered more kindly feelings and prompted more positive acts of beneficence than can be traced to all the pulpits and confessionals in Christendom since Christmas, 1842.”

One of the first stage versions of “The Carol” was from that adept adapter of Dickens and Harrison Ainsworth and others, the ubiquitous Edward Stirling.

At the Theatre Royal Adelphi, then under the management of Thomas Gladstone, February 4th, 1844, was produced the “Christmas Carol” and the playbills announced that it was “the only dramatic version sanctioned by C. Dickens, Esqre.” The piece

## The Christmas Books

was “dramatised and produced by Mr. Edward Stirling.” Evidently Dickens had overlooked some of Mr. Stirling’s peccadilloes.

And here is the cast.

### A CHRISTMAS CAROL.

STAVE THE FIRST—THE FIRST OF THE THREE SPIRITS.

EBENEZER SCROOGE ( <i>the money lender—A Christmas hater—A name only</i>	GOOD upon	
'Change)	.. ..	Mr. O. Smith.
MISTER BOB CRATCHIT ( <i>a Poor Clerk with Fifteen Shillings a week and Six Children</i> )	..	Mr. Wright.
MR. FEZZIWIG ( <i>a London Trader — “one vast substantial smile” only, rich and jovial</i> )		Mr. S. Smith.
MR. DILWORTH ( <i>a Pedagogue</i> )	..	Mr. Johnson.
MASTER SCROOGE ( <i>a School Boy</i> )		Master Lightfoot.
YOUNG SCROOGE and DICK WILKINS ( <i>Fellow Apprentices</i> )	..	Mr. Braid and Mr. Leslie
POST BOY	.. ..	Mr. Honey.
THE DIRTY LITTLE BOY FROM OVER THE WAY	.. ..	Master Mouncer.
FIDDLER	.. ..	Mr. Shaw.
MRS. FEZZIWIG ( <i>Beaming and Loveable</i> )	.. ..	Mrs. Woollidge.
BELLA MORTON ( <i>Scrooge’s first, his only love, save gold</i> )	..	Miss Woolgar.
THE GHOST OF CHRISTMAS ( <i>it was a Strange Figure—like a Child</i> )	.. ..	Miss E. Chaplain.
LITTLE FAN ( <i>Scrooge’s Sister</i> )	..	Miss Mott.
MARY, the Tenant—SALLY, the Cook—their Friends, Neighbours, etc.		

## Dickens and the Drama

### STAVE THE SECOND—THE SECOND OF THE THREE SPIRITS.

SCROOGE ( <i>the miser</i> )	..	..	Mr. O. Smith.
NEPHEW FRED	..	..	Mr. Maynard.
BOB CRATCHIT	..	..	Mr. Wright.
MASTER PETER CRATCHIT	..		Master Brunton.
MASTER TOM CRATCHIT	..		Master Scott.
SEA CAPTAIN	..	..	Mr. Jones.
TINY TIM ( <i>"Alas! poor Tiny Tim—he bore a little crutch, and had his limbs supported by an iron frame"</i> )	..	..	Miss Maynard.
VISION OF DOOM ( <i>Ignorance</i> )	..		Mr. Crane
WANT	..	..	Mr. Holmes.
MARINERS	..	..	Messrs. Rough and Rains.
Butchers, Grocers, Ballad Singers, Passengers, Watermen, Small Purchasers, Visitors, etc.			
MRS. BOB CRATCHIT ( <i>wife to Bob—dressed out but poorly in a twice-turned gown, but brave in ribbons</i> )	..	..	Mrs. F. Matthews.
MARTHA CRATCHIT	..	..	Miss Lee.
BELINDA CRATCHIT	..	..	Miss O. Hicks.
SALLY CRATCHIT	..	..	Miss Johnson.
THE GHOST OF CHRISTMAS PRESENT ( <i>with a Song, "A Jolly Giant Glorious to see"</i> )	..	..	Mr. Forman.

### STAVE THE THIRD—THE LAST OF THE SPIRITS.

SCROOGE ( <i>the miser</i> )	..	..	Mr. O. Smith.
NEPHEW FRED	..	..	Mr. Maynard.
BOB CRATCHIT	..	..	Mr. Wright.
MASTER PETER CRATCHIT	..		Master Brunton.
TINY TIM	..	..	Miss Maynard.
OLD JOE ( <i>a Receiver of Stolen Goods—a grey-haired rascal nearly seventy years of age</i> )			Mr. Sanders.



SCENE FROM "A CHRISTMAS CAROL," AT THE ADELPHI THEATRE, 1844.

[*Titania* p. 188.





## The Christmas Books

MR. TOPPER and MR. FLOSS ( <i>Worldly Friends of Old Scrooge</i> ) .. .. .	Mr. Aldridge and Mr. Freeborn.
MR. BLINK ( <i>an Undertaker's Man</i> ).. .. .	Mr. Honey. Visitors, Guests, etc.
MRS. DIBLER ( <i>a Laundress</i> )	Mrs. Woollidge.
MRS FORD .. .. .	Miss Butler.
SALBY ( <i>a nurse</i> ) .. .. .	Miss Wilshire.
MRS. BOB CRATCHIT .. .. .	Mrs. F. Matthews.
MARTHA CRATCHIT .. .. .	Miss Lee.
SPIRIT OF THE FUTURE ( <i>a solemn Phantom, dressed and hooded coming like a Mist along the ground</i> ) .. .. .	Mrs. D. Lee.

A full reproduction of this playbill, a promise in itself of a good piece and an appetising entertainment will be found on another page. Of this performance Dickens wrote to John Forster, "I saw the 'Carol' last night. Better than usual, and Wright seems to enjoy Bob Cratchit, but *heart-rending* to me. Oh! Heaven, if any forecast of *this* was ever in my mind! Yet O. Smith was dreadfully better than I expected. It is a great comfort to have that kind of meat underdone, and his face is quite perfect."

This letter seems somewhat contradictory in view of the following statement made by T. Edgar Pemberton: "The pleasantest thing which Mr. Stirling has to tell with regard to his connection

## Dickens and the Drama

with Dickens is concerning his dramatisation of the 'Christmas Carol,' which was done by the express sanction of the author. The story is in itself so cheering and is so daintily told, that Mr. Stirling's own words must be used." Here is what Mr. Stirling recorded: "Dickens attended several rehearsals, furnishing valuable suggestions. Thinking to make Tiny Tim (a pretty child) more effective, I ordered a set of irons and bandages for his supposed weak leg. When Dickens saw this tried on the child, he took me aside: 'No, Stirling, no; this won't do! remember how painful it would be to many of the audience having crippled children.'"

Master Brunton, who played Peter, made a name for himself, and was the father of the clever comedian Walter E. Brunton, so long with J. L. Toole.

The "Carol" was done at the Strand and also at the Surrey. At the latter house on February 5th, 1844.

### A CHRISTMAS CAROL.

EBENEZER SCROOGE ( <i>the miser</i> )	Mr. R. Honner.
FRANK FREEHEART ( <i>his nephew</i> )	Mr. J. T. Johnson,
MR. CHEERLY .. .. .	Mr. Hawkins.
MR. HEARTLY .. .. .	Mr. Green.
BOB CRATCHIT ( <i>Scrooge's clerk</i> )	Mr. Vale.
DARK SAM .. .. .	Mr. Stilt.

### CHARACTERS IN THE DREAM.

EUSTON ( <i>a ruined gentleman</i> ) ..	Mr. Lawler.
MR. FEZZIWIG .. .. .	Mr. Dixie.
OLD JOE ( <i>a fence</i> ).. .. .	Mr. Goldsmith.

THOMAS GLADSTONE, 411, Strand)

...FIFTH WEEK OF THE

The Only Version sanctioned by C. DICKENS, Esq.

GRANTED WITH ROARS OF LAUGHTER.

With its New, Sober and Extraordinary Effects, Completely Successful

RETRIAL DEEDS of DREADFUL NOTE

MONDAY, MARCH 11th, 1844, and during the WEEK,  
A DRAUGHT OF PAPER AND BOOKS CONTAINS IN IT THREE STYLES, founded on, and called A

ON THE PRESENT and FUTURE.

What will happen when you see the new scenery, the mechanical effects, the dances and the music?

Printer Old English Calligraphic Music  
The archaic of GOTHIC and the GOTHIC  
Music on the HILF of the

Reproduced and Protected by the Copyright Licensing Agency

have endeavoured in this Ghastly little Book to raise the Ghost  
 of our readers out of themselves, with each other.

— a Christmas Ham — a ham and good wine 'Crisp' J. H. O. SMITH.

1. Mr. J. Edgar Hoover, Director, Federal Bureau of Investigation, Washington, D.C.

Dr. Dillman (a Ph.D. degree), M. JOHNSON, Manager Sargeant (a Ph.D. degree), Manager LIGHTFOOT  
Dr. Dillman (a Ph.D. degree), M. JOHNSON, Manager Sargeant (a Ph.D. degree), Manager LIGHTFOOT  
Dr. Dillman (a Ph.D. degree), M. JOHNSON, Manager Sargeant (a Ph.D. degree), Manager LIGHTFOOT

The Day Little Boy is - The way Man; NOENCER Fiddler M SHAW,  
M. Brounson. (Hornet and Herald). No. MOOLIDGE

Mr. Feltzinger, (Brooming and Linen), Mr. WOOLIDGE  
 (Shower's Art, his only long-time gold) Mrs. WOOLIDGE  
 Pelin Hutton

Little Fan (Screage's sister) Miss MOTT, Mary, the Tenant—Sally, the Cook—their Friends Neighbours, &c.

ALL THE BAFLED KNIGHT.

**AIR DISTANT BELLS,**  
MANLY & SONS LTD. 100, New Bondage.

**AIR CRIME KING OF GHOSTS.** The 2nd of the New- (Christmas Post) A spell  
Up of the Post. Sunday Days. Solitary Scholast

**A CHILD'S STORY BOOK.** **Home for the Holidays.** **Air HURRY ALONG**  
 My Tr. Wigs. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100. 101. 102. 103. 104. 105. 106. 107. 108. 109. 110. 111. 112. 113. 114. 115. 116. 117. 118. 119. 120. 121. 122. 123. 124. 125. 126. 127. 128. 129. 130. 131. 132. 133. 134. 135. 136. 137. 138. 139. 140. 141. 142. 143. 144. 145. 146. 147. 148. 149. 150. 151. 152. 153. 154. 155. 156. 157. 158. 159. 160. 161. 162. 163. 164. 165. 166. 167. 168. 169. 170. 171. 172. 173. 174. 175. 176. 177. 178. 179. 180. 181. 182. 183. 184. 185. 186. 187. 188. 189. 190. 191. 192. 193. 194. 195. 196. 197. 198. 199. 200. 201. 202. 203. 204. 205. 206. 207. 208. 209. 210. 211. 212. 213. 214. 215. 216. 217. 218. 219. 220. 221. 222. 223. 224. 225. 226. 227. 228. 229. 230. 231. 232. 233. 234. 235. 236. 237. 238. 239. 240. 241. 242. 243. 244. 245. 246. 247. 248. 249. 250. 251. 252. 253. 254. 255. 256. 257. 258. 259. 260. 261. 262. 263. 264. 265. 266. 267. 268. 269. 270. 271. 272. 273. 274. 275. 276. 277. 278. 279. 280. 281. 282. 283. 284. 285. 286. 287. 288. 289. 290. 291. 292. 293. 294. 295. 296. 297. 298. 299. 300. 301. 302. 303. 304. 305. 306. 307. 308. 309. 310. 311. 312. 313. 314. 315. 316. 317. 318. 319. 320. 321. 322. 323. 324. 325. 326. 327. 328. 329. 330. 331. 332. 333. 334. 335. 336. 337. 338. 339. 340. 341. 342. 343. 344. 345. 346. 347. 348. 349. 350. 351. 352. 353. 354. 355. 356. 357. 358. 359. 360. 361. 362. 363. 364. 365. 366. 367. 368. 369. 370. 371. 372. 373. 374. 375. 376. 377. 378. 379. 380. 381. 382. 383. 384. 385. 386. 387. 388. 389. 390. 391. 392. 393. 394. 395. 396. 397. 398. 399. 400. 401. 402. 403. 404. 405. 406. 407. 408. 409. 410. 411. 412. 413. 414. 415. 416. 417. 418. 419. 420. 421. 422. 423. 424. 425. 426. 427. 428. 429. 430. 431. 432. 433. 434. 435. 436. 437. 438. 439. 440. 441. 442. 443. 444. 445. 446. 447. 448. 449. 450. 451. 452. 453. 454. 455. 456. 457. 458. 459. 460. 461. 462. 463. 464. 465. 466. 467. 468. 469. 470. 471. 472. 473. 474. 475. 476. 477. 478. 479. 480. 481. 482. 483. 484. 485. 486. 487. 488. 489. 490. 491. 492. 493. 494. 495. 496. 497. 498. 499. 500. 501. 502. 503. 504. 505. 506. 507. 508. 509. 510. 511. 512. 513. 514. 515. 516. 517. 518. 519. 520. 521. 522. 523. 524. 525. 526. 527. 528. 529. 530. 531. 532. 533. 534. 535. 536. 537. 538. 539. 540. 541. 542. 543. 544. 545. 546. 547. 548. 549. 550. 551. 552. 553. 554. 555. 556. 557. 558. 559. 560. 561. 562. 563. 564. 565. 566. 567. 568. 569. 570. 571. 572. 573. 574. 575. 576. 577. 578. 579. 580. 581. 582. 583. 584. 585. 586. 587. 588. 589. 590. 591. 592. 593. 594. 595. 596. 597. 598. 599. 600. 601. 602. 603. 604. 605. 606. 607. 608. 609. 610. 611. 612. 613. 614. 615. 616. 617. 618. 619. 620. 621. 622. 623. 624. 625. 626. 627. 628. 629. 630. 631. 632. 633. 634. 635. 636. 637. 638. 639. 640. 641. 642. 643. 644. 645. 646. 647. 648. 649. 650. 651. 652. 653. 654. 655. 656. 657. 658. 659. 660. 661. 662. 663. 664. 665. 666. 667. 668. 669. 670. 671. 672. 673. 674. 675. 676. 677. 678. 679. 680. 681. 682. 683. 684. 685. 686. 687. 688. 689. 690. 691. 692. 693. 694. 695. 696. 697. 698. 699. 700. 701. 702. 703. 704. 705. 706. 707. 708. 709. 710. 711. 712. 713. 714. 715. 716. 717. 718. 719. 720. 721. 722. 723. 724. 725. 726. 727. 728. 729. 730. 731. 732. 733. 734. 735. 736. 737. 738. 739. 740. 741. 742. 743. 744. 745. 746. 747. 748. 749. 750. 751. 752. 753. 754. 755. 756. 757. 758. 759. 760. 761. 762. 763. 764. 765. 766. 767. 768. 769. 770. 771. 772. 773. 774. 775. 776. 777. 778. 779. 780. 781. 782. 783. 784. 785. 786. 787. 788. 789. 790. 791. 792. 793. 794. 795. 796. 797. 798. 799. 800. 801. 802. 803. 804. 805. 806. 807. 808. 809. 810. 811. 812. 813. 814. 815. 816. 817. 818. 819. 820. 821. 822. 823. 824. 825. 826. 827. 828. 829. 830. 831. 832. 833. 834. 835. 836. 837. 83

**ALL LOVE LIES BLENDING.**

1 Our Christmas Ball is the old street-front Festspielhaus, a great blaze of

Mr MAYNARD      Mr BRUNTON      Mr T. B. BRYANT      Mr C. H. COYNE      Mr J. H. JONES

Master Peter Cratchit Master SAUNTON, Master Tim Cratchit Master SCOTT  
Tiny Tim ("glad" par) Tiny Tim who bore a little crutch, & had his father supported by an iron frame & Mrs MAYNARD  
Mr. & Mrs. CRATCHIT Mr. & Mrs. HIGGINS Mr. & Mrs. BOWLEY Mr. & Mrs. BOWLEY Mr. & Mrs. BOWLEY

VISION OF ROOM—Ignorance Mr. CRANE, Want Mr. HOLMES, Marriage Mrs. BOLTON & RAYNE,  
Butcher, Grocers Ballad Singers, Passengers, Watchmen, Small Paraphernalia Vendors &c

Mrs Bob Crutchfield, IP's wife, Mr Bob—dressed out but poorly in a white and red gown but brown in ribbon; Mrs MATTIE SP  
Martha Crutchfield, Miss LEE, Belinda Crutchfield, Miss O HICKS, Sally Crutchfield, Miss JOHNSON

The Ghost of Christmas Present. (With a Song, "A Jolly Giant glorious to see") Mr. F. ORMAN

**THE JOYFUL APPEARANCE OF CHRISTMAS PRESENT ON HIS THRONE OF PLenty HEALTH & COMFORT**

Sen. H. S. H. RODWELL, R. AL. "EXACTLY WHAT IT OUGHT TO BE. The Journal at 11:45

**CLARE MARKET, by Gailight.—CHRISTMAS EVE**

**Rob Cretchley's Camden Town—Christmas Dinner.**

**Bob Cretchbitt, Canadian Town—Charming Dinner.**  
**At. OLD KING COLE** Cardal Nation. Wino Whiffen, Mover of the Ocean, Pasty Party The Funder and his Little Child. They Were

**THE WIRE—Working of the Electric**—Let the human live with you. —Docting, Ignorance & Wound

104-20113-14

SIMILE OF FIRST HALF OF PLAY-BILL OF "A CHRIST

SIMILE OF FIRST HALF OF PLAY-BILL OF "A CHRISTIAN CAROL" AT THE ADELPHI THEATRE 1844.

CAROL, AT THE ADELPHI THEATRE, 1844.

[To father]

[To face p. 190.]



## The Christmas Books

GHOST OF JACOB MARLEY	..	Mr. Morrison.
GHOST OF CHRISTMAS PAST	..	Mr. Lewis
GHOST OF CHRISTMAS PRESENT		Mr. Heslop.
GHOST OF CHRISTMAS TO COME		* * * *
DARK SAM .. .. .	..	Mr. Stilt.
PETER ( <i>Bob's eldest son</i> )	..	Miss Daly.
TINY TIM .. .. .	..	Master Brady.
MRS. FREEHEART.. ..	..	Mrs. Hicks.
ELLEN ( <i>Scrooge's former love</i> )	..	Mrs. H. Hughes,
MRS CRATCHIT .. ..	..	Mrs. Daly.

The writer of the piece, C. Z. Barnett, wrote in the printed play : " This Dramatic Sketch is adapted from Mr. Charles Dickens's very charming ' Christmas Carol ' published by Messrs. Chapman and Hall, Strand. The extreme necessity—(the consequence of its high and deserved popularity)—that so imperatively called for its representation upon the Stage, has also demanded its publication as a Drama, which it is the Adapter's sincere wish, as it is his conviction, will considerably augment the sale of the original lovely and humanizing creation upon which it is founded." Which was a pretty cool " advertisement." At Sadler's Wells that excellent actor, Henry Marston, at the same time was playing Scrooge.

It is of extreme interest to note that it was in the play by Stirling that the late popular comedian, John Lawrence Toole, made one of his greatest hits on January 14th, 1860, as Bob Cratchit, at the

## Dickens and the Drama

Adelphi, under the management of Benjamin Webster, with Mrs. Alfred Mellon as Mrs. Cratchit. The chief reason of the interest lies in the fact that Charles Dickens was one of the first to encourage Toole in his theatrical endeavours. In 1842, when writing "Bleak House," and just prior to going to Dover, the great novelist found time amid many occupations and some anxieties, for a good-natured journey to Walworth to see a youth rehearse who was supposed to have talents for the stage, and he was able to gladden the hearts of Mr. Toole's friends by thinking favourably of his chances. "I remember what I once wanted in that way," he said, "and I should like to serve him." And he did in more ways than one. That Dickens's judgment was correct soon became apparent by the rapid progress the young actor made in his chosen profession. Concerning this revival Toole used to tell a very good story :

"It was when I was playing Bob Cratchit," said Mr. Toole to Joseph Hatton, his life-long friend and biographer, "in the 'Christmas Carol' at the Adelphi, under Mr. Webster's management, and every night at eight o'clock for forty nights I had to serve a goose and a plum pudding. Mr. Webster provided a real goose and a real plum pudding, which were served smoking hot for Mrs. Cratchit and

## The Christmas Books

the seven little Cratchits, including, of course, Tiny Tim. The children always had enormous portions given them, and all ate heartily every night; but what troubled me was the conduct of the little girl who played Tiny Tim. That child's appetite appalled me. I could not help noticing the extraordinary rapidity with which she consumed what I gave her, and she looked so wan and thin, and so pitiful, that her face used positively to haunt me. I used to say to myself before I began, 'Well, Tiny Tim shall have enough this time, at all events,' and I piled her plate more and more each evening until I remember she had on one occasion more than half the bird, besides potatoes and apple sauce. It puzzled me to know how she could even carry it away to the fireplace, where she sat on a low stool, in accordance with the story, much less eat it.

"To my amazement she carried it and cleared her plate as quickly and as eagerly as ever, pushing forward for plum-pudding with the others. I grew alarmed and spoke to Mrs. Alfred Mellon, who was playing Mrs. Cratchit, respecting this strange phenomenon.

" 'I don't like it,' I said; 'I can't conceive where a poor delicate little thing like that puts the food. Besides, although I like the children to enjoy a treat'—and how they kept on enjoying



## Dickens and the Drama

it for forty nights was a mystery to me, for I got into such a condition that if I dined at a friend's house and goose was on the table, I regarded it as a personal affront—I said, referring to Tiny Tim, 'I don't like greediness; and it is additionally repulsive in a refined-looking, delicate little thing like this; besides, it destroys the sentiment of the situation—and when I, as Bob, ought to feel most pathetic, I am always wondering where the goose and pudding are, or whether anything serious in the way of a fit will happen to Tiny Tim before the audience in consequence of her unnatural gorging.' Mrs. Mellon laughed at me at first, but eventually we decided to watch Tiny Tim together. We watched as well as we could, and the moment Tiny Tim was seated and began to eat, we observed a curious shuffling movement at the stage fireplace, and everything that I had given her, goose and potatoes and apple sauce, disappeared behind the sham stove, the child pretending to eat as heartily as ever from the empty plate.

"When the performance was over, Mrs. Mellon and myself asked the little girl what became of the food she did not eat, and, after a little hesitation, frightened lest she should get into trouble, which we assured her could not happen, she confessed that her little sister (I should mention that they were

## The Christmas Books

the children of one of the scene-shifters) waited on the other side of the stage fireplace for the supplies, and that the whole family enjoyed a hearty supper every evening out of the plentiful portions to which I, as Bob Cratchit, had assisted Tiny Tim.

"Dickens was very much interested in the incident. When I had finished, he smiled a little sadly, I thought, and then shaking me by the hand he said, 'Ah, you ought to have given her the whole goose.' "

The versatile Seymour Hicks, by the way, played a version of the "Carol" prepared by J. C. Buckstone called "Scrooge," at the Vaudeville Theatre, October 3rd, 1901. In the cast were Mr. Hicks himself as Scrooge; Holbrook Blinn as the Ghost of Jacob Marley; Stanley Brett as Fred Wayland; Compton Coumts as Bob Cratchit; J. C. Buckstone as Mr. Middlemark; George Mudie, junr., as Mr. Worthington; Miss Hilda Antony as Mrs. Fred Wayland; Miss Florence Lloyd as Mrs. Cratchit; and Master George Hersee as Tiny Tim. Mr. Hicks made a great hit as the old miser, and he has since acted the piece with much appreciation in a condensed form at the Coliseum and other variety houses.

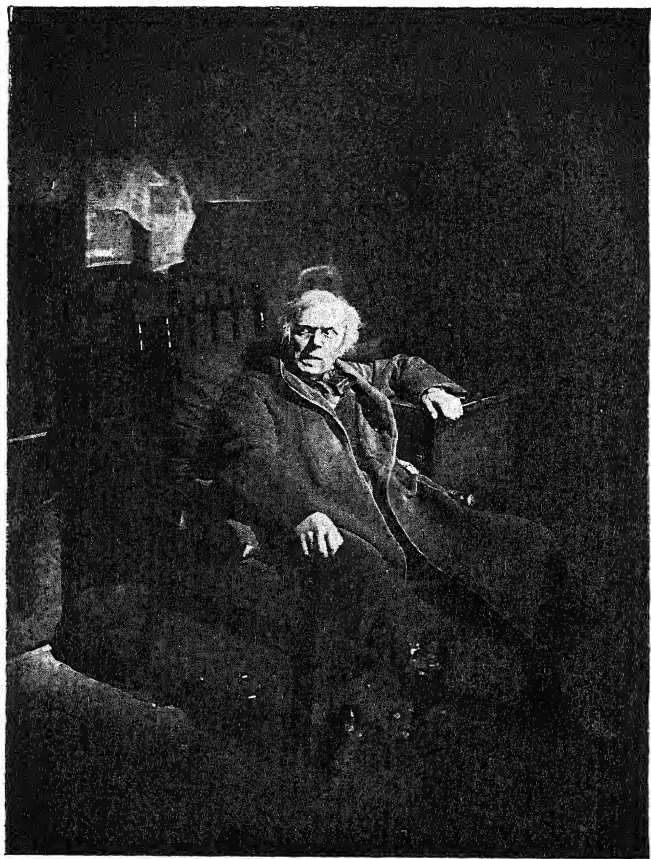
Mr. Bransby Williams has made certain characters of Dickens almost his own, and he, too, gives

## Dickens and the Drama

a good account of himself as Scrooge. Indeed, Mr. Bransby Williams has made a quite extensive gallery of characters out of Dickens and presented "Scrooge" some ten years at least before Mr. Seymour Hicks played his version at the Vaudeville Theatre, and afterwards on the variety stage.

In Mr. Williams's very comprehensive volume telling of his experiences, entitled "An Actor's Story," will be found full particulars of this popular comedian's ups and downs, with a graphic account of his successes in his various impersonations, which include Jingle, Chadband, Sydney Carton, Quilp, and the grandfather in "The Old Curiosity Shop." These were in the beginning. Afterwards Mr. Williams tackled Serjeant Buzfuz, Dick Swiveller, Montague Tigg, Pecksniff, Bill Sikes, Dan'l Peggotty, Newman Noggs, and many characters from "Barnaby Rudge. It was Edward Terry, a most eccentric Micawber himself, who suggested that individual as a study worthy of Mr. Williams's consideration.

A peculiar interest apart from purely literary considerations attaches to the "Carol." A reading of it for the benefit of the new Midland Institute in the Birmingham Town Hall on December 27th, 1853, was the first of the platform appearances of Dickens as an interpreter of his own books. I always think that when Dickens drew Scrooge he had not



BRANSEY WILLIAMS AS SCROOGE.

*Photo by Campbell-Gray, Ltd.*

°  
[To face p. 196.]



## The Christmas Books

forgotten Gabriel Grub in the story told in the "Pickwick Papers" by Mr. Wardle, called "Story of the Goblins who stole a Sexton." At Christmas-time, 1859, "The Carol," as it was ever affectionately called, was presented in extravaganza form at the Adelphi, by the way.

The next Christmas Story, "The Chimes," appeared in December, 1845. The conception and writing of this tale seems to have caused great trouble and anxiety, but one day Shakespeare's line "we have heard the CHIMES at midnight, Master Shallow," flashed through his brain, and Dickens knew that he had found what he wanted. "It is a great thing to hear my title," he said, October 8th, "and see my way to work the bells. Let them clash upon me now from all the churches and convents in Genoa, I see nothing but the old belfry I have set them in. In my mind's eye, Horatio, I like more and more my notion of making, in this little book, a great blow for the poor. Something powerful, I think I can do, but I want to be tender too, and cheerful; as like the 'Carol' in that respect as may be. The duration of the action will resemble it a little, but I trust to the novelty of the machinery to carry that off; and if my design be anything at all, it has a grip upon the very throat of time." His object in writing "The Chimes" was to champion

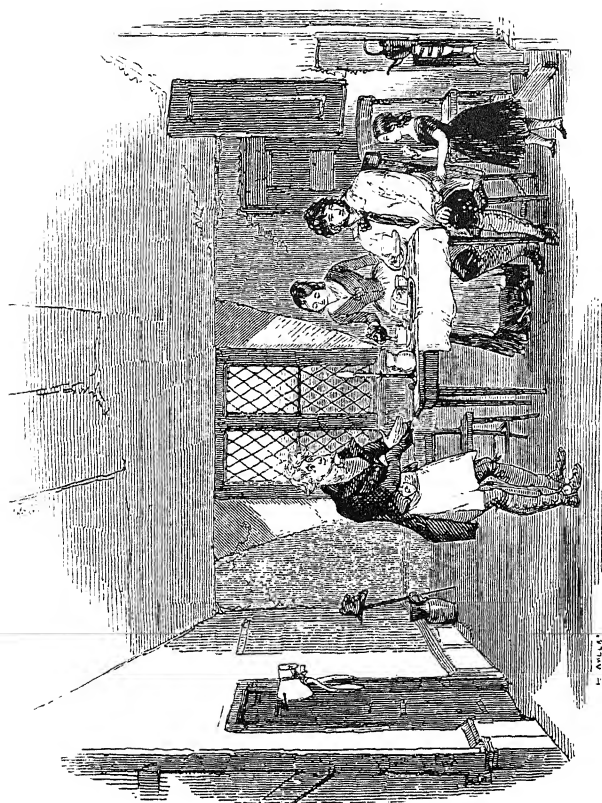
## Dickens and the Drama

the cause of the poor. "The Chimes," by the way, was written in Genoa, and it was finished on the third of November.

"The Chimes: A Goblin Story of Some Bells that Rang an Old Year out and a New Year in, a Drama in Four Quarters," by Mark Lemon and Gilbert Abbot à Becket, was produced at the Adelphi Theatre, December 19th, 1844, by special permission of Charles Dickens himself, both the dramatists being his personal friends. To the latter it had been read by John Forster as soon as it was concluded.

### THE CHIMES.

PROLOGUE ( <i>The Spirit of the</i>				
<i>Chimes</i> )	..	..	..	Miss E. Chaplin.
TOBY VECK	..	..	..	Mr. O. Smith.
ALDERMAN CUTE	..	..	..	Mr. Edward Wright.
FILER	..	..	..	Mr. Lambert.
CHOKER	..	..	..	Mr. J. Cullenford.
RICHARD	..	..	..	Mr. Charles Selby.
JABEZ	..	..	..	Mr. Munyard.
JOHN	..	..	..	Mr. Saunders.
TUGBY	..	..	..	Mr. Wilkinson.
SIR JOSEPH BOWLEY BART, M.P.				Mr. Paul Bedford.
MR. FISH	..	..	..	Mr. C. J. Smith.
WILL FERN	..	..	..	Mr. Hudson.
MR. LINT	..	..	..	Mr. Cowl.
GOBLIN OF THE BELL	..	..	..	Mr. Worrell.
GOBLINS	..	..	..	{ Mr. Freeborn.
				{ Mr. Glennaire.
				{ Mr. Waye.
MEGGY VECK	..	..	..	Miss Fortescue.



SCENE FROM "THE CHIMES," AT THE ADELPHI THEATRE, 1844.

[*Facsimile* p. 108.





## The Christmas Books

MRS. CHICKENSTALKER	..	Mrs. F. Matthews.
LADY BOWLEY .. ..	..	Miss E. Harding.
LILIAN .. ..	..	Miss Turtle.
LILIAN ( <i>aged eighteen</i> ) .. ..	..	Miss M. Taylor.
VILLAGERS, PEASANTS, AND VISITORS.		

Miss Ellen Chaplin spoke the following rhymed prologue as Spirit of the Chimes—

High up above the city's noise and light,  
Dwelt the old Chimes of which we tell to-night,  
Their iron voices fell upon the ear,  
Not speechless were those bells, but loud and clear,  
And none e'er listened for their measured sound,  
Or in their booming clearer language found,  
Than poor old Trotty Veck. For many a year  
The Chimes were wont his drooping heart to cheer.  
They told of newer hopes and better times,  
And poor old Trotty dearly loved the Chimes,  
But Trotty oft would doubt . . . where want hath cried,  
And roused sleek Plenty's anger . . . as it died.  
When he hath heard the "putters down" of woe  
Taunting Despair and mocking every throe,  
Then would he doubt if poverty had claim  
To any goodness . . . whatsoe'er it's name.  
He doubted if the poor man's heart could own  
The sympathies he deemed were wealth's alone—  
Then grew repining—mourned the "good old times"—  
—Until he learned a lesson from our Chimes."

This was a great success, and consequently unauthorised versions cropped up everywhere. It affected everybody very deeply, and reduced both À'Becket, Macready, Thackeray, and other old stagers to tears. Mrs. Charles Calvert prepared a

## Dickens and the Drama

version, which was played at the Gaiety Theatre, December 26th, 1872.

### TROTTY VECK.

TROTTY VECK	..	..	..	Mr. J. L. Toole.
SIR JOSEPH BOWLEY	..	..	..	Mr. Robert Soutar.
MR. FILER	..	..	..	Mr. J. G. Taylor.
MR. FISH	..	..	..	Mr. Crutwell.
WILL FERN	..	..	..	Mr. Alfred Bishop.
MEG	..	..	..	Miss Margaret Cooper.
LADY BOWLEY	..	..	..	Mrs. H. Leigh.

In the following January—1873—Mr. Arthur Williams was responsible for “Christmas Chimes, or Trotty Veck’s Dream,” produced at the Pavilion Theatre.

### CHRISTMAS CHIMES.

TROTTY VECK	..	..	..	Mr. Arthur Williams.
ALDERMAN CUTE	..	..	..	Mr. George Yates.
RICHARD	..	..	..	Mr. Charles Reeve.
JABEZ	..	..	..	Mr. Clingan Jones.
TUGBY	..	..	..	Mr. J. Clifton.
SIR JOSEPH BOWLEY	..	..	..	Mr. T. Morrison.
MR. FISH	..	..	..	Mr. George English.
WILL FERN	..	..	..	Mr. Alfred Rayner.
MEG	..	..	..	Miss Jennie Grainger.
MRS. CHICKENSTALKER	..	..	..	Mrs. Murray.
LILIAN	..	..	..	Miss Liske.

The famous “The Cricket on the Hearth,” was the next of the Christmas Stories dramatised, and dramatised by “many hands” too, for the story lent itself most admirably to stage representation. The title of the “Cricket on the Hearth” came from

## The Christmas Books

Dickens accidentally turning up in the dictionary: "Cricket: A cheerful creature that chirrup on the hearth." He took to the idea at once and writes, "What do you think of a notion that has occurred to me in connection with our abandoned little weekly" (he is referring to "Master Humphrey's Clock" which was one of his few failures). "It would be a beautiful and delicate fancy for a Christmas book making the Cricket a little household god—silent in the wrong and sorrow of the tale, and loud again when all went well and happy." The reader, says John Forster, need not be told that thus originated the story of "The Cricket on the Hearth, a Fairy Tale of Home," which had a great popularity in the Christmas days of 1845. Its sale at the outset doubled that of both its predecessors.

The first dramatic version was done by Albert Smith, at the special request of Charles Dickens, for the Keeleys, who were still managing the Lyceum Theatre, and it was presented for the first time in December, 1845.

### THE CRICKET ON THE HEARTH.

JOHN PEERYBINGLE ( <i>a carrier</i> )	Mr. Sam Emery.
MR. TACKLETON ( <i>a toy maker</i> )	Mr. Meadows.
CALEB PLUMMER ( <i>his man</i> )	.. Mr. Keeley.
OLD GENTLEMAN	.. .. Mr. Vining.

## Dickens and the Drama

PORTER .. .. .	Mr. Yarnold.
DOT'S FATHER .. .. .	Mr. Bender.
NEIGHBOURS.	
A LITTLE JOHN PEERYBINGLE	Master Forest.
DOT .. .. .	Mrs. Keeley.
BERTHA ( <i>a blind girl</i> ) .. .. .	Miss Mary Keeley
MRS. FIELDING .. .. .	Mrs. Woollidge.
MAY FIELDING .. .. .	Miss Howard.
TILLY SLOWBOY .. .. .	Miss Turner.
MRS. DOT .. .. .	Miss Forster.
SPIRIT OF THE CRICKET .. .. .	Miss Dawson.
TWELVE VERY LITTLE FAIRIES	Twelve Children.
A VERY LITTLE DOT .. .. .	Miss Frampton.
A VERY LITTLE TILLY SLOWBOY	* * * *

This went with a bang, as they say. Its human touches were and always will be irresistible.

Dickens himself took the greatest interest in the performance and in the Keeleys.

Miss Mary Keeley was the daughter of Mr. and Mrs. Keeley, and this was her first appearance on the stage.

Of course Edward Stirling had a shot at it for the Adelphi, when Mrs. FitzWilliam played Dot ; O. Smith, John Peerybingle ; Miss Woolgar, Bertha ; Mr. Lambert, Caleb Plummer ; Miss Ellen Chaplin, the Spirit of the Cricket ; and Edward Wright, Tilly Slowboy. One was also given at the Old Bower Saloon, Stangate, Lambeth, January 8th, 1846, in the form of a pantomime ! At the City of London Theatre, January 5th, W. T. Townsend



SCENE FROM "THE CRICKET ON THE HEARTH," AT THE LYCEUM, 1845.

[To face p. 202.]



## The Christmas Books

produced "The Cricket on the Hearth" with the following cast: Messrs. Lyon, E. Jones, R. Honner, H. T. Craven (of "Meg's Diversion" fame), and "Bob" Romer. Mrs. R. Honner was an actress much esteemed at the minor theatres—she played Dot—Miss Egan, Miss Lacy, Miss Lee, and Mrs. Turner. This was later transferred to the Surrey Theatre. Another one, done at the Haymarket, December 27th, 1845, was by Benjamin Webster.

It is a most admirable proof of the popularity of Dickens with all classes to know that not only was the sale of the "Cricket on the Hearth" greater than that of any of the Christmas Stories, but its appeal to theatre-goers was irresistible. For instance, on January 11th, 1846, "The Cricket on the Hearth" was being played at the following theatres:—

The Haymarket.	The Queen's (Tottenham
The Princess's.	Court Road).
The Adelphi.	The Victoria.
The Lyceum.	The City of London.
The Olympic (an Extra-	The Surrey.
vaganza)	The Standard, and
The Strand.	The Grecian.

Far and away the best version was that called "Dot," specially dramatised by that past master of dramatic construction, Dion Boucicault, for Mr. J. L. Toole, and played for the first time at the Adelphi Theatre, April 14th, 1862.



## Dickens and the Drama

### DOT.

JOHN PEERYBINGLE	..	..	Mr. Sam Emery.
TACKLETON	..	..	Mr. C. H. Stephenson.
NED PLUMMER	..	..	Mr. J. Billington.
CALEB PLUMMER	..	..	Mr. J. L. Toole.
TILLY SLOWBOY	..	..	Miss Woolgar.
DOT	..	..	Miss Louise Keeley.
BERTHA	..	..	Miss H. Simms.
MRS. FIELDING	..	..	Mrs. Marston.
GENIUS OF HOME	..	..	Miss Kate Kelly.

Ever after "Dot" remained a chief attraction in Mr. Toole's repertoire, as well as "The Chimes" and "Bardell v. Pickwick." "Dot" was also done at Sadler's Wells in 1866, with Thomas Swinbourne as Peerybingle, and George Belmore as Caleb Plummer. One of Mr. Toole's stories in regard to "Dot" was that concerning one performance when he was playing Caleb Plummer as usual, when the actress, who was to take the part of the blind girl Bertha, was suddenly taken ill, but the stage manager was equal to the emergency, and sent on a young lady who calmly *read the part*.

Dion Boucicault's version was done afterwards in New York at the Winter Garden Theatre, with H. Pearson as John Peerybingle; T. B. Johnson as Tackleton; A. H. Davenport, the Stranger; and Joseph Jefferson (later to be famous as Rip Van Winkle) as Caleb Plummer. Miss Agnes Robertson

## The Christmas Books

(Mrs. Dion Boucicault) as Dot; and Mrs. John Wood as Tilly Slowboy.

When Mr. Toole went on tour with the piece he selected for his company this judicious cast, starting at the Theatre Royal, Nottingham (1868)—

JOHN PEERYBINGLE	..	..	Mr. Reginald Moore.
GRUFF TACKLETON	..	..	Mr. Joseph Eldred.
CALEB PLUMMER	..	..	Mr. J. L. Toole.
EDWARD PLUMMER	..	..	Mr. Wyke Moore.
BERTHA .. ..	..	..	Miss Eliza Saville.
MAY FIELDING ..	..	..	Miss Ernstone.
MRS. FIELDING ..	..	..	Mrs. J. F. Saville.
DOT .. ..	..	..	Miss Kate Saville.
TILLY SLOWBOY	..	..	Mr. Arthur Williams.

By the way, speaking of Boucicault, on the title page of his play "The School for Scheming" (Haymarket Theatre, February 4th, 1847), his name is printed thus: "Dion de P. Bourçicault." The work was dedicated to the Duke of Bedford. I believe Dion Boucicault was of Huguenot descent, though born, like his father before him, in Dublin. And certainly an Irishman of Irishmen, and a brilliant dramatist to boot.

We next hear of "Dot" at the Gaiety, December, 1870—

CALEB PLUMMER	..	..	Mr. Toole.
EDWARD PLUMMER	..	..	Mr. H. Vaughan.
TACKLETON ..	..	..	Mr. J. D. Stoye.
PEERYBINGLE ..	..	..	Mr. John Maclean.
TILLY SLOWBOY	..	..	Miss Nelly Farren.

## Dickens and the Drama

DOT	..	..	..	Miss Carlotta Addison.
BERTHA	..	...	..	Miss M. Dalton.
MAY	..	..	..	Miss B. Marston.
MRS. FIELDING	..	..	..	Mrs. H. Leigh.

A year later the piece was revived at the same theatre—(January, 1871, to be accurate)—under the title of “A Christmas Story,” a musical drama with J. L. Toole in his original character of Caleb Plummer, of course, for it was one of his most famous impersonations; Ellen Farren was especially good as Tilly Slowboy; Miss Carlotta Addison was a touching Dot, and Mr. J. D. Stoye an admirable Tackleton.

Mr. Edward Terry did a version of the “Cricket” at Belfast many years ago—he can’t remember the date, when he played Tackleton.

Quite a unique performance of the “Cricket on the Hearth” was presented by Mr. Arthur Bouchier at the Garrick Theatre, commencing December 1st, 1903. It was described as “A Fairy Tale of Home, adapted from the Celebrated Story by Charles Dickens, in a Warble and Three Chirps.”

### THE CRICKET ON THE HEARTH.

#### MORTALS.

CALEB PLUMMER ( <i>a toy maker</i> )	Mr. Arthur Bouchier.
BERTHA ( <i>his blind daughter</i> ) ..	Miss Violet Vanburgh.
EDWARD ( <i>his son</i> ) .. ..	Mr. Frank Mills.
TACKLETON ( <i>of Gruff and Tackle-</i> <i>ton—his employer</i> ) .. ..	Mr. Jerrold Robertshaw

## The Christmas Books

JOHN PEERYBINGLE ( <i>a Carrier</i> )	Mr. J. H. Barnes.
MARY ( <i>his wife, known as "Dot"</i> )	Miss Jessie Bateman.
MAY ( <i>her daughter</i> ) .. ..	Miss Elfrida Clement.
TILLY SLOWBOY .. ..	Miss Lizzie Webster.

### IMMORTALS.

THE FAIRY HOME	..	..	Miss Dorothy Grimston.	
CRICKET	..	( <i>Attendant Fairies</i> )	{	Miss Empsie Bowman.
MOONBEAM				Miss Madge Titheradge
KETTLE	..			Master Restall.
CRADLE	..			Master Cane.
OBERON	..	..	..	Miss Annie Mildmay.
TITANIA	..	..	..	Miss Margery Fane.
ARIEL	..	..	..	Miss Nellie Sidney.
PUCK	..	..	..	Master Thomas Lipton.

This was quite a delightful and attractive entertainment, based on the "Toole" play.

A new version of "Dot," by Mr. W. Teignmouth Shore, was an admirable piece at the Cripplegate Institute, December 22nd, 1908, when Mrs. J. T. Grein played the title *rôle*, with Mr. Louis Rihl as Caleb Plummer; Miss Vera Granville as blind Bertha, Mr. F. T. Harry as Tackleton, Miss May Daniel as Tilly, Mr. H. C. M. Reeve as the Stranger, Miss Kathleen Marriott as May, and Miss Connell as Mrs. Fielding, while last but not least the author, Mr. Shore, made a capital John Peerybingle.

Sir Alexander Mackenzie has written an opera called "The Cricket on the Hearth," and Carl Goldmark, the German composer, wrote the music

## Dickens and the Drama

to a German libretto in 1896. In 1900 this was first done in England at the Brixton Theatre with an English version by Percy Pinkerton. About 1893 Sir Frank Burnand prepared an operatic book for Edward Solomon, but nothing came of it, as the latter died. At Terry's Theatre, December 1st, 1906, another "Cricket," by W. H. C. Nation, was performed.

"The Battle of Life" was the next annual, but somehow neither as a book nor a play did it take the public taste. Dickens himself, although enthusiastic at first, seemed disappointed with his own labours. All the same, it is a pretty and powerful story of sisterly love and devotion, and at moments intensely dramatic. It would have made a bigger book; the canvas selected was not large enough for the picture. Lord Jeffrey accorded the highest praise to the little story, and said: "It is better than any other man alive could have written, and has passages as fine as anything that ever came from the man himself. . . ."

Albert Smith, the author of "The Marquis of Brinvilliers," "Christopher Tadpole," and many other books and adaptations, prepared "The Battle of Life" for the Lyceum with the novelist's own consent, and he travelled expressly from Paris to attend the rehearsals. He was very disappointed

## The Christmas Books

with everything apparently. Writing to his wife from Lincoln's Inn Fields on December 21st, 1846, he said. "I really am bothered to death by this confounded dramatisation of the Christmas Book. They were in a state so horrible at Keeley's yesterday . . . that I was obliged to engage to read the book to them this morning. . . . Unless I had come to London, I do not think there would have been much hope of the version being more than just tolerated, even that doubtful. All the actors bad, all the business frightfully behind hand, the very words of the book confused in the copying into the densest and most insufferable nonsense. I must exempt, however, from the general slackness, both the Keeleys. I hope they will be very good. I have never seen anything of its kind better than the manner in which they played the little supper scene between Clemency and Britain yesterday. It was quite perfect even to me." However, the play went very well when the drama in three acts was produced at the Lyceum Theatre, December 21st, 1846. The drama was specially taken from the novel for Mr. and Mrs. Keeley, who received the highest praise from the *Times* and *Athenæum*, especially for the supper scene that so greatly took Dickens's fancy. Supporting the Keeleys were such well-known people as Frank Matthews as Dr. Jeddler; Leigh

## Dickens and the Drama

Murray as Alfred Heathfield ; F. Vining as Michael Warden ; Miss Ellen Daly as Grace Jeddler ; and Mrs. Woollidge as Mrs. Snitchey. Mr. Meadows was Mr. Snitchey, with several others.

Edmund Yates, in his "Recollections and Experiences," speaks very highly of Robert Keeley as an actor and as a man, blessed with much common sense and mother wit. He was also a fairly well-read man. In private, as in public, his utterances were given forth with an extraordinary stolidity of manner and expression, which rendered them doubly amusing. "He had a great vein of shrewd, sensible humour," says Yates. "Standing one day at a window of the Swan Inn at Thames Ditton, looking at the ducks wending their way across the lawn in a pouring shower, loudly quacking their delight, Keeley softly muttered under his breath : 'Ha ! Ha ! damned fools ! you don't think how this rain will make the green peas grow !' "

It was during the reign of the Keeleys at the Lyceum that Richard Brinsley Peake, who was connected with the business department of the theatre, had several of his farces produced. Of one of his plays Shirley Brooks used to tell a ridiculous *non sequitur* story : "Who do you say is the author of this farce ? " asked an elderly playgoer. "Dickey



SCENE FROM "THE BATTLE OF LIFE," AT THE LYCEUM THEATRE, 1846. MRS. KEELEY  
AS CLEMENCY AND MR. KEELEY AS BRITAIN.

[To face p. 210.]





## The Christmas Books

Peake? Damned nonsense! he couldn't write a farce! *I knew his father!*"

Yet "Dicky" Peake managed to turn out something like fifty pieces, including an adaptation of Samuel Warren's great story, "Ten Thousand a Year," for Frederick Yates at the Adelphi Theatre.

Albert Smith, who did many adaptations for the Lyceum, married, by the way, the Keeleys' youngest daughter Mary, while Montague Williams married her sister Louise.

Edward Stirling did a "Battle of Life" for the Surrey in January, 1847, while one was given the same month at the City of London with Mrs. Honner as Clemency. Charles Dickens the younger also dramatised the tale, and John Hollingshead produced it at the Gaiety, December 23rd, 1873.

### THE BATTLE OF LIFE,

BEN BRITAIN	..	..	..	Mr. J. L. Toole.
DR. JEDDLER	..	..	..	Mr. John Maclean.
ALFRED HEATHFIELD	..	..	..	Mr. Charles Neville.
MICHAEL WARDEN	..	..	..	Mr. Charles Harcourt.
SNITCHEY	..	..	..	Mr. Lionel Brough.
CRAGGS	..	..	..	Mr. E. Butler.
CLEMENCY NEWCOME	..	..	..	Miss Nelly Farren.
GRACE JEDDLER	..	..	..	Miss Constance Loseby.
MARION	..	..	..	Miss Carlisle.
MRS. SNITCHEY	..	..	..	Miss Ewell.
MRS. CRAGGS	..	..	..	Miss Jolly.
AUNT MARTHA	..	..	..	Mrs. Ball.

## Dickens and the Drama

This was fairly well criticised, but did not achieve the position of revival. Previously, Mr. W. H. C. Nation produced "The Battle of Life" at Astley's Theatre.

On December 6th, 1898, Walter Ellis and Percy Greenwood had their version played at the Royalty Theatre under the title of

### MARION,

DR. JEDDLER .. ..	Mr. J. G. Taylor.
ALFRED .. ..	Mr. Herbert Terry.
MICHAEL WARDEN .. ..	Mr. J. C. Beresford.
SNITCHEY .. ..	Mr. E. B. Payne.
BEN BRITAIN .. ..	Mr. Percy Greenwood.
GRACE .. ..	Miss Victoria Wright.
MRS. SNITCHEY .. ..	Miss Edith Milton.
MRS. CRAGGS .. ..	Miss Blanche Eversleigh.
CLEMENCY NEWCOME ..	Miss Ruby Hallier.
MARION .. ..	Miss Sidney Crowe.

Other plays called "The Battle of Life" were performed at the Adelphi, Liverpool, August 6th, 1894, and at the Bijou, Bayswater, March, 1901.

"La Bataille de la Vie," from "The Battle of Life," in three acts, by MM. Mélosville and Andre de Goy, was presented at the Vaudeville Theatre in Paris, September 3rd, 1853.

The next Christmas piece was "The Haunted Man," in 1848, which as a story had a large sale, but as a play was never particularly attractive. It

## The Christmas Books

was dramatised and acted at the Adelphi soon after its publication, and revived at the Adelphi, July 10th, 1863, when Mr. Toole as Tetterby was excellent.

A writer in 1870, speaking of "The Haunted Man," said: "At the Adelphi and the Polytechnic Institute this story, by the aid of the patent "Pepper's Ghost apparatus," was produced some three or four years since, and excited considerable attention, and the satisfactory result, in a monetary sense, was testified by the fact of the numerous audiences at each representation."

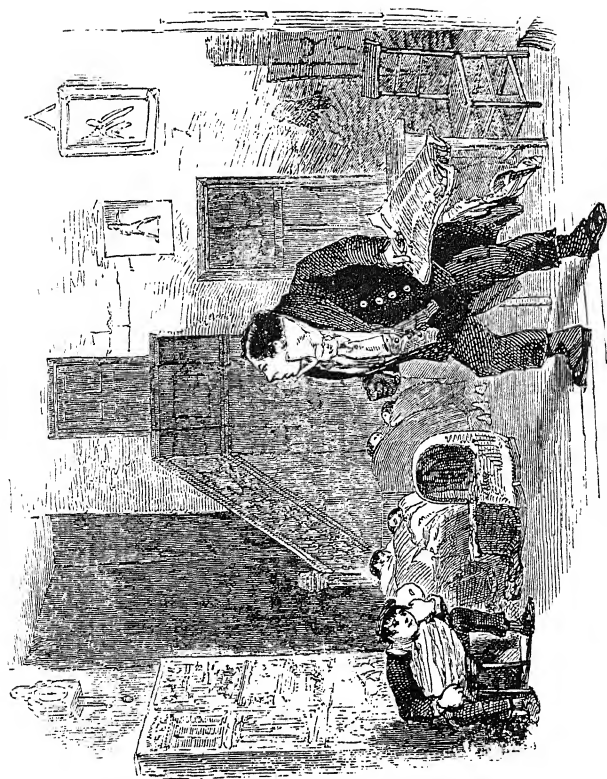
In the original 1848 cast, Edward Wright and Mrs. Fitzwilliam were the Mr. and Mrs. Tetterby, and Miss Woolgar was a delightful Milly. O. Smith created a very weird effect as the ghost. Mark Lemon was responsible for the dramatisation, which on all hands was voted clever, and it had a fair success. Redlaw, the Haunted Man, is a creation of a sad and sombre hue. The most genial parts are the accounts of Tetterby, the struggling newsvendor, and his family, not forgetting Johnny and the Moloch baby, Sally.

It was played again at Christmas, 1849. The Christmas number of "Household Words" entitled "The Seven Poor Travellers" appeared in December, 1854. This was inspired by a visit to the celebrated Watts Charity at Rochester for six poor travellers to

## Dickens and the Drama

have "Gratis for one Night, Lodging, Entertainment and Fourpence each." Dickens and Mark Lemon visited the place, May 11th, 1854. The seventh traveller was Dickens himself. He wrote the first and second chapters and the last one. I trace a dramatic version to J. B. Johnstone, author of the "Gipsy Farmer," and "How we Live in the World of London," called by Dickens's title, and it was played in 1856 at the Strand Theatre. Then there was "The Dead Witness ; or, Sin and its Shadow," a drama in three acts, founded on "The Widow's Story," one of the chapters in the book which was not written by Dickens himself, although credited to him by the dramatist. This was first produced, according to the book of the play, at the Theatre Royal, Sheffield, under the management of Mr. Charles Pitt. There is no date given, but it would be between 1862 and 1865, when Mr. Reeve was manager for Mr. Pitt. It is very sensational and is in nine scenes. Another, "The Seven Poor Travellers," by C. Duval, was given at the Theatre Royal, Blackburn, January 11th, 1869.

"The Holly Tree" was the Christmas Story in "Household Words" for 1855. On Monday December 31st, a drama called "Holly Tree Inn," in one act, "adapted from Dickens by Benjamin Webster" was performed for the first time at the



SCENE FROM "THE HAUNTED MAN," AT THE ADELPHI THEATRE, 1848.

[To face p. 214.



## The Christmas Books

Adelphi with Benjamin Webster as Cobbs, supported by Parselle as George the Guest; J. G. Shore as Mr. Walmers, the father; Robert Romer as Sam Tattenhall, the Landlord; Waye as Isaac the Ostler; Pouran as Tom the Waiter, and Messrs. Hastings, Honey, and Sanders in the small parts. Harry was played by Master Powell, and Norah by Miss Thompson. I have reason to believe this was Miss Lydia Thompson, who had already appeared as a child dancer at Her Majesty's Theatre in 1852, and as a child actress at the Haymarket, 1852, in "Little Silverhair," and again in 1854. Mrs. Tattenhall the Landlady, was taken by Mrs. Lelachere, and the Barmaid by Miss Laidlaw. In the *Era* for Sunday, January 13th, 1856, there was a criticism of the second play, which began: "Strand—A new drama, under the designation of 'The Holly Tree Inn' by Mr. J. B. Johnstone, was produced here last Monday." That would be the seventh. The theatre was under the management of Mr. T. Payne, and in the cast, as advertised, were Messrs. Basil Potter, G. Cooke, Kinloch, Clarke, Hall, and Johnstone; Mesdames Herbert, Barrett, Somers, Stevens, and Master and Miss Edouin. These were the late Willie Edouin and his sister who is still with us. This was Miss Louisa Herbert's first appearance in London. She was later quite a favourite actress, and for some time



## Dickens and the Drama

was manageress of the St. James's Theatre. Both plays proved highly attractive to the holiday folk.

Another "Holly Tree Inn" was given at the Grecian, February 27th, 1856.

At Terry's Theatre "The Holly Tree," adapted by Mrs. Oscar Beringer, was played first on January 15th, 1891, and revived December 28th, 1896. On the first occasion the parts were distributed as follows: Harry, Vera Beringer; Nora, Minnie Terry, both delightful. The Jabez Cobb of Ernest Hendrie was Dickens to the life, and Mr. H. Reeves Smith made a capital Captain Walmers. On the occasion of the revival, Master Stewart-Dawson and Miss Valli-Valli played the two children, while George Belmore was Cobbs, and Miss Kate Mills, Mrs. Cobbs.

In 1860, Charles Dickens's Christmas offering was "A Message from the Sea." This was really the joint work of Dickens and Wilkie Collins—two of the most dissimilar writers that ever lived—and the two authors travelled into Devonshire and Cornwall for local colour, the scene being laid in Clovelly. The greater part of the tale is decidedly by Dickens. One of the characters, Captain Jorgan, was drawn from an American seaman, Captain Morgan, to whom the novelist wrote: "Here and there, in the description of the sea-going hero, I have given a touch or two of remembrance of

## The Christmas Books

Somebody you know ; very heartily desiring that thousands of people may have some faint reflection of the pleasure I have for many years derived from the contemplation of a most amiable nature and most remarkable man."

It was clearly Dickens's intention to collaborate with Wilkie Collins in turning the story into a play, as in the British Museum there is a small eight-page brochure which traces the plot and action of Acts I. and II., and then : " Act the Third passes in Tregarthen's cottage at Steepways and the story is unravelled as in the Christmas number of ' All the Year Round,' embodying the scenes in Chapter V., ' The Restitution,' and ending with the villagers all coming in and cheering Captain Jorgan on his departure for America as heartily as they execrated him in Act I." The title page runs thus :

A MESSAGE FROM THE SEA

*A Drama in Three Acts*

by

CHARLES DICKENS

and

WILKIE COLLINS

*An Outline of the Plot.*

LONDON : Published by G. Holsworth  
At the office of " All the Year Round "  
Wellington Street, Strand.

1861.

## Dickens and the Drama

Then the cast of the nine characters is given, which I reproduce as a curiosity.

### PERSONS OF THE DRAMA.

CAPTAIN JORGAN (*part owner and commander of an American Liner*).

HUGH RAYBROCK (*second mate of merchantman—supposed to be drowned*).

ALFRED RAYBROCK (*his younger brother*).

LAWRENCE CLISSOLD (*supercargo of a merchantman, formerly in the house of the Dringworth Brothers*).

TREGARTHEN (*steward of manor rights at Steepways, formerly also with Dringworth Brothers*).

TOM PETTIFER (*Captain Jorgan's steward*).

MRS. RAYBROCK (*mother of Hugh and Alfred*).

MARGARET (*married to Hugh*).

KITTY (*Tregarthen's daughter; betrothed to Alfred*).

Why this should be printed goodness only knows. I cannot trace the play. Nor does Forster mention it or even the story in his "Life of Dickens."

A drama, however, was constructed out of the plot by John Brougham. It was in four acts and was first performed in America in 1860, and in London at the Britannia Theatre in 1861, and I fancy it has often been revived at various outlying theatres, though I have no exact data to go upon. There are thirteen characters in John Brougham's production, and as many scenes. It reads well. At the Britannia the players were Messrs. F. Wilton, F. Marchant, J. Reynolds, T. G. Drummond, S.

## The Christmas Books

Sidney, W. Crawford, M. Smythson, and D. Stewart ; Mrs. W. Newham, Miss E. Clayton, and Mrs. E. Yarnold.

Another play on the same subject was produced at the Prince of Wales's Theatre, Birmingham, August 30th, 1869.

On February 1st, 1873, "A Message from the Sea" was presented at the Surrey Theatre. No author's name is given, but as Miss Virginia Blackwood was the manageress of the theatre, I expect it was the handiwork of her husband, Murray Wood. This was revived at Astley's Theatre, October 14th, 1878.

HUGH RAYBROCK	..	..	Mr. Nelson Wheatcroft.
SILAS JORGAN	..	..	Mr. G. Murray Wood.
TOM PETTIFER	..	..	Mr. Harry Cornwall.
LAWRENCE CLISSOLD	..	..	Mr. H. Monte.
ALFRED RAYBROCK	..	..	Mr. Frank Cates.
MR. TREGARTHEN	..	..	Mr. Edward Chamberlaine.
MRS. RAYBROCK	..	..	Miss Fanny Wright.
KITTY TREGARTHEN	..	..	Miss Hilda Dunbar.
MARGARET RAYBROCK	..	..	Miss Emilie Blackwood.
MOG	..	..	Miss Virginia Blackwood,

That exceedingly careful writer on Dickens, Mr. J. W. T. Ley, says : " Of the various adaptations of Dickens's books in which Mr. Toole appeared, there is not, so far as we know, any complete list, but he

## Dickens and the Drama

appeared in versions of every one of the five Christmas books." And then he names the characters, of all of which I have treated. Mr. Ley adds that Caleb Plummer was Mr. Toole's first departure "from pure comedy." Mr. Ley means "farce." In Mr. Toole's "Reminiscences," edited by Joseph Hatton, the late homely comedian says: "I read Dickens, and tried at home and while about in the streets to put myself in the position of Caleb. I think I succeeded in getting inside the part. I know I felt for the sufferings of the poor old chap and did my best to make my audience feel them, and if applause was any criterion that I had satisfied them, I had plenty of it, a very hearty call at the close, and next day the highest commendations of the Press."

Several of Dickens's Christmas Books have been converted into cantatas and plays with music for amateur performance, but it is not always possible to trace these works. One very creditable piece, however, deserves more than passing mention. It is entitled "A Christmas Carol: Being a Ghost Story in Four Staves, by Charles Dickens." This was arranged for dramatic representation by J. Edward Parrott, M.A., LL.B., with various old-time Christmas hymns and carols introduced at suitable places in the dialogue.

## CHAPTER XIII

### “DOMBEY AND SON”

WHEN Dickens's eldest son was attacked by scarlet fever he was in charge of his grandmother, Mrs. Hogarth, in Albany Street, Regent's Park, and when Mr. and Mrs. Dickens went to see their boy a small incident occurred that is worth recording. An elderly charwoman employed about the place had shown so much sympathy in the family trouble, that Mrs. Hogarth specially told her of the approaching visit, and who it was that was coming to the sick-room. “Lawk, ma'am!” she said. “Is the young gentleman upstairs the son of the man that put together ‘Dombey’?” Reassured upon this point, she explained her question by declaring that she never thought there was one man that *could* put together “Dombey.” Being further pressed as to what her notion was of this mystery of a Dombey (for it was known she could not read), it turned out that she lodged at a snuff shop kept by a person named Douglas, where there were several other lodgers; and that on the first Monday of

## Dickens and the Drama

every month there was a Tea, and the landlord read the month's number of "Dombey;" those only of the lodgers who subscribed to the tea partaking of that luxury, but all having the benefit of the reading; and the impression produced on the old charwoman revealed itself in the remark with which she closed her account of it. "Lawk, ma'am! I thought that three or four men at least must have put together 'Dombey'!" Dickens thought there was something of a compliment in this, and was very gratified.

It has been usually said that "Dombey and Son" is the least popular of the novelist's works, and it is generally conceded that the descriptions of high life are somewhat forced. To tell the truth, Dickens was not happy in his depictions of aristocratic people, and neither his men nor his women in the "upper circles" are well drawn. However, the book is full of admirable characters—especially the whimsical and extravagant. Little Paul and the immortal Captain Cuttle—"when found make a note of"—are the two best characters in the book. But Mr. Toots is a gem, and then there are Perch the messenger and his prolific progeny; the terrible Mrs. Mac-Stinger, the delightful Susan Nipper, Major Joe Bagstock and many others, and the very lovable Florence. Carker is a villain, certainly, of the

## “Dombey and Son”

deepest dye, while Dombey himself is a cruel brute, detested of all.

There was no real run on “Dombey and Son” for the theatre, though scrappy pieces were presented at Sadler’s Wells, and the Surrey, the managements chiefly relying upon the magic name of Dickens, in very large type, to draw the always uncertain public.

The first dramatisation of “Dombey and Son” was first produced at the Strand Theatre on Monday night, August 2nd, 1847. A notice of the piece appeared in the *Theatrical Times* for August 14th. “The prestige attached to this house, in connexion with the works of Charles Dickens, dramatically illustrated, is of very long standing. Hammond’s Sam Weller is still fresh in the recollection of the town, and ‘Martin Chuzzlewit’ had a run which, for many weeks, sustained the falling fortunes of the establishment, when under the management of Roberts. We were not, therefore, surprised at the announcement made by the present indefatigable lessee, that ‘Dombey and Son,’ the latest serial by Boz, was about to be presented, albeit a more difficult story for the purposes of the playwright could scarcely have been selected. The most we can expect in a dramatised novel is to see some of the best and most stirring scenes taken out, and



## Dickens and the Drama

the engravings realised in the shape of *tableaux*; and Dickens owes no little of his success as an author to the skill of the adaptors of his works." I have italicised the last sentence as being one of the most astounding and ridiculous statements ever made. To resume. "'Dombey and Son' was produced here on Monday. The original work not being yet concluded by the author, Mr. T. P. Taylor, the adapter, has had to exercise his ingenuity for the catastrophe. We will not say that he has anticipated Mr. Dickens, but his concluding scenes are highly creditable; though we shall not trespass upon the time of our readers by describing the plot, advising them to witness and judge for themselves. A few remarks occur to us as to the principal characters:—Mr. C. Williams made an efficient Mr. Dombey, and Mr. Reeves showed, by his representation of Carker, that he was well studied in the character of the wily manager of Dombey and Son. Mr. Tyrrel was rather stickish, and a great deal too plausible as Walter Gay; Mr. Huntly is a low comedian of merit, but Major Bagstock is above his grasp; Mr. Rogerson made the most of Captain Cuttle; Solomon Gills is a part well suited to Mr. Ayliffe; Mr. Richardson was created for Rob the Grinder. The ladies follow, and here we must pay a tribute to the artistic acting of Mr. Harwood

## “Dombey and Son”

Cooper as Good Mrs. Brown ; it was the best sustained character in the piece. Miss Marian Atkins looked and played the haughty beauty, Edith Granger, remarkably well. Mrs. H. Hearne made an amusing Susan Nipper ; and Florence Dombey found an efficient representation in Miss Coleman. The whole of the performers seemed to exert themselves to the utmost ; and it is due to the efficient management of Mr. Cooper to state that the piece is put upon the stage with the greatest taste and care. The theatre is well attended. An amusing ballet, in which Stilt (from Sadler's Wells) appears, has filled the house at half-price.” This strikes one as being a very good theatrical picture of the period.

“Dombey's” second appearance on the London stage was at the Marylebone Theatre in June, 1849. “The story was cleverly dramatised and well represented . . . and its success was in proportion to its merits.”

When this play was published it was called “Dombey and Son ; or, Good Mrs. Brown, the Child Stealer. A Drama in Two Acts. From the Pen of the inimitable Charles Dickens, Esqre. As performed at the Strand Theatre.” There is one illustration to this precious fraud, depicting “Mrs. Brown, the Child Stealer, proving the innocence of

## Dickens and the Drama

Walter Gay, and accusing Carker of forgery," and many liberties were taken with Dickens's plot.

John Brougham provided a four-act drama called "Dombey and Son" for Burton's Theatre, New York, in 1848, as soon as the work was issued in its completed form, and undertook the part of Major Bagstock and Jack Bunsby himself, while his wife played Susan Nipper. Mr. W. E. Burton, the proprietor of the theatre, was the Captain Cuttle, and Mrs. Burton, Florence Dombey.

Joseph Jefferson, in his "Autobiography," says : "The production at Burton's Theatre of 'Dombey and Son,' by Mr. Brougham, was a curious combination of failure and success. Much was expected of Burton's Captain Cuttle, and to the surprise of the expectant critics and of Burton himself he did nothing with it." Many reasons are given for Burton's failure—and Burton was a great "star" in his day, who, dismayed at his own non-success, and mortified at young Raymond's leap forward, took the drama from the bills. Raymond had made his mark as Toots. Then he went to work to study the part properly and made a magnificent hit, and according to Jefferson he was "perfect" in a new version which he and Brougham concocted together. This version, published by French, soon got to London, and was acted "everywhere." Then Brougham set

## “Dombey and Son”

to work and made another play which was called “Captain Cuttle,” a comic drama in one act, being more scenes from the novel of “Dombey and Son.” This went into the bills of Burton’s Theatre, New York, January 14th, 1850, and was a complete success. Different scenes were relied upon, and the whole of the MacStinger family were introduced. W. E. Burton was, of course, Captain Cuttle; John Brougham, Jack Bunsby; Mrs. Vernon, Mrs. MacStinger; Mrs. Brougham, The Nipper; and Oliver Raymond in his creation of Toots. The late Sir Henry Irving played Mr. Dombey in this drama when it was first presented in Manchester in 1867.

There is no gainsaying the fact that in the country “Dombey and Son” proved very attractive for a long time, crude as it was. The very best dramatisation, however, was that arranged by Andrew Halliday called “Heart’s Delight,” and produced at the Globe Theatre, Newcastle Street, Strand, December 17th, 1873, then under the management of H. J. Montague. Mr. J. C. Cowper undertook the characters of Mr. Dombey and Jack Bunsby; James Fernandez that of Carker; H. J. Montague, Walter Gay and Mr. Toots; Sam Emery, Captain Cuttle; Howard, Sol Gills; A. Deane, Rob the Grinder; J. H. Allen, Brogley; Miss Carlotta

## Dickens and the Drama

Addison made a charming Florence; Miss Helen Barry a stately Edith Dombey, and Miss Maria Daly a quaint Susan Nipper. The best performance of all, however, was that of Sam Emery as Captain Cuttle. A critic wrote at the time: "When Mr. Emery comes rolling on to the stage, made up to the very life after the pictures by 'Phiz,' with the rubicund face and the bald pate, the coarse canvas open shirt, and the hook instead of a right hand, the roar that greets the favourite shows that half the actor's work is over. He looks the part, and there is no prejudice on that account." Mr. Emery's impersonation was one of his greatest artistic achievements, fit to rank with his Dan'l Peggotty. Mr. Emery was the original Jonas Chuzzlewit, Will Fern, and John Peerybingle.

From America in the fall of 1880 came Mr. and Mrs. W. J. Florence, who were great favourites in their own country, to the Gaiety, with John Brougham's "Captain Cuttle" and "The Mighty Dollar." The first-named piece was revived on November 20th. Mr. Florence's impersonation was faithful to the novel, and he exhibited no less humour than he did as the Hon. Bardwell Slote. He was well supported by an English company—"John Hollingshead's own"—which included Charles Fawcett, J. L. Shine, Tom Squire, Fred Hughes,

## “Dombey and Son”

Berte Coote, Mrs. Leigh, Myra Holme (now Lady Pinero), Miss Amalia and Constance Gilchrist, who has long been the Countess Orkney. *Punch* said of the entertainment: “‘Dombey and Son’ was reduced to Florence. Florence appeared as Captain Cuttle twice, and has now disappeared altogether.” I don’t understand what this means. But to resume. “As Cuttle he was very funny; he was the well-known pictorial Cuttle down to the ground, and so Phiz-ically he was ‘Cuttle.’” Mr. Florence was a genial man and made himself very popular in the upper Bohemia of London. He died almost suddenly ten years after his sojourn in the Strand.

On his visit to America “Charles Dickens,” said the *Philadelphia Morning Post*, “while in this city, was very anxious to purchase Mr. James Hamilton’s painting entitled ‘What are the Wild Waves Saying?’ But as this beautiful work, one of the artist’s best, was already sold, Mr. Dickens requested that he might see the original sketch, with which he was so greatly pleased that he insisted upon buying it. Mr. Hamilton refused to sell the sketch, but presented it to Mr. Dickens. The other day, the artist received from Mr. Dickens an exquisite edition of his novels, accompanied by the following autograph: ‘Gad’s-Hill Place, Hingham by Rochester, Kent,

## Dickens and the Drama

Monday, Twenty-fifth May, 1868, to Mr. James Hamilton, this set of my books with thanks and regards.—Charles Dickens.’ ” It is certain that Charles Dickens’s genius never suggested a more imaginative picture than this masterpiece, and his appreciation of James Hamilton could not have been more delicately shown.

“ What are the Wild Waves Saying? ” was written as a vocal duet by J. E. Carpenter, with music by Stephen Glover, who also composed an answer to it, called “ A Voice from the Waves.”

I note a drama called “ Little Paul,” by Walter Stephens (who dramatised “ Edwin Drood ” and other Dickens books), produced at the Lyceum Theatre, Rochester, March 6th, 1871.

“ Heart’s Delight ” was revived at the Crystal Palace, November 11th, 1882, supported as below :

MR. DOMBEY	..	..	..	Mr. Stewart Dawson.
CAPTAIN CUTTLE	..	..	..	Mr. E. D. Lyons.
SOL GILLS	..	..	..	Mr. Laurence Grey.
TOOTS	..	..	..	Mr. Arthur Williams.
WALTER GAY	..	..	..	Mr. H. Reeves Smith.
CARKER	..	..	..	Mr. E. F. Edgar.
JACK BUNSBY	..	..	..	Mr. Arthur Wood.
FLORENCE DOMBEY	..	..	..	Miss Kate Rorke.
EDITH	..	..	..	Miss Sophie Eyre.
SUSAN	..	..	..	Miss Nellie Bouverie.

Mention must be made of “ The House of Dom-

## “Dombey and Son”

bey,” by Mrs. Teignmouth Shore and Mr. Walter Dexter, done at the Cripplegate Institute on November 3rd, 1905, with considerable success. Then, on October 24th, 1908, when quite another run on Dickens took place, Mr. Charles Cartwright produced “Dombey and Son” at the Theatre Royal, Bradford.

### DOMBEY AND SON.

CAPTAIN CUTTLE	..	..	Mr. Charles Cartwright.
MAJOR BAGSTOCK	..	..	Mr. Charles Collette.
MR. TOOTS	..	..	Mr. A. B. Tapping.
MR. DOMBEY	..	..	Mr. Arthur Royston.
CARKER	..	..	Mr. M. A. Wetherell.
WALTER	..	..	Mr. H. Warden.
SOL GILLS	..	..	Mr. Edgar Coyne.
ROB THE GRINDER	..	..	Miss M. Sievier.
NATIVE	..	..	Mr. C. Bigwood.
M. BLAME	..	..	Mr. Letchworth.
FRANCOIS	..	..	Mr. Maclachan.
A SAILOR	..	..	Mr. Ben Wood.
MRS. SKEWTON	..	..	Miss Ada Palmer.
FLORENCE DOMBEY	..	..	Miss May Yates.
GIPSY	..	..	Miss H. Francks.
SUSAN NIPPER	..	..	Miss Joan Derry.
EDITH DOMBEY	..	..	Miss E. Cartwright.

These “Cartwright” performances were admirable in every sense of the word.

“The Passing of Paul Dombey” was presented at the Borough Theatre, Stratford, April 22nd, 1910.



## CHAPTER XIV

### “DAVID COPPERFIELD”

CHARLES DICKENS confessed that this was his favourite amongst his own fictions—perhaps because there was so much of himself and of fact in it. “David Copperfield” has generally resolved itself into two classes of plays—one dealing with the Micawber incidents and the other the pathetically domestic, with Little Em’ly and the rugged Peggotty as a striking background. Thackeray, in his “Sketches and Travels in London,” gives this most delightful eulogium of this really autobiographical novel. “‘Have you read “David Copperfield,” by the way?’ says Brown in the Club Library. ‘How beautiful it is—how charmingly fresh and simple! In those admirable touches of tender humour—and I shall call humour tender, Bob—a mixture of love and wit—who can equal this great genius? There are little words and phrases in his books to hold in the affections of man! What an awful responsibility there is hanging over a writer! What man holding such a place,

## “David Copperfield”

and knowing that his words go forth to vast congregations of mankind—to grown folks, to their children, and perhaps their children’s children—but must think of his calling with a solemn and humble heart. May love and truth guide such a man always. It is an awful prayer; may heaven further its fulfilment.’” This was written over sixty years ago!

The eldest son of Charles Dickens wrote a few years since: “Of stage versions of ‘Copperfield’ there appear to have been only two of any importance; one by the customary John Brougham, which was played in America, and one by Andrew Halliday, which was first produced on the 9th October, 1869, by Mrs. Liston at the Olympic Theatre with great success. This version, which was called ‘Little Em’ly’ and was a remarkably good adaptation in itself, enjoyed the advantage of being excellently played by Sam Emery as Peggotty, Joseph Irving, a clever young actor of character parts, whose premature death was a great loss to the stage, as Uriah Heep; John Nelson as Ham; Miss Fanny Addison as Rosa Dartle, and Miss Ewell as Mrs. Gummidge, to mention only a few names of an unusually competent cast. The performance was thoroughly satisfactory to Charles Dickens, whose cordial and cheery congratulations to Andrew

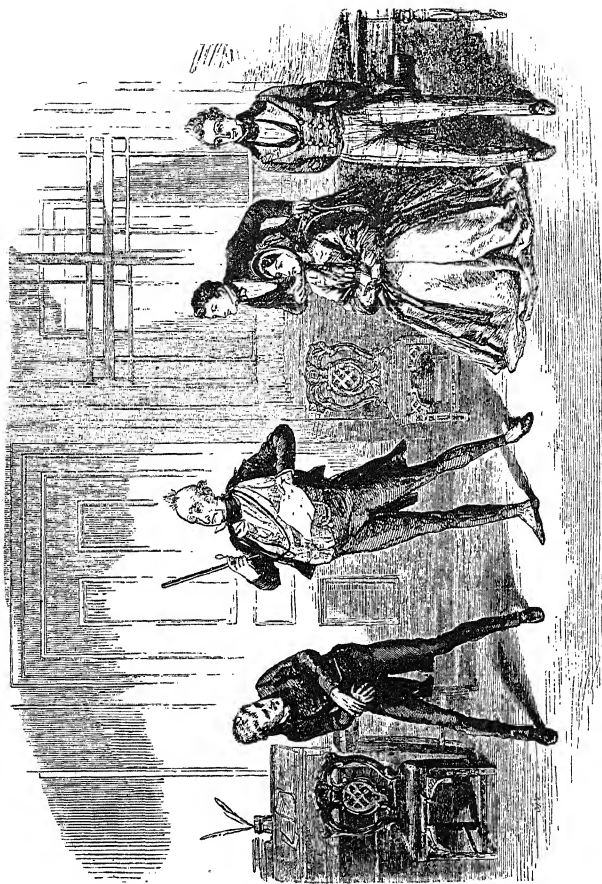
## Dickens and the Drama

Halliday I well remember hearing." I may add to this by stating that George Fawcett Rowe, who played Micawber to the life, was an Australian actor who made a considerable reputation in America. He was also a dramatist and wrote amongst other pieces "Freedom," which the late Sir Augustus Harris produced at Drury Lane Theatre, August 4th, 1883; but long previously to this, in 1877, in fact, he wrote a play called "Brass," with which he toured the country and also brought to the Haymarket, London, August 13th, 1877, after its initial production at the Alexandra Theatre, Liverpool, in the year named. He made his first mark in Australia as far back as 1854. In London his greatest hit was as Micawber in "Little Em'ly," where he was surrounded by a "galaxy of talent," as hereunder may be judged.

OLYMPIC THEATRE, OCTOBER 9TH, 1869.

"LITTLE EM'LY," BY ANDREW HALLIDAY.

PEGGOTTY	..	..	..	Mr. Sam Emery.
MICAWBER	..	..	..	Mr. Geo. F. Rowe.
URIAH HEEP	..	..	..	Mr. Joseph Irving.
WICKFIELD	..	..	..	Mr. W. Roberts.
TRADDLES	..	..	..	Mr. H. St. Maur.
STEERFORTH	..	..	..	Mr. Chas. Warner.
DAVID COPPERFIELD	..	..	..	Mr. H. Vaughan.
HAM	..	..	..	Mr. John Nelson.
LITTLE EM'LY	..	..	..	Miss Patty Josephs.
AGNES WICKFIELD	..	..	..	Miss Jessie Earle.



SCENE FROM "LITTLE EM'LY," AT THE OLYMPIC THEATRE, 1869.

[To face p. 234.



## “David Copperfield”

MRS. GUMMIDGE	..	..	Miss Ewell.
MARTHA ...	..	..	Miss Mattie Reinhardt.
ROSA DARTLE	..	..	Miss Fanny Addison.
MRS. MICAWBER	..	..	Miss Lee.
BETSEY TROTWOOD	..	..	Mrs. Poynter.
PEGGOTTY BARKIS	..	..	Miss Griffith.

A little later, H. B. Conway played the part of David Copperfield. “Mr. Rowe’s acting had much to do with the undoubted success that attended the production of Mr. Andrew Halliday’s adaptation of ‘David Copperfield,’ called ‘Little Em’ly.’ The excellence of Miss Ernstone in the character of Martha on this occasion attracted the notice of Dickens himself, and he personally expressed his appreciation of it.” This latter from Mr. T. Edgar Pemberton’s book. I find more than one reference to Dickens’s admiration for her conception of the part and his general appreciation of the whole production.

The eccentric character of Micawber has naturally been a very popular one with comedians. It has been quaintly played by Edward Terry at the Olympic, with Mr. E. W. Royce as Uriah Heep. This must have been in the late seventies or early eighties. Mr. Terry has also played Peggotty here. Mr. Terry has also ever been great as Serjeant Buzfuz at benefit matinees. Charles Collette, who had a play practically written round Micawber with which he

## Dickens and the Drama

toured the provinces also did a season with it at the old Imperial Theatre, Westminster. David Fisher, James Fernandez, and the late Joseph Eldred, who was a trifle Micawberish in his make-up off the stage himself have all excelled in the part. Who that knew him does not remember Joseph Eldred and his marvellous cuffs? In a short account of his life in "The Dramatic List" it is stated that when the Olympic Theatre was opened in October, 1869, with "Little Em'ly" "Mr. Eldred appeared as Micawber," which is not correct—he did not act the part until 1873, and as already stated George Fawcett Rowe was the original. When the piece was revived in 1873—March 13th—Mr. Eldred played Mr. Micawber, and Sam Emery, Dan'l Peggotty again; William Rignold, Ham; H. B. Conway, David Copperfield; C. Peveril, Steerforth; George Canninge, Traddles; Mr. Graeme, Mr. Wickfield; Arthur Wood, Uriah Heep; Miss Marie Dalton, Little Em'ly; Miss C. Brabant, Agnes Wickfield; Miss Griffith, Peggotty Barkis; Miss Davis, Mrs. Gummidge; Miss Kate Rivers, Martha; Miss Fanny Addison, Rosa Dartle; Miss Jane Baker, Mrs. Micawber; and Miss Kate Manor, Betsey Trotwood. And of all this cast only one member is still alive—Mr. George Canninge. Two years later—October 30th, 1875, the drama

## “David Copperfield”

was again revived—this time at the Adelphi—with Sam Emery in his old character; W. MacIntyre, Ham; H. Vaughan (his original part), David Copperfield; Steerforth, Philip Day; Traddles, Walter Everard; Mr. Wickfield, H. Cooper; Uriah Heep, John Clarke; and Mr. Micawber, James Fernandez. Charming Lydia Foote—what an actress she was!—as Little Em’ly, and Cicely Nott as Mrs. Micawber, and Harriet Coveney, Betsey Trotwood. Mr. James Fawn, it may be noted, was playing in the farces—the performances at the theatres in 1875 began at seven o’clock sharp—not 8.30 as now—and the admission to the gallery was—sixpence!

John Brougham’s adaptation was presented at his own Lyceum Theatre, New York, January 6th, 1851, with a comprehensive American cast. It was called “David Copperfield,” and Mr. Brougham played Micawber.

There is one other play that owes its life to “David Copperfield”—indeed I have seen it referred to as being one of the best versions, of certain portions, that has been done—and that is the “Deal Boatman,” by F. C. Burnand, first produced at Drury Lane Theatre, September 21st, 1863. It is true that the scene is laid at Deal, but Jacob Vance is twin brother to Peggotty, Mary Vance is half-sister to Little Em’ly, and Matt Bramber is Ham.



## Dickens and the Drama

For the rest the story is practically the same except that the end is different, and all is well. All the same, it is a good two-act drama. Clement Scott wrote, long after the event, "This was spoken of as creditable to Mr. Burnand, it being his first attempt at serious dramatic composition." George Belmore was the Jacob Vance—a sort of Robsonian character—G. Weston, Matt Bramber; F. Charles, Edward Leslie; George Barrett, Sir John Haughton; Mrs. Edmund Falconer was Mrs. Bridgitt, and Miss Rose Leclercq, Mary Vance. The piece was decidedly popular, and after the Drury Lane season George Belmore went to the City of London Theatre with the "Deal Boatman" for a month. In later years it was revived at the Adelphi, and also Sadler's Wells.

To go back a bit. At the Strand Theatre, October 29th, 1850, George Almar's adaptation was acted under the title of "Born with a Caul; or, the Personal Adventures of David Copperfield."

DAVID COPPERFIELD	..	..	Mr. H. Butler.
STEERFORTH	..	..	Mr. Basil Potter.
PEGGOTTY	..	..	Mr. James Johnstone.
HAM	..	..	Mr. Fortescue.
MURDSTONE	..	..	Mr. J. W. Simpson.
HURRICANE FLASH	..	..	Mr. George Almar.
WICKFIELD	..	..	Mr. Rogerson.
RICHARD BABBERLEY	..	..	Mr. Yarnold.
URIAH HEEP and MISS MOWCHER			Mr. W. Atwood.

## “David Copperfield”

MICAWBER	..	..	..	Mr. H. J. Turner.
BETSEY TROTWOOD	..	..	..	Mrs. Griffiths.
ROSA DARTLE	..	..	..	Miss Elphick.
AGNES	..	..	..	Miss Egan.
EMILY ( <i>sic</i> )	..	..	..	Miss Love.
MRS. MICAWBER	..	..	..	Miss Staylin.
MARTHA	...	..	..	Miss I. Simpson
DORA	..	..	..	Miss Manners.

Then at the Surrey, on the 18th of the next month (also at the Standard), “David Copperfield” with this cast was performed—

DAVID COPPERFIELD	..	..	..	Mr. W. Montague.
MURDSTONE	..	..	..	Mr. Charles Brille.
MR. DICK	..	..	..	Mr. Fitz Roy.
TRADDLES	..	..	..	Mr. John Parry.
PEGGOTTY	..	..	..	Mr. Thomas Mead.
HAM	..	..	..	Mr. J. W. Collier.
URIAH HEEP	..	..	..	Mr. Bruce Norton.
MICAWBER and MISS MOWCHER				Mr. Henry Widdicombe.
STEERFORTH	..	..	..	Mr. A. Raymond.
WICKFIELD	..	..	..	Mr. Fenton.
BETSEY TROTWOOD	..	..	..	Mrs. Johnstone.
AGNES	..	..	..	Miss Jane Coveney.
EMILY ( <i>sic</i> )	..	..	..	Miss Harriett Coveney.
MRS. BARKIS ( <i>sic</i> )	..	..	..	Miss La Porte.

I give these and the many other casts before they are altogether lost to the theatrical world.

Speaking of these theatrical annexations from “David Copperfield,” Theodore Taylor said, in 1870, in his “Life of Dickens”—the first to appear—“But the most successful of all was ‘The Deal

## Dickens and the Drama

Boatman,' at Drury Lane Theatre two or three years since, in two acts, by Mr. Burnand," which quite bears out what I have already said.

At the Grecian Theatre on October 3rd, 1870, "David Copperfield," announced as an American dramatisation, was served up in two acts for the inhabitants of the City Road and neighbourhood. Then at the Theatre Royal, Brighton "The Ark on the Sands," by Charles Rennell, was acted September 19th of the same year. "Little Em'ly's Trials," by E. H. Brooke, was done at Sadler's Wells, March 4th, 1871, and on March 8th, 1873, "Lost Em'ly," by Murray Wood, was presented with Miss Virginia Blackwood in the title *rôle* at the Surrey Theatre.

"Em'ly," by George Hamilton, was played at the Albion Theatre, April 30th, 1877, after which we must make a jump to 1880 when "Little Em'ly" was revived at the Standard Theatre on March 2nd, and played by Messrs. John and Richard Douglas's Stock Company. In this, Mr. Charles Collette took Mr. Micawber under his wing, with William MacIntyre as Peggotty; Charles Swan as Uriah Heep, and Misses Stella Brereton and Amy Steinberg as Little Em'ly and Martha. Afterwards the whole company went to the Park Theatre, Camden Town, a very popular house at one time. Charles Collette, in the spring of 1881, went on tour with a special

## “David Copperfield”

company including the above ladies, W. MacIntyre and J. G. Taylor, and Miss Fanny Addison as Rosa Dartle. Then the indefatigable Charles Collette arranged a comic drama in five scenes which he christened “Micawber,” and travelled through the provinces with it. This piece he brought to London and put it on at the Imperial Theatre, Westminster, in May, 1881.

A very capable combination of comedians next ventured a David Copperfield play—this, I fancy, was Andrew Halliday’s “Little Em’ly” from the Olympic.

DAVID COPPERFIELD	..	..	Mr. H. Reeves Smith.
TRADDLES	..	..	Mr. John Willes.
PEGGOTTY	..	..	Mr. E. D. Lyons.
HAM	..	..	Mr. Joseph Carne.
MICAWBER	..	..	Mr. Arthur Wood.
URIAH HEEP	..	..	Mr. Arthur Williams.
STEERFORTH	..	..	Mr. J. A. Rosier.
WICKFIELD	..	..	Mr. Burgoyne.
LITTLE EM’LY	..	..	Miss Kate Rorke.
AGNES	..	..	Miss Julia Roselle.
MARTHA	..	..	Miss Winifred Emery.
ROSA DARTLE	..	..	Miss Sophie Eyre.
MRS. MICAWBER	..	..	Miss Nellie Bouverie.
MRS. GUMMIDGE	..	..	Miss Ada Mellon.
BETSEY TROTWOOD	..	..	Mrs. Stephenson.
CLARA PEGGOTTY	..	..	Miss B. Stannard.

This was done at the Crystal Palace, November 7th, 1882.

## Dickens and the Drama

"Em'ly, or the Ark on the Sands," was another piece quite different from the one by Charles Rennell already mentioned, which had its initial performance at the Queen's Theatre, Manchester, March 10th, 1884.

In 1884, by the way, Mr. Fred Storey, the finest Rip Van Winkle since Jefferson, went on tour with a Dickens repertoire company, and undertook such characters as Dick Swiveller, Tackleton, The Dodger, Squeers, and Micawber.

Then for a few years comes a rest—in London, at any rate, but on August 1st, 1903, the management of the Adelphi put on "Em'ly," an adaptation of Charles Dickens's novel "David Copperfield" in four acts, by T. Gideon Warren and Ben Landeck.

DANIEL PEGGOTTY	..	..	Mr. Charles Cartwright.
HAM	..	..	Mr. Frank Cooper.
STEERFORTH	..	..	Mr. Ben Webster.
DAVID COPPERFIELD	..	..	Mr. Barrington Foote.
URIAH HEEP	..	..	Mr. Robb Harwood.
MR. WICKFIELD	..	..	Mr. Allen Thomas.
LITTIMER	..	..	Mr. Philip Darwin.
MICAWBER	..	..	Mr. Harry Nicholls.
MRS. STEERFORTH	..	..	Miss Kimberley.
ROSA DARTLE	..	..	Miss Nancy Price.
CLARA PEGGOTTY	..	..	Miss Bessie Harrison.
MRS. GUMMIDGE	..	..	Miss Caroline Ewell.
MARTHA	..	..	Miss May Munden.
AGNES WICKFIELD	..	..	Miss Maude Danks.
BETSEY TROTWOOD	..	..	Miss Agnes Thomas.
LITTLE EM'LY	..	..	Miss Madge Lessing.

## “David Copperfield”

Unfortunately this did not have a very long run, but, apparently undaunted, Mr. Charles Cartwright tried another version, this time by Mr. H. Kellett Chambers, and entitled “Dan’l Peggotty,” at the King’s Theatre, Hammersmith, March 11th, 1907. In the cast were Messrs. Charles Cartwright, Lionel Belmore, Gerald Lawrence, Stanley Harrison, Charles Collette, A. B. Tapping, J. D. Ross, and G. De Lara. Mesdames E. Sarjient, C. Selwynne, Helen Vicary, G. Walker, Nell Douglas, B. Grosvenor, L. Cavanagh and Ethel Ward.

This company went into the country with one or two changes, for instance Miss Edith Cartwright played Rosa.

In November of the same year, Mr. Collette, still playing Micawber, took charge of the company when he assigned the part of David Copperfield to a lady—for the first time, I believe—Miss Joan Derry, said to be the best boy impersonator on the stage. A condensed version of the drama, and entitled “Micawber,” was produced by Mr. Collette at the County Theatre, Kingston, November 9th, 1908, which he has since played all round the provinces.

There was a rumour that “David Copperfield” was to be produced in French at the Odeon. M. Max Maurey, the director of the Grand Guignol, was travelling in Switzerland early in June, 1908,

## Dickens and the Drama

reading "David Copperfield." "I was enjoying Dickens's work," said M. Maurey, "when I suddenly exclaimed half jokingly: 'What a glorious play one could make out of such a book.' 'All right,' returned Antoine, without even looking up from Marie Antoinette's 'Letters,' 'Write the play and I will bring it out next season at the Odeon,' and it was settled then and there." However, up to the present, the play has not been done in the French capital. But I have since learned from Mr. John N. Raphael that "David Copperfield" in ten tableaux really will be produced at the Odeon in May, 1911—perhaps before.

Mr. B. W. Matz has called my attention to the following astounding, if not paralysing announcement of an American play, which embellished the programme, sent him from Winnipeg. The play was performed at the Oliver Theatre, Lincoln, January, 1906. It is described as "A Great Scenic Melodrama," "A Hail Storm of Sensation," and "A Cyclone of Merriment." Mr. Matz, referring to it in the *Dickensian*, says, "Its title is 'What Women Will Do,' and it is written by Harry Jackson, whoever he may be. No one else is given any credit whatever for the production, although we find that the characters in it are Wilkins Micawber, Daniel Peggotty, *Hiram Peggotty*,

## “David Copperfield”

Uriah Heep, James Steerforth, David Copperfield, *Sheriff Dudley*, Em'ly, Rosa Dartle, *Mrs. Peggotty*, *Mrs. Micawber*, and *Wilkins Micawber, junr.* The synopsis of the story given follows, as such characters must, that of Dickens's book with 'Specialities,' introduced at a country dance and a scene in Em'ly's apartments in Paris. How *Mrs. Peggotty* is brought to life must be an American secret. The whole, on the face of it, suggests a 'penny plain and tuppenny coloured' melodrama of the direst pattern, and perhaps the author of it feels he cannot conscientiously associate Dickens with it. On the other hand, he may consider that it is all the fruit of his own brain and therefore ask, 'Why drag in Dickens?' which perhaps explains his ignoring him entirely."

The late Wilson Barrett also prepared a "David Copperfield" play, in which he purposed playing Ham, but his death in July, 1904, of course, put an end to all the preparations.

As recently as September, 1910, a Dutch version of David Copperfield was presented at Amsterdam. It was translated by Messrs. Schouwburg Stoel and Spree, and in it the twelve-year-old daughter of Heer Spree played David Copperfield; Tine V. d. Werf, Em'ly; Heer Marius Spree, Baas Peggotty; Heer Eylders, Ham, and Betsy Cremer, Clara Peggotty.



## CHAPTER XV

### “BLEAK HOUSE”

NATURALLY one would have thought that the dramatic consecutiveness and power of “Bleak House” would at once arrest the attention of the playwrights in 1852, when the story first began to appear, in the usual monthly numbers, in March, and continued until August, 1853. For in the very opening chapters there is a suggestion of strong human interest. And on the stage human interest is the *sine qua non*, if the great heart of the palpitating public is to be touched. Yet although the novel was highly popular, I have been unable to trace any adaptation of any importance until the year 1874, when, travelling, so to speak, to California, I find that Miss Jennie Lee, an English actress, chiefly known at the Strand Theatre, London as a “burlesque boy,” was appearing as Jo in her husband’s (J. P. Burnett’s) adaptation of “Bleak House.” In August, 1875, she returned with Mr. Burnett to London and played at the Surrey Theatre in the pantomime of “Jack the Giant Killer.”

## “Bleak House”

On November 8, “Jo” was, however, tried at the Prince of Wales’s Theatre, Liverpool. Then at the Globe Theatre on Monday, February 21st, 1876, she enacted in London the title rôle “Jo” from Dickens’s famous story. The *Athenæum* said that she acted the character with “a realism and a pathos difficult to surpass. A more striking revelation of talent has seldom been made. In get-up and in acting the character was thoroughly realised; and the hoarse voice, the slouching, dejected gait, and the movement as of some hunted animal, were admirably exhibited.” The cast is well worth preserving—

### JO

SIR LEICESTER DEDLOCK	..	Mr. E. Price.
MR. TULKINGHORN	..	Mr. J. P. Flockton.
MR. SNAGSBY	..	Mr. J. B. Rae.
MR. CHADBAND	..	Mr. Charles Wilmot.
MR. GUPPY	..	Mr. Charles Steyne.
MR. BUCKET	..	Mr. J. P. Burnett.
JO	..	Miss Jennie Lee.
LADY DEDLOCK	..	Miss Louise Hibbert.
ESTHER	..	Miss Nelly Harris.
MRS. ROUNCEWELL	..	Miss Robertson.
JENNY	..	Miss Vernon.
ROSA	..	Miss Norris.
GUSTER	..	Miss Kate Lee.
MRS. SNAGSBY	..	Miss Steele.
HORTENSE	..	Miss Dolores Drummond.

This was a most excellent drama, though Mr. Charles Dickens the younger does not say much

## Dickens and the Drama

about it. "This, if it did not in itself rise beyond the usual level of such things was remarkable for the thoroughly admirable and genuinely pathetic performance of Jo by Miss Jennie Lee, a performance which may take rank with the very best of the stage presentations of Dickens's characters; and by another excellent piece of work in the Hortense of Miss Dolores Drummond." As a matter of fact, this performance made Miss Drummond's reputation as an actress to be reckoned with, as she had then only been on the London boards two years. Mr. Charles Wilmot, who played Chadband, had only recently come to England from Melbourne, where he was highly respected as a clever actor and manager. He leased the Occidental Tavern in Fountain Court, Strand (Terry's Theatre now covers the site), which became quite the most popular theatrical rendezvous in town, and which, as the Coal Hole, had been the favourite haunt of the great Edmund Kean and many other theatrical celebrities. Thackeray refers to the Coal House under various names more than once in his many books.

"Jo" could only run a few weeks, as Miss Ada Cavendish was engaged by the lessee, Francis Fairlie, to appear in a new drama by Wilkie Collins, called "Miss Gwilt," on Easter Monday, April 17th. But 'Jo' was in the bills again in the following



MISS JENNIE LEE AS JO IN "BLEAK HOUSE," AT THE GLOBE  
THEATRE, 1876.

*From a Drawing by Fred Barnard.*

[To face p. 248.]



## “Bleak House”

September with an altered cast, and it was also revived at the Strand Theatre in April, 1885, after Miss Lee's extended Australian tour. Of this revival Clement Scott said “Jennie Lee was, perhaps, the very best Jo that has ever appeared on the stage. She was so full of humanity, and a quaint pathos, that few could equal. In this production, the other characters that deserve mention were the Mr. Tulkinghorn of Leslie Corcoran ; Mr. Chadband of Mr. Charles Wilmot, Mr. Guppy of Gerald Moore, Lady Dedlock of Ada Ward, Esther of Florence Rayburn, Mrs. Snagsby of Mrs. C. H. Stephenson, and the Hortense of Dolores Drummond.”

On March 27th, 1876, “Bleak House; or, ‘Poor Jo,’ ” a drama in four acts, by George Lander, was first performed at the Pavilion Theatre, in which J. B. Howe took Jo, and Arthur Williams, Guppy. Mr. English was the Chadband ; F. Thomas, Bucket ; George Yates, Tulkinghorn. Miss Harriett Clifton was the Hortense, and Miss M. Foster, Lady Dedlock.

About this time another version was given at the Surrey Theatre by Terry Hurst, called simply “Poor Jo,” and, curiously enough, in September, 1876, at the same house, appeared a musical farce in one act by Frank W. Green and Oswald Allan, entitled “Jo v. Jo,” but whether in any way connected with “Bleak House” I am unable to say.

## Dickens and the Drama

I should think not. At the Theatre Royal, Greenwich, on April 24th of the same year, there was done "Joe, the Waif," a drama by Herbert Rhoyds.

In the country, at the Alexandra Opera House, Sheffield, April 28th the same year, I note "Bleak House; or Poor Jo," by Miss Eliza Thorne. At the Park Theatre, Camden Town "Poor Little Jo" made an effective appeal, July 2nd, 1877. This I am under the impression was by G. Murray Wood, for Miss Virginia Blackwood undertook the part of Jo. In fact it rained "Bleak House" in various ways through the success of the piece at the Globe. "Poor Jo," a drama by H. Davenport, was produced at the Theatre Royal, Southampton, February 25th, 1878. Mr. Edward Compton had a version also in which he played Bucket. In July, 1892, Mr. James Mortimer brought to the Lyric, London, for a *matinée* "Move on; or, Jo the Outcast," originally produced several years previously in Hull and now re-christened simply "Jo." This was rather a series of tableaux, illustrating various episodes in the lives of the principal characters of the story, than a well-constructed drama. The cast was really excellent, and Lydia Cowell was a truly pathetic and moving Jo; Maud Milton, proud and stately as Lady Dedlock, while Adrienne Dairolles was well fitted with the part of Hortense. As Guster, Louisa

## “Bleak House”

Gourlay was distinctly humorous, and Fanny Robertson an impressive Mrs. Rouncewell. Henry Bedford was a capable Bucket; E. Giradot was capital as Mr. Tulkinghorn; Henry Crisp was a good Chadband, while James Welch shone as Guppy, together with Charles Dodsworth as Snagsby, and Sir Leicester Dedlock was represented by Lawrence D’Orsay.

This same play as “Move on; or, the Crossing Sweeper,” was previously done in London at the Grand Theatre Islington, September 1st, 1883. The cast was exceptionally strong, and the piece enjoyed a considerable reputation in the provinces. Mr. Mortimer attached to each of the dramatis personæ a characteristic description taken from Dickens.

SIR LEICESTER DEDLOCK	..	Mr. Frank Stephenson.
BUCKET .. ..	..	Mr. R. C. Lyons.
MR. TULKINGHORN ..	..	Mr. J. Hastings Batson.
GUPPY .. ..	..	Mr. F. Manning.
MR. SNAGSBY .. ..	..	Mr. Victor Liston
JO .. ..	..	Miss Lydia Cowell.
THE REV. MR. CHADBAND	..	Mr. G. P. Carey.
KROOK .. ..	..	Mr. James O’Brien.
THE CORONER .. ..	..	Mr. W. E. Lane.
CONSTABLE .. ..	..	Mr. James.
SERVANT .. ..	..	Mr. H. Eastland.
THE BEADLE .. ..	..	Mr. J. C. Howard.
LADY DEDLOCK .. ..	..	Miss Helen Massey.
MIDLE. HORTENSE ..	..	Miss Dolores Drummond.
ESTHER SUMMERSON ..	..	Miss Lilian Dudley.



## Dickens and the Drama

I should think not. At the Theatre Royal, Greenwich, on April 24th of the same year, there was done "Joe, the Waif," a drama by Herbert Rhoyds.

In the country, at the Alexandra Opera House, Sheffield, April 28th the same year, I note "Bleak House; or Poor Jo," by Miss Eliza Thorne. At the Park Theatre, Camden Town "Poor Little Jo" made an effective appeal, July 2nd, 1877. This I am under the impression was by G. Murray Wood, for Miss Virginia Blackwood undertook the part of Jo. In fact it rained "Bleak House" in various ways through the success of the piece at the Globe. "Poor Jo," a drama by H. Davenport, was produced at the Theatre Royal, Southampton, February 25th, 1878. Mr. Edward Compton had a version also in which he played Bucket. In July, 1892, Mr. James Mortimer brought to the Lyric, London, for a *matinée* "Move on; or, Jo the Outcast," originally produced several years previously in Hull and now re-christened simply "Jo." This was rather a series of tableaux, illustrating various episodes in the lives of the principal characters of the story, than a well-constructed drama. The cast was really excellent, and Lydia Cowell was a truly pathetic and moving Jo; Maud Milton, proud and stately as Lady Dedlock, while Adrienne Dairolles was well fitted with the part of Hortense. As Guster, Louisa

## “Bleak House”

Gourlay was distinctly humorous, and Fanny Robertson an impressive Mrs. Rouncewell. Henry Bedford was a capable Bucket; E. Giradot was capital as Mr. Tulkinghorn; Henry Crisp was a good Chadband, while James Welch shone as Guppy, together with Charles Dodsworth as Snagsby, and Sir Leicester Dedlock was represented by Lawrence D’Orsay.

This same play as “Move on; or, the Crossing Sweeper,” was previously done in London at the Grand Theatre Islington, September 1st, 1883. The cast was exceptionally strong, and the piece enjoyed a considerable reputation in the provinces. Mr. Mortimer attached to each of the dramatis personæ a characteristic description taken from Dickens.

SIR LEICESTER DEDLOCK	..	Mr. Frank Stephenson.
BUCKET .. ..	..	Mr. R. C. Lyons.
MR. TULKINGHORN ..	..	Mr. J. Hastings Batson.
GUPPY .. ...	..	Mr. F. Manning.
MR. SNAGSBY .. ..	..	Mr. Victor Liston
JO .. .. .	..	Miss Lydia Cowell.
THE REV. MR. CHADBAND	..	Mr. G. P. Carey.
KROOK .. .. .	..	Mr. James O’Brien.
THE CORONER .. ..	..	Mr. W. E. Lane.
CONSTABLE .. ..	..	Mr. James.
SERVANT .. .. .	..	Mr. H. Eastland.
THE BEADLE .. ..	..	Mr. J. C. Howard.
LADY DEDLOCK .. ..	..	Miss Helen Massey.
MIDDLE. HORTENSE ..	..	Miss Dolores Drummond.
ESTHER SUMMERSON ...	...	Miss Lilian Dudley.

## Dickens and the Drama

ROSA	..	..	..	Miss Kate O'Brien.
MRS. SNAGSBY	..	..	..	Miss B. Lorimer.
GUSTER	..	..	..	Miss Alice Charteris.
MRS. ROUNCEWELL	..	..	..	Miss Annie Brophy.
MRS. PIPER	..	..	..	Miss Hastings.

The Grand was quite a new theatre—soon to be burnt to the ground and rebuilt. To go back a bit. “Jo, the Waif; or, the mystery of Chesney Wood,” began a tour at the Rotunda Theatre, Liverpool, July, 1881. The author’s name was not given. After this there appeared “Lady Dedlock’s Secret,” by J. Palgrave Simpson, first produced at the Opera House, Aberdeen, April 3rd, 1874, then by amateurs at the Theatre Royal Windsor, November 28th, 1883, and then at the Opera Comique, March 26th, 1884. Mr. Charles Dickens the younger thought proper to write of this production as follows:—

“The liberties which Mr. Palgrave Simpson allowed himself to take with his author were really unjustifiable even in a play which was described as being founded on an episode in Charles Dickens’s ‘Bleak House.’ It is, perhaps, excusable that Krook should have murdered Mr. Tulkinghorn and have been denounced by Jo, who was a witness of the transaction, also that Jo should, among many other remarkable figures of speech, describe Lady Dedlock as saying that she was a servant though not with manners to conform. But the

## “Bleak House”

conclusion of the play in which Lady Dedlock (out of her mind) is escorted back to Chesney Wood by Jo, and has a regular conventional knockabout stage death scene, while Jo—who like Tiny Tim does not die—weeps by her side, to form a picture, is a little too much. Mr. Palgrave Simpson proved himself on so many other occasions so adroit a hand at dramatic cookery, that it is surprising that he should have concocted such a hash as this, while it is still more astonishing that anybody should have thought it worth serving up to the public.”

That it was well acted the cast, which I give, will prove.

SIR LEICESTER DEDLOCK	..	Mr. C. W. Somerset.
TULKINGHORN .. ..	..	Mr. Robert Pateman.
JARNDYCE .. ..	..	Mr. Cecil Crofton.
GUPPY .. ..	..	Mr. Ernest Hendrie.
KROOK .. ..	..	Mr. Henry Kemble.
BUCKET .. ..	..	Mr. Howard Russell.
JO .. ..	..	Mr. Charles Coote.
HIGGINSON .. ..	..	Mr. Walton.
SCROGGS .. ..	..	Mr. Clinch.
LADY DEDLOCK .. ..	..	Lady Monckton.
ESTHER SUMMERSON .. ..	..	Miss Dorothy Dene.

In any case the piece was a fair success with theatre-goers. Lady Monckton, who had long been favourably known as an experienced amateur, made on this occasion her professional *début*. Afterwards she went to the Haymarket Theatre to play

## Dickens and the Drama

Mrs. Ralston in "Jim the Penman" under the management of Sir (then Mr.) Herbert Beerbohm Tree.

Mr. J. P. Burnett's "Jo" was revived at Drury Lane Theatre, May 13th, 1896, when Miss Jennie Lee reappeared in her old part of the Crossing Sweeper. Of this performance Mr. William Archer wrote: "It is a remarkable piece of acting and very genuinely Dickens-ish. Of course it has not gained in freshness or spontaneity; but I saw it again with pleasure and fully understood its abiding popularity. . . . There is something refreshing in an occasional plunge into Dickens, even in this violently condensed form." Playing in this revival were Mr. Rudge Harding as Sir Leicester Dedlock; Mr. Howard Russell, Mr. Tulkinghorn; Mr. Alfred Balfour, Snagsby; Mr. Robb Harwood, Chadband; Mr. Charles Stuart, Guppy; and Mr. Frank Mac-Vicars, Bucket; Miss Alma Stanley, Lady Dedlock; Miss Ada Lee, Hortense; Miss Joan Burnett, Esther; Miss Fanny Robertson, Mrs. Rouncewell; Miss Kathleen Gordon, Rosa; Miss Katie Lee, Guster; Miss Mary Bates, Jenny; Mrs. Vernon Paget, Mrs. Snagsby; and Miss Jennie Lee, the never-to-be-forgotten Jo.

The last important performance of "Bleak House" was so named, with the sub-title of, "Or

## “Bleak House”

Events in the life of Jo.” A version by Oswald Brand, produced at the Grand Theatre, Islington, June 1st, 1903.

SIR LEICESTER DEDLOCK, BART.	Mr. Leonard Yorke.
MR. BUCKET .. ..	Mr. W. R. Sutherland.
MR. JARNDYCE .. ..	Mr. Lawrence Derrick.
MR. TULKINGHORN .. ..	Mr. Fred Allen.
RICHARD CARSTON .. ..	Mr. L. Griffin.
GUPPY .. ..	Mr. J. F. Elliston.
JOBLING .. ..	Mr. E. Davey.
TURVEYDROP .. ..	Mr. A. Hemsley.
MR. SNAGSBY .. ..	Mr. J. W. Bradbury.
MR. CHADBAND .. ..	Mr. Hal Collier.
SERGEANT GEORGE .. ..	Mr. E. Chandler.
A CONSTABLE .. ..	Mr. George Elliott
LADY DEDLOCK .. ..	Miss Helen Bancroft.
JO .. ..	Miss Kate Brand.
ESTHER SUMMERSON .. ..	Miss Winifred Leeson.
ADA CLARE .. ..	Miss Dora Levis.
MRS. SNAGSBY .. ..	Miss Ada Francis.
MISS CHADBAND .. ..	Miss Nellie Clarence.
MISS JELLYBY .. ..	Miss Mary Hardacre.
PEEPY .. ..	Little Sadie Gold.
GUSTER .. ..	Miss Montague.
A SERVANT .. ..	Miss Gibbons.
HORTENSE .. ..	Miss May Howard.

Mr. Oswald Brand, who was a most enterprising manager, died at the early age of fifty-two in August, 1908.

At the Margate Theatre on November 26th, 1903, yet another adaptation of the story was arranged by J. Stillwell and W. Benson.

## CHAPTER XVI

### "HARD TIMES"

I DON'T think that "Hard Times" was ever a really popular work. It is so full of the dark and hard side of life, and if it were not for the little humour introduced through Mr. Sleary, of the horse-riding circus there would be scarcely a gleam of sunshine in the whole book. Besides it was written with a deliberate object, as Dickens explained in a letter to Charles Knight, and which might fittingly have served as a warning preface of what was to come. But these things apart, there is real drama in the story, though seemingly it has not appealed very much to writers for the theatre. Coketown, the scene of the novel was intended for an outlying district of Manchester, which certainly is not the most cheerful city at the best of times.

"Hard Times," after running as a serial in "Household Words," came out in volume form in 1854, with a dedication to the Chelsea Sage, Thomas Carlyle. A critic, writing of it at the time, said,

## “Hard Times”

“This work is treated differently to any of his other books, and hardly sustains his reputation, being the least read and admired of his numerous fictions. The plot is meagre and aimless. The persons are too often exaggerated and overdrawn; the design, apparently being to place facts, figures, science, and political economy in anything but a favourable or correct light. The education received by the Gradgrinds is preposterous.” Ruskin, too, found fault with Dickens over his farcical treatment in characterisation of Bounderby and others of a serious subject.

An amusing parody or skit on the tale by Robert Brough appeared in “Our Miscellany,” a work, the joint production of that gentleman and Edmund Yates, the founder of *The World*, weekly journal. At the Strand Theatre on August 14th, 1854, a version by Fox Cooper was placed on the stage, and was well received, all the melancholy parts being cut out, and all the humour heightened as much as possible; the *dénouement* being quite different from that to be found in Dickens! The new Bill for closing the public houses creating great excitement and discussion at that time, Mr. Gradgrind was made to exhibit strong animosity and hostility to the proposed measure. “Hard Times” was well cast.



# Dickens and the Drama

## HARD TIMES.

- THOMAS GRADGRIND, ESQ. (*M.P. for the Borough of Coketown—"Inflexible, dry, and dictatorial; whose head had scarcely warehouse room for the hard facts stored inside"*) Mr. R. Romer.
- MR. JOSIAH BOUNDERBY (*"A man who was always proclaiming through a brassy speaking-trumpet sort of voice his old ignorance and his old poverty"*) .. .. Mr. Barrett.
- JAMES HARTHOUSE, ESQ. (*"A thorough gentleman, made to the model of the time—weary of everything, and putting no more faith in anything than Lucifer"*) .. .. Mr. Belford.
- STEPHEN BLACKPOOL (*"A good Power-loom Weaver, and a man of perfect integrity—one of the hands who has known a peck of troubles"*) Mr. Herbert.
- TOM GRADGRIND  
{ (*commonly called "the Whelp"*) .. .. Master Gilbert.  
{ (*Subsequently the "Fast Man" and "Roué"*) .. Mr. John Howard.
- BITZER (*"His skin was so unwholesomely deficient in the natural tinge, that he looked as though if he were cut he would bleed white"*) ... Mr. Sidney.

## “Hard Times”

- SLEARY (*the manager of the Circus*  
—“*a man never sober, and*  
*yet never drunk*”) .. .. Mr. Bernard.
- DR. SOMERFORD .. .. Mr. Douglas.
- MRS. GRADGRIND (“*A thin,*  
*white, pink-eyed bundle of*  
*shawls—of surpassing feeble-*  
*ness, mental and bodily*”).. Mrs. Long.
- SISSY JUPES  
 { (“*A bit of unsophisticated*  
*nature*”).. .. Miss R. Edouin.  
 { (*In aftertime “Matured*  
*Friend and Commise-*  
*rating Companion*”) .. Miss Fanny Beaumont.
- MRS. SPARSIT (“*Of the family*  
*of the ‘Powers,’ who could*  
*trace themselves so exceed-*  
*ingly far back, that it was*  
*not surprising if they some-*  
*times lost themselves*”) .. Mrs. Laws.
- RACHEL (“*The owner of a quiet*  
*oval face, dark and rather*  
*delicate, irradiated by a pair*  
*of very gentle eyes, and set*  
*off by the perfect order of*  
*her shining silky hair*”) .. Miss Hammond.
- MRS. PEGLER (“*A mysterious*  
*Old Woman, in a red cloak,*  
*who could stand outside the*  
*Bank for a whole day, from*  
*sunrise to sunset*”) .. Mr. Courtney.
- LOUISA GRADGRIND  
 { (*A child now*) .. .. Miss Eliza Edouin.  
 { (*But, at no distant day, a*  
*Woman all at once*) .. Miss Harriett Gordon.
- HANDS, SERVANTS, VILLAGERS, CONSTABLES, &c.

## Dickens and the Drama

This version, which certainly is a bad one, and in which the most outrageous liberties are taken with the novel greatly incensed Charles Dickens the younger, and caused him to say some very bitter, but just things.

At Astley's, Westminster Bridge Road, on April 22nd, 1867, "Under the Earth; or, Sons of Toil," was given as a dramatic version of "Hard Times," though without any adapter's name. This reminds me that John Forster records that an American admirer accounted for the vivacity of the circus scenes by declaring that Dickens had "arranged with the master of Astley's Circus to spend many hours behind the scenes with the riders among the horses; a thing just as likely as that he went into training as a stroller to qualify for Mr. Crummles in 'Nickleby.'" Dickens was, of course, familiar with life behind and before the scenes of both theatres and circuses from early boyhood.

The cast of "Under the Earth," is interesting.

JOSIAH BOUNDERBY	..	..	Mr. W. H. Stephens.
JAMES HARTHOUSE	..	..	Mr. T. W. Richardson.
STEPHEN BLACKPOOL	..	..	Mr. James Fernandez.
BITZER	..	..	Mr. Edward Atkins.
THOMAS GRADGRIND, M.P.	..	..	Mr. James Elphinstone.
TOM GRADGRIND	..	..	Mr. W. Arthur.
MRS. SPARSIT	...	..	Miss A. Richardson.
RACHEL	...	...	Miss Edith Stuart.

## “Hard Times”

LOUISA GRADGRIND .. .. Miss Marion.  
MRS. PEGLER .. .. Mrs. Caulfield.

This piece was, I now learn from Mr. W. H. C. Nation, dramatised and produced by himself.

“Mr. Gradgrind’s System,” was performed for the first time at the Prince’s Theatre, Llandudno, July 3rd, 1906. It has not reached London yet.

## CHAPTER XVII

### "LITTLE DORRIT"

"I HAVE not been able to find any record of any dramatic version of 'Little Dorrit.' The boldest adapter might well shrink from the task of dramatising the Circumlocution office." That is not a very pleasant introduction, but that is what Charles Dickens's son cheerfully set down in his preface to the Macmillan Edition. However, the book was dramatised and presented at the Strand Theatre, November 13th, 1856. E. L. Blanchard said the performance was "very slow," while Theodore Taylor observed of the novel: "The work met with an immense sale in the serial form, but it is not now (1870) so popular as some of the other works of Mr. Dickens. The story was dramatised, and well represented at the Strand Theatre."

In the preface to the first bound edition of "Little Dorrit" in 1857, Charles Dickens wrote: "Some of my readers may have an interest in being informed whether or no any portions of the Marshalsea Prison are yet standing. I myself did

## “Little Dorrit”

not know until I was approaching the end of this story, when I went back to look. I found the outer front courtyard, often mentioned here, metamorphosed into a butter shop ; and I then gave up every brick of the jail as lost. Wandering, however, down a certain adjacent ‘Angel Court, leading to Bermondsey,’ I came to ‘Marshalsea Place,’ the houses in which I recognised, not only as the great block of the former prison, but as preserving the rooms that arose in my mind’s eye when I became Little Dorrit’s biographer. The smallest boy I ever conversed with, carrying the largest baby I ever saw, offered a supernaturally intelligent explanation of the locality in its old uses, and was very nearly correct. How this young Newton (for such I judge him to be) came by his information, I don’t know ; he was a quarter of a century too young to know anything about it himself. I pointed to the window where Little Dorrit was born, and where her father lived so long, and asked him what was the name of the lodger who tenanted that apartment at present. He said, ‘Tom Pythick.’ I asked him who was Tom Pythick ? and he said, ‘Joe Pythick’s uncle ! ’ ”

A newspaper note in January, 1902, stated that “Little Dorrit’s playground, which has just been opened for children, recalls inevitably the old

## Dickens and the Drama

Marshalsea, and all it meant in the life of Dickens and his characters. The building that Little Dorrit knew, itself the successor of an earlier prison, which in Queen Elizabeth's time ranked next to the Tower, had in 1842 ceased to exist as a prison. Since then the felons' portion has disappeared. Thanks, however, to its utilisation for business purposes, the debtors' prison remains intact. The interior has been remodelled, but tablets have been placed in various parts to mark interesting spots referred to by Dickens." This part has been preserved and still remains untouched. Dickens, as is well known, incorporated much of his own early life experiences in connection with the Marshalsea Prison in "Little Dorrit." In the *Daily Chronicle* for December 1st, 1906, there appeared a "Chat with Little Dorrit," an aged lady who was supposed to be the original of Charles Dickens's touching portraiture, but it has been proved beyond doubt that the old dame—she lived at New Southgate—had in some way or the other misunderstood the facts, and her memory had played her false.

In the course of an interesting address, delivered at Liverpool in November, 1908, on books and art, Mr. G. Bernard Shaw said, "One of the greatest writers England ever produced was Charles Dickens, who had not yet been half enough read. One of

## “ Little Dorrit ”

the greatest books ever written in the English language was ‘ Little Dorrit.’ ” I am afraid there are not many critical people who will subscribe to this opinion, although at the same time “ Little Dorrit ” is a great work, and full of real life and real character.

The notice of the Strand Theatre in *The Era* of Sunday, November 16th, 1856, gives the following account of “ Little Dorrit.” “ The slight drawback that Mr. Dickens has not got more than half-way through his novel of ‘ Little Dorrit ’ has not in the slightest degree proved a barrier to the work being dramatised by the anticipating gentleman who has provided this theatre with his ‘ version ’ of the story. With that easy recklessness of adapters generally, and with sublime indifference to the original author’s design which has before now called forth the severest sarcasms from the writer of ‘ Nicholas Nickleby,’ we have the plot capriciously twisted, turned and terminated to suit this stage, and forestall the others, and the unfortunate victim is mutilated on the same principle as that adopted by the classical robber of antiquity and cut down Procrastes fashion to fit the place, the lopping off of a head or limb producing no remorse with the operator.

“ The story as we have it in the drama is limited



## Dickens and the Drama

to the incarceration of the 'Father of Marshalsea,' and the piece ends with the restoration of Mr. Dorrit to his property. As the novelist especially contrived to render his earlier chapters as undramatic as possible, it will be easily imagined that the adaptation of them to the stage has not imparted to the plot the spirit that is infused into the description rather than the incidents.

"The first act hangs fire very much, and the humour of the Circumlocution-office requires to be read, rather than represented, to make it intelligible, so that with the absence of strong dramatic situations and the retention of long undramatic speeches, there is a dearth of that excitement which is the means of sustaining, as well as creating, an interest in the progress of the plot. The circumscribed range of the story, as here told, even seems to have necessitated the constant reproduction of the same scenes, and thus the monotony is not even relieved by the variety of objects presented to the eye, which, on the special authority of Mr. Lindley Murray, is to be considered pleasing. The piece, however, has the recommendation of being well acted.

"Miss Emma Wilton, who plays Little Dorrit, exhibits no inconsiderable amount of talent, and her earnestness and pathos showed a power of

## “ Little Dorrit ”

delineation that induces a belief in a longer professional career than her apparent youthfulness would suggest. Miss Cuthbert, with an utter abrogation of feminine attractions that of itself is creditable to the judgment of the actress, makes up an admirable Maggie, whose devotion to her ‘ little mawther ’ has been so well portrayed by the novelist. The nearest realisation of the portraits drawn by the author is given by Mr. Neville, whose very mannerism enables him to give a closer embodiment of Mr. Dorrit’s peculiarities, whilst his dress is so exact that Mr. Hablôt K. Browne might have performed himself the office of costumier. The Tite Barnacle of Mr. Kinlock is another happy personation, from its being peculiarly suited to the actor’s style. Mr. G. Lee caricatures honest John Chivery with the red nose, long-tailed coat, and limp hair, that have been the recognised properties of the ‘ comic lover ’ from time immemorial, and which have all the mouldiness of provincial antiquity about them, whilst Mr. J. Clarke stands prominently forth as rendering the steaming, snorting Pancks a vivid, life-like character. The rest present no claims to remark, and when it is added that each tableau is marked by melodramatic music to enable the audience to remember that the respective positions of the dramatis personæ are copied from

## Dickens and the Drama

the monthly illustrations, and that a well-painted scene of Southwark Bridge is the only novelty of embellishment, we have said all that the public will care to know of the 'new and original' (!) drama of 'Little Dorrit' (*vide* play bill *passim*) produced on Monday night at the Strand."

A German theatrical craftsman has also taken the dramatisation of "Little Dorrit" in hand. I quote the following from the *Dickensian* of November, 1905.

"A German dramatised version of 'Little Dorrit,' by Herr Franz Schoenthan, under the title of 'Klein Dorrit,' a comedy in three acts, was presented on October 5th at the Imperial Hofburg Theatre in Vienna. It was excellently mounted, and well received, although apparently it was not a very adequate representation of the original story. The principal characters were sustained by Herr Thiemig and Fräulein Retty. It was stated that the play was to be produced simultaneously at forty theatres in Germany, Austria and Hungary." It was done at Berlin, September 15, 1906, with Herr Volmer as Old Dorrit, and Fraulein Eschborn as the heroine.

## CHAPTER XVIII

### "A TALE OF TWO CITIES"

THERE is a remarkable history attached both to the book and the plays dealing with this most beautiful story. John Forster wrote in regard to it, "The first notion occurred to him (Dickens) while acting with his friends and his children in the summer of 1857, in Mr. Wilkie Collins's drama of 'The Frozen Deep.'" But many things were disturbing Charles Dickens just then, and it was not until twelve months later that he set to work in earnest, and "A Tale of Two Cities" began to appear in *All the Year Round*, April 30th, 1859. This is an important date.

When Mr. Martin Harvey produced "The Only Way" at the Lyceum Theatre on February 16th, 1899, the old controversy that existed long ago was revived as to whether Dickens borrowed from Watts Phillips's "Dead Heart" or whether Watts Phillips was indebted to Dickens, or both to Dumas's "Chevalier de la Maison Rouge," which was produced in Paris some twelve years before either the

## Dickens and the Drama

English play or the English book was born. The great act of self-sacrifice exhibited both by novelist and dramatist, almost simultaneously in their works, however, had been utilised even before Dumas by, amongst others, Edward Bulwer Lytton, in his extraordinary romance of "Zanoni"—of which more presently—so that on this point there is no need to dwell for the moment. Dickens's "Tale of Two Cities" first came out, as I have already stated, in *All the Year Round* in 1859 as a serial, beginning in the month of April; while the "Dead Heart" was produced at the Adelphi Theatre in the following November by Benjamin Webster, who had held the manuscript, however, of the play since the latter part of 1856.

According to the late John Coleman, Watts Phillips gave this version of the matter.

"My first play was 'The Dead Heart'; it was not only my first play, but the first play of mine which Webster accepted, although 'Joseph Chavigny' was the first play of mine he ever brought out. It was produced in the summer of '57. It was all Webster and Celeste." This piece was not a success.

"But," continued Watts Phillips, "I didn't believe in being beaten, so I set to work immediately on 'The Poor Stroller,' never ceasing, however, to

## “A Tale of Two Cities”

urge upon Webster the production of ‘The Dead Heart.’ From some unaccountable reason he still held off, so I thought I’d try Phelps. I described the play to him, and he offered to produce it if I could induce Webster to give it up. I then proposed to buy it back, but he would not hear of that, though he still persisted in postponing its production. To mollify me, he produced ‘The Poor Stroller’ at the beginning of ’58. It was a *succès d’estime*, and that was all; my poor ‘Dead Heart’ was shelved for another year. Oh, that weary, weary waiting; I protest I can’t think of it now without a shudder. Hope deferred maketh the heart grow sick, and I was sick, sore, sorry, and desperately hard up besides.

“Imagine if you can, then, my feelings when, in the middle of 1859, I read ‘A Tale of Two Cities,’ in *Household Words*. No, stay! It was then transmogrified into ‘All the Year Round.’ Three years and more I had awaited Webster’s goodwill and pleasure, but now I raised Cain, until my poor play was put into rehearsal, and at length it was produced at the beginning of November, 1859.”

After a night or two, the play roused the very heart of London, and an enormous success had been achieved. “But,” adds John Coleman, “let me continue in my own way.

## Dickens and the Drama

“Charles Dickens’s story aroused great enthusiasm at the time of its publication and dramatisations began to spring up everywhere, directly its immensely human story began to develop, but not until the ‘Dead Heart’ had been done and had ‘caught on.’ In justice, therefore, to the memory of a brilliant dramatist who gave so many excellent plays to the English stage, it is only fair to emphasise exactly how matters stood at the time when party feeling ran very high as to the claims of Dickens and Phillips. As already indicated, Phillips was urging Webster to put on ‘the Dead Heart’ all through 1859 and for two years previously, and after he had ‘almost renounced all hope he was overjoyed to learn that the manager had at last made up his mind to bring forward the piece.’ This was decidedly owing to the serial issue of Dickens’s story, which, to Phillips’s annoyance, seemed to anticipate some of his situations. Then the dramatist grew happy and buoyant once more, and eagerly discussed by letter the casting of the play. The piece, excellently represented, was quite an unprecedented work.”

The drama was produced at the Adelphi on November 10th, 1859. I give a copy of the programme :

# “A Tale of Two Cities”

## THE DEAD HEART.

A DRAMA IN A PROLOGUE AND THREE ACTS.

BY WATTS PHILLIPS.

THE COUNT DE ST. VALERIE		Mr. John Billington.
THE ABBÉ LATOUR	.. ..	Mr. David Fisher.
ROBERT LANDRY	.. ..	Mr. Benjamin Webster.
JACQUES LE GRAND	.. ..	Mr. Stuart.
REBOUL	} ( <i>artists and students</i> )	Mr. Paul Bedford.
MICHEL		Mr. W. H. Eburne.
JEAN		Mr. Moreland.
PIERRE	.. ..	Mr. Conran.
TOUPET ( <i>perruquier and coiffeur</i> )		Mr. J. L. Toole.
JOCRISSE ( <i>owner of the cabaret</i> “ <i>Les Trois Ecus</i> ”)	..	Mr. C. J. Smith.
BAPTISTE DUVAL	.. ..	Mr. Page.
FERBRAS ( <i>a blacksmith</i> )	..	Mr. Aldridge.
BLAIREAN ( <i>crier</i> )	.. ..	Mr. R. Romer.
MARTINET ( <i>officer of gendarmes</i> )		Mr. Howard.
CATHERINE DUVAL	.. ..	Miss Woolgar.
CERSETTE	.. ..	Miss Kate Kelly.
ROSE	.. ..	Miss Laidlaw.

The majority of the critics praised the work, but there were several who alleged that Phillips was indebted for his main ideas to “Monte Cristo” and to “Maison Rouge,” which he promptly denied. Moreover, the author knew only too well that when he was accused of purloining from Dickens, as speedily happened, he had a harder task to clear himself. Already in the June of 1859, when “A Tale of Two Cities” was being eagerly read, Phillips reproached Webster for delaying the production. “Of course they will make a play of Dickens’s new



## Dickens and the Drama

tale. . . . And now, owing to a delay of years, Dickens puts into words what I had hoped long ago to see put into action," wrote Phillips to Webster. There were several startling coincidences in the two works, but the part of the story in which Sydney Carton's heroic deed was described did not appear until after the play was produced. In February, 1860, after the piece had nearly reached its hundredth night, and after Tom Taylor's version, prepared with the assistance of Dickens himself, was done at the Lyceum as "A Tale of Two Cities," January 30th, 1860, Benjamin Webster had to protest again—having already defended Phillips from the charge of plagiarism on several occasions—and wound up his letter by saying, "It is also well known, and I can immediately prove it, that 'The Dead Heart' was written and paid for years before 'A Tale of Two Cities,' or the periodical in which it appeared, was dreamed of." The dramatist went so far as to say that the piece was "seen by Dickens long ago." The writer of the "Life of Watts Phillips," published in 1891, says, "It seems that when he (W. P.) first sent the piece to Webster, the latter took it down to Brighton and there read it to two or three friends, one of whom was the novelist."

The closing scene of "The Dead Heart" in a degree is certainly to be found in Dumas's "Chevalier

## “A Tale of Two Cities”

de la Maison Rouge,” and Carlyle describes a similar incident of self-sacrifice—a very natural one—in his “French Revolution.” It can also be recognized, as I have previously said, in Lord Lytton’s “Zanoni.”

Mr. Justin Huntley McCarthy, at the time of the revival of “The Dead Heart” at the Lyceum Theatre, in 1889, wrote: “Much has been said about the resemblance between the sacrifice in ‘The Dead Heart’ and the sacrifice in ‘A Tale of Two Cities.’ I have not seen it pointed out anywhere that a very similar sacrifice is to be found in the end of Dumas the Elder’s brilliant revolutionary play, ‘Le Chevalier de la Maison Rouge,’ which was first performed at the Theatre Historique on August 3rd, 1847—and some twelve years before ‘The Dead Heart’ was produced or ‘A Tale of Two Cities’ published.”

As a matter of fact, I pointed this out myself in *The Era* many years ago. It is difficult, as John Coleman says, to realise that this coincidence should have escaped recognition in the very theatre where, six years *after* the production of Dumas’s play, and exactly six years *before* the production of “The Dead Heart,” Dion Boucicault’s adaptation of the former work—“Genevieve; or, the Reign of Terror”—was made memorable by the genius of Madame

## Dickens and the Drama

Celeste, Alfred Wigan, and Benjamin Webster in 1853.

John Coleman declares deliberately that "one thing is properly certain; it never could have escaped the eagle eye of the acute manager (Webster), inasmuch as he was himself the chivalrous Lorin who sacrifices his own life to save that of his friend. It is possible, and even probable, that it was owing to this remarkable coincidence that Webster postponed the production of 'The Dead Heart' for so long a period after he had bought it."

It has been suggested that Dumas himself was undoubtedly indebted to Lord Lytton's "Zanoni" for his idea in "Le Chevalier de la Maison Rouge," as that piece did not make its appearance until four years and eight months after the weird "Zanoni," which was published in January, 1842. Now, in the last chapter of the last book of Lord Lytton's work (the *donnée* of which is the Reign of Terror) occurs the sacrifice of the heroic precursor of Robert Landry and Sydney Carton. Zanoni's self-immolation, however, takes a nobler form, inasmuch as he lays down the gift of perpetual youth and immortal life to save the woman he loves from the guillotine.

But enough of "The Dead Heart" in which, however, Sir Henry Irving was magnificent in

## “A Tale of Two Cities”

the Lyceum revival, September 28th, 1889. As was anticipated, Charles Dickens's fascinating romance was dramatised at once, with and without the author's consent being obtained, and played at the minor houses.

The best version was that prepared by the skilful Tom Taylor, under the aegis of Charles Dickens, who “in the kindest manner superintended the production of the piece,” and “A Tale of Two Cities” went into the evening bills at the Lyceum Theatre, then under the management of Madame Celeste, who had recently seceded from the Adelphi, January 18th, 1860. In the cast were Madame Celeste, Walter Lacy, Kate Saville, T. Lyon, James Vining, Fred Villiers, James Johnstone, Rouse, Forrester and Sam Johnson who, by the way, played in “The Only Way” at the same theatre, February 16th, 1899. The dance of the “Carmagnole,” with the original music, formed a very effective tableau, and the trial of Darnay was also a faithful reproduction. John Coleman, who was present at the first night of “A Tale of Two Cities,” gives his impressions thus: “It was an admirable production in all respects, both as to acting and mounting. Certain impersonations in this drama have not been excelled, perhaps not equalled, in our time—notably Madame Celeste's boy in the prologue and her

## Dickens and the Drama

Madame Defarge in the play ; the pathetic Lucy Manette of Miss Kate Saville ; the Doctor Manette of James Vining ; the sympathetic Sydney Carton of poor Fred Villiers, and the wonderful wicked Marquis of Walter Lacy. The two plays ' caught on,' and their resemblance to each other having attracted universal attention, society divided itself into two factions—the Celestites and Dickensites, the Websterites and the Phillipsites. Then came accusations and recriminations as to coincidences and plagiarisms, and bad blood arose on both sides." But, of course, each house benefited by the controversy.

On July 7th, 1860, another piece entitled " The Tale of Two Cities ; or, the Incarcerated Victim of the Bastille," by Fox Cooper, was put on at the Victoria Theatre, in which there were no less than forty-two speaking parts. This was described as " An Historical drama in a prologue and four acts." In the cast were Messrs. Byefield, Alfred Raymond, W. H. Pitt, George Yarnold, J. Howard, and Mrs. Charles Boyce and Mrs. E. F. Saville. Speaking of this piece, Johnnie Gideon said, " In it three parts stood out most conspicuously. They were the Solomon Barsad of Jack Bradshaw, the Vengeance of F. Wilton and the Miss Pross of Mrs. Isaac Cohen, then Miss Fanny Harrison. The character



MADAME CELESTE AS MADAME DEFARGE IN "A TALE OF TWO CITIES," AT THE LYCEUM THEATRE, 1860.

*[To face p. 278.]*



## “A Tale of Two Cities”

of Dr. Manette was taken without acknowledgment by Dickens from an old Ambigu drama by MM. Anicet Borgeois and Ferdinand Dugue, called ‘La Bouquetiere des Innocents.’ ”

Another adaptation was prepared by an actor named H. J. Rivers, called “The Tale of Two Cities,” to which I refer at the end of this chapter.

Tom Taylor’s “Tale of Two Cities” was put on at the Grecian Theatre for a short run, December 9th, 1878. Mr. Frederick Dobell was the Marquis de St. Evremond, Mr. William James, Charles Darnay; Mr. A. Syms, Sydney Carton; Mr. H. Parker, Dr. Manette; Mr. E. Vincent, Ernest Defarge; Miss A. Denvil, Lucie Manette; Miss Mabel Verner, Therese De Farge; The Vengeance, Miss A. Reed; and Jerry Cruncher, Mr. Harry Nicholls, who, in his time, has played many Dickensian characters, such as Mr. Fang with Mr. J. L. Toole in “Oliver Twist,” the Artful Dodger in the same play, Uriah Heep, Micawber and others.

At the Royal Mirror (late the Holborn) Theatre, Holborn, on October 18th, 1875, was produced “All for Her,” by J. Palgrave Simpson and Herman C. Merivale, in which John Clayton, as the hero Hugh Trevor, achieved the greatest success of his artistic career.

As “All for Her” was never published, I give



## Dickens and the Drama

the names of the players from the programme of the first night.

LORD EDENDALE	..	..	Mr. Crauford.
COLONEL DAMER	..	..	Mr. Ferrand.
HUGH TREVOR	..	..	Mr. John Clayton.
RADFORD	..	..	Mr. Horace Wigan.
LINDSAY	..	..	Mr. Laurence.
MORRIS	..	..	Mr. Henry.
HAMILTON	..	..	Mr. Saunders.
GREYSTONE	..	..	Mr. H. Leigh.
OFFICER	..	..	Mr. Harrison.
CRAKE	..	..	Mr. G. Yarnold.
LADY MARSDEN	..	..	Miss Rose Coghlan.
MARY RIVERS	..	..	Miss Caroline Hill.

The Authors wish it to be known that the part of Hugh Trevor has been derived from the character of Sidney Carton in the "Tale of Two Cities," by the express permission of the late Charles Dickens.

That was the note on the programme. The piece, which "drew all London" for many months, was revived at the Court Theatre, April 12th, 1883, when John Clayton resumed his original part, supported by W. H. Brougham as Lord Edendale, Gilbert Farquhar as Colonel Damer, Mr. W. Macintosh as Radford, Mr. John Willes as Lindsay, Mr. T. Burnley, Crake, and Mr. Gilbert Trent as Greystone. Miss Marion Terry was Lady Marsden, and Miss Kate Rorke, Mary Rivers.

Edgar Pemberton, writing of the piece, says "the authors of 'All for Her' did not announce

## “A Tale of Two Cities”

their play as an adaptation of ‘A Tale of Two Cities,’ nor were they called upon to do so, but they made admirable use of the Carton episodes, and in doing so produced a work which was ungrudgingly acknowledged to be the most powerful that had been seen on the stage for some years.” Mr. Pemberton, in his statement about the authors not announcing their play as being derived from Dickens’s inspiration, as I have shown, is incorrect, though the “note” did not appear on the Court programme.

On February 7th, 1884, “A True Story Told in Two Cities,” by Eliot Galer, was produced by him at the Royal Opera House, Leicester, and then “1790,” a play in four acts, by Henry Hunt, taken from Charles Dickens’s “Tale of Two Cities,” was played at the Bath Saloon Theatre, Sheffield, on October 29th and November 1st, 1894.

Mr. Eliot Galer’s play had a considerable run at Leicester and round the country at the time.

On January 2nd, 1893, T. Edgar Pemberton produced “Sydney Carton” in a prologue and four acts at the Theatre Royal, Norwich.

Perhaps it is not generally known that Dickens had thoughts of creating on the stage the character of Sydney Carton himself. He thus distinctly states the fact: “When I was acting with my

## Dickens and the Drama

children and friends, in Mr. Wilkie Collins's drama of 'The Frozen Deep,' I first conceived the main idea of the story. A strong desire was upon me then to embody it in my own person ; and I traced out in my fancy the state of mind of which it would necessitate the presentation to an observant spectator with particular care and interest." This character was of course Sydney Carton.

"As the idea became familiar to me," he continues, "it gradually shaped itself into its present form. Throughout its execution it had complete possession of me ; I have so far verified what is done and suffered in these pages, as that I have certainly done and suffered it all myself."

He sent the proof sheets to his friend Regnier of the Theatre Française and wrote : "I should very much like to know what you think of its being dramatised for a French theatre." Regnier replied that, as he judged, such a play would be prohibited by the authorities. In one of his letters to Miss Mary Boyle, Dickens said : "I must say that I like my Carton, and I have a faint idea sometimes that if I had acted him, I could do something with his life and death."

Of course "The Only Way," by Freeman Wills and Frederick Langbridge, both clergymen, by the way, may be considered the last word in adaptations

## “A Tale of Two Cities”

as far as “A Tale of Two Cities” is concerned. Martin Harvey’s splendid performance of Sydney Carton placed him at once in the front rank of romantic actors, his graceful bearing and musical voice greatly adding to his skill and popularity, while his charming wife Miss de Silva made a most admirable and touching Mimi.

As a matter of record I print the full cast.

### THE ONLY WAY.

#### A TALE OF TWO CITIES.

A Romantic play, in a Prologue and Four Acts. Adapted by Freeman Wills from Charles Dickens’s Novel.

*Produced at the Lyceum Theatre, on Thursday,  
February 16th, 1899.*

#### CHARACTERS IN THE PROLOGUE.

JEAN DEFARGE .. ..	Mr. Holbrook Blinn.
DR. MANETTE .. ..	Mr. Fred Everill.
MARQUIS DE ST. EVREMONDE	Mr. Acton Bond.
VICOMTE DE ST. EVREMONDE	Mr. H. Nye Chart.
A PEASANT .. ..	Mr. T. Arthur Jones.

#### CHARACTERS IN THE PLAY.

SYDNEY CARTON .. ..	Mr. Martin Harvey.
ERNEST DEFARGE .. ..	Mr. Holbrook Blinn.
MR. LORRY .. ..	Mr. J. G. Taylor.
MR. STRYVER .. ..	Mr. Sam Johnson.
DR. MANETTE .. ..	Mr. Fred Everill.
CHARLES DARNAY .. ..	Mr. Herbert Sleath.
PRESIDENT .. ..	Mr. F. Tyars.
PUBLIC PROSECUTOR .. ..	Mr. Frank Vernon.
COMTE DE FAUCHET .. ..	Mr. Ben Webster.

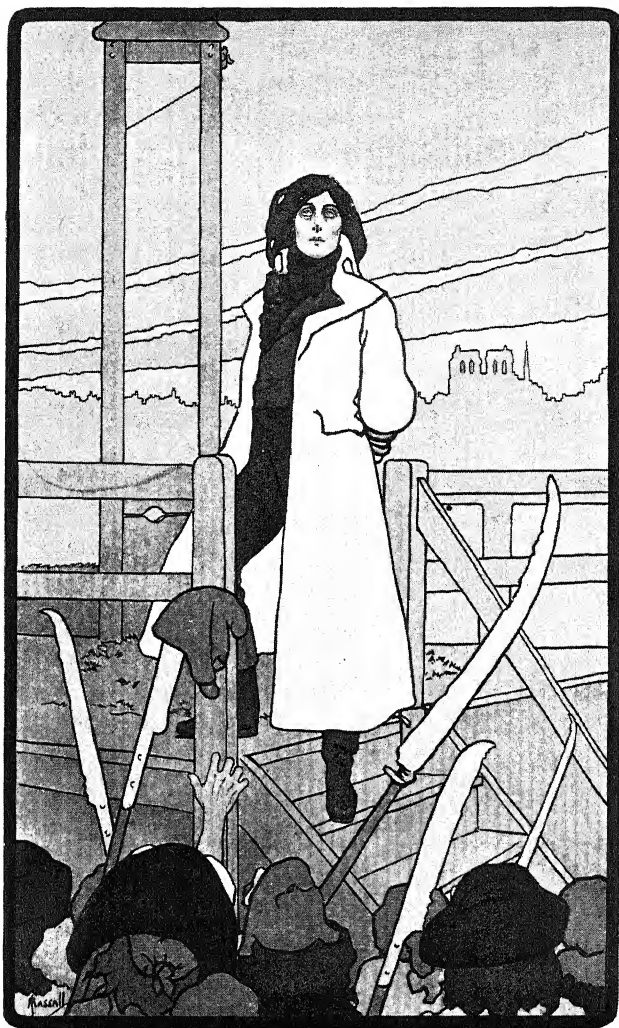
## Dickens and the Drama

M. DE MAURY .. ..	Mr. Havard Arnold.
MARQUIS DE BOULAINVILLIERS	Mr. E. Eardley Howard.
GABELLE .. ..	Mr. Henson.
BARSAD .. ..	Mr. A. Lingley.
FIRST CITIZEN .. ..	Mr. Fredk. Powell.
SECOND CITIZEN .. ..	Mr. Hawley Francks.
FIRST JURYMAN .. ..	Mr. Stone.
SECOND JURYMAN .. ..	Mr. Herbert Innes.
LUCY MANETTE .. ..	Miss Grace Warner.
THE VENGEANCE .. ..	Miss Marriott.
A CITIZENESS .. ..	Miss Lizzie Webster.
MIMI .. ..	Miss de Silva.

Mr. Martin Harvey has played "The Only Way" throughout the country, and at the Prince of Wales's and Apollo Theatres, and while acting Sydney Carton at the Adelphi Theatre in July, 1907, "The Only Way" scored its thousandth representation. "Sydney Carton's Sacrifice" was the title of a sketch prepared by B. Soane Roby, and produced at the Camberwell Palace, January 28th, 1907.

On November 29th, 1909, Mr. Hayden Coffin produced a dramatic sketch called "Sydney Carton" at the Metropolitan Music Hall after which, admirably playing the title *rôle* himself, he presented it round the country, at the Empire, Leicester Square, and the Coronet Theatre, Notting Hill.

Here is a curious coincidence. Tom Taylor's "A Tale of Two Cities" was produced at the Lyceum Theatre, January 30th, 1860, Fox Cooper's "The Tale of Two Cities" was presented at the



MR. MARTIN HARVEY AS SYDNEY CARTON IN "THE ONLY WAY."

*Design from Poster drawn by John Hassall, R.A. By permission of David Allen & Sons, Ltd.*

[To face p. 284.]



## “A Tale of Two Cities”

Victoria Theatre, July 7th, 1860. In between these two pieces Davidson the publisher issued “The Tale of Two Cities,” by Henry J. Rivers, an actor, at the Olympic Theatre. This play is word for word, and scene for scene identical with the one by Fox Cooper. George Daniel, who writes an eulogistic preface to Rivers’ piece, declares that the manuscript was in the hands of the printers “before Mr. Tom Taylor’s tale unfolded itself at the Lyceum.” Was Fox Cooper also Henry J. Rivers—or, what happened? I have never seen H. J. Rivers’ name down as an author, while that of Fox Cooper is well known.



## CHAPTER XIX

### “GREAT EXPECTATIONS”

AS in the case of “A Tale of Two Cities,” Dickens ran “Great Expectations,” first of all through the columns of *All the Year Round*, commencing with the number for December 1st, 1860. It was then published in three volumes in 1861, with illustrations by Marcus Stone and a dedication to Chauncey Hare Townshend. Speaking of the tale when he began its composition, Dickens said, “I have made the opening, I hope in its general effect, very droll. I have put a child and a good-natured foolish man in relations that seem to me very funny. Of course I have got in the pivot on which the story will turn, too—and which, indeed, as you remember, was the grotesque tragi-comic conception that first encouraged me.”

That curiously strange personage in the tale, Miss Havisham, is believed to have been drawn from a lady who lived near Hyde Park, and who was burnt to death in her house. “It is further conjectured,” explains F. G. Kitton in his “Life of Dickens” that “for purposes of the story the

## “Great Expectations”

novelist partly availed himself of the wedding breakfast incident related in *Household Words*, in connection with an old and historic London tavern, known as ‘Dirty Dick’s’ in Bishopsgate Street Without.”

As already indicated, Dickens had a great admiration for the talents of J. L. Toole as an actor, and he was particularly anxious that he should play Joe Gargery in an adaptation of “Great Expectations” (a part that ultimately fell into the capable hands of Edward Righton), and after seeing and praising his excellent acting as Dick Dolland in H. J. Byron’s “Uncle Dick’s Darling” at the old Gaiety Theatre, Strand, December 13th, 1869, Dickens good-humouredly asked Toole if he thought it possible that the dramatist had ever heard of another warm-hearted “cheap-jack” whose name was Dr. Marigold?

It is well-known that Dickens highly approved of J. L. Toole’s impersonations of his creations, and the novelist himself declared that all the time he was writing “Great Expectations” “he had the famous actor in his mind for the part of Joe Gargery.” As a matter of fact, Dickens dramatised his own story—and this fact has only recently been discovered—and it was published in 1861 by J. Holsworth at the office of “All the Year Round,” Wellington Street, Strand. “‘Great Expectations.’

## Dickens and the Drama

A Drama in Three Stages. Founded on, and compiled from, the story of that name. By Charles Dickens." It was entered at Stationer's Hall. The piece is most interesting but not dramatic, as there is scarcely any action. It opens, however, with great promise, and then resolves itself too much to mere narrations of scenes and incidents. In the last act there is much more movement, however. I believe a copy of this very rare play by Dickens is priced at thirty pounds.

"Great Expectations" was not acted in London until it was produced at the Court Theatre under the management of Mr. Edward Righton, May 29th, 1871, when a version was written by Mr. (now Sir) W. S. Gilbert.

JOE GARGERY .. ..	Mr. Edward Righton.
PIP ( <i>in Act I.</i> ) .. ..	Miss Jessie Powell.
PIP ( <i>in Acts II. and III.</i> ) ..	Miss Maggie Brennan.
MAGWITCH .. ..	Mr. J. C. Cowper.
ORLICK .. ..	Mr. William Belford.
SERJEANT DRUCE .. ..	Mr. T. W. Edmonds.
JAGGERS .. ..	Mr. John Clayton.
HERBERT POCKET .. ..	Mr. R. Astley.
SERJEANT FILCH .. ..	Mr. C. Parry.
CLERK .. ..	Mr. Jarvis.
THE AVENGER .. ..	Master Edmonds.
ESTELLA .. ..	Miss Eleanor Bufton.
MRS. GARGERY .. ..	Miss Manor.
BIDDY .. ..	Miss Kate Bishop.

A year later, 1872, at Wallack's Theatre, New York, there was presented "My Unknown Friend,"

## “Great Expectations”

a drama in three acts by Shafto Scott, “being a dramatised version of the novel ‘Great Expectations’ by the late Charles Dickens.”

### GREAT EXPECTATIONS.

#### CHARACTERS IN ACT I.

- PIP (*“My father’s family name being Pirip, and my Christian name Philip, my infant tongue could make of both names nothing longer or more explicit than ‘Pip’ ”*) Miss Lewis.
- SERGEANT BENSON (*“On the chase in the name of the Queen, and wanting a blacksmith”*) .. .. Mr. Edwin.
- ABEL MAGWITCH (*“A fearful man, all in coarse gray, with a great iron on his leg”*) .. Mr. Parselle.
- ORLICK (*“This man was dressed in coarse gray, too, and had a great iron on his leg—and was lame, and hoarse, and cold, and was everything that the other man was”*) .. Mr. Arnott.
- JOE GARGERY (*“Joe was a man with curls of flaxen hair on each side of his smooth face, and with eyes of such undecided blue, that they seemed almost to have got mixed with their own whites. He was a mild dear fellow—a sort of Hercules in strength, and also in weakness”*) .. Mr. Clark.

## Dickens and the Drama

MRS. JOE GARGERY (*"Was more than twenty years older than her brother Pip, and had established a great reputation with herself, and the neighbours, because she had brought him up 'by hand' "*) .. Mrs. Sefton.

### CHARACTERS IN ACTS II. AND III.

PIP (*"In the fourth year of his apprenticeship Pip was removed from his present sphere of life, and brought up as a gentleman—in a word, as a young fellow of 'Great Expectations' "*) .. Mr. H. T. Montague.

JOE (*"Still like the steel hammer, that can crush a man or pat an egg-shell, in his combination of strength and gentleness "*) Mr. Clark.

ORLICK (*"Joe's morose journeyman was a broad-shouldered, loose-limbed, swarthy fellow, of great strength, never in a hurry, and always slouching "*) Mr. Arnott.

THE STRANGER, otherwise MAGWITCH (*"He was a secret-looking man. His head was all on one side, and one of his eyes was always half shut, as if he were taking aim at something with an invisible gun "*) Mr. Parselle.

MR. JAGGERS (*"An attorney, with deep-set eyes, black dots of beard and whisker, and the smell of scented soap on his great hands "*) .. Mr. Gilbert.

## “Great Expectations”

- MR. HERBERT POCKET (*“The pale young gentleman, who had a free-and-easy way with him that was very taking”*) Mr. Stevenson.
- MRS. JOE GARGERY (*“Passion was no excuse for her; but it is undeniable that instead of lapsing into passion, she deliberately took extraordinary pains to force herself into it”*) Mrs. Sefton.
- ESTELLA (*“A beautiful young lady at Miss Havisham’s, who was dreadfully proud”*) Miss Burke.
- BIDDY (*“She was not beautiful, and could not be like Estella; but she was pleasant, good, and sweet-tempered”*) .. Miss Dyas.

I do not know who Shafto Scott was, but evidently an Irishman, judging from his uncommon Christian name.

On January 28th, 1892, “Pip’s Patron,” called a “dramatic version of Charles Dickens’s novel,” was acted at the Public Hall, Beccles, Mr. W. J. Rix being responsible for the adaptation.

Upon the authority of Mr. Edmund Yates, the “Great City,” by Andrew Halliday, “was partly plagiarised from ‘Great Expectations.’” It was produced at Drury Lane, April 23rd, 1867.

There is one story by Dickens which is a drama in itself—“Hunted Down”—which, I believe, has never been submitted for a theatrical audience’s judgment.

## CHAPTER XX

### "OUR MUTUAL FRIEND"

IN his "Life" of Charles Dickens, Sir Frank T. Marzials says: "In 'Our Mutual Friend' he is not at his best. It is a strangely complicated story that seems to have some difficulty in unravelling itself: the story of a man who pretends to be dead in order that he may, under a changed name, investigate the character and eligibility of the young woman whom an erratic father has destined to be his bride. A golden-hearted old dust contractor, who hides a will that will give him all that erratic father's property and disinherit the man aforesaid, and who, to crown his virtues, pretends to be a miser in order to teach the young woman, also aforesaid, how bad it is to be mercenary, and to induce her to marry the unrecognised and seemingly penniless son; they marry accordingly, and the poor clerk turns out to be the original heir."

This is very crudely put, but to my mind there is plot enough to hand in the tale for any smart dramatist. Moreover, I can trace at least four

## “Our Mutual Friend”

plays on the subject. The first was “The Golden Dustman,” by H. B. Farnie, produced at Sadler’s Wells, June 16th, 1866—with Charles Warner as Bradley Headstone the schoolmaster. It was afterwards given at Astley’s Amphitheatre and at the Britannia Theatre with great success. Indeed, in these houses and later in the country, the piece was always well received, and became quite a stock play at the minor temples of the drama. “Our Mutual Friend” came out in monthly parts from May, 1864, until November, 1865.

Theodore Taylor, writing at a time when the work was, so to speak, red hot from the press, exclaimed : “ The plot is most ingeniously constructed, and each character an elaborate and highly executed portrait, although, perhaps, occasionally verging on caricature. . . . Taken as a specimen of literary workmanship, it is his best production since ‘ David Copperfield,’ but it is not so popular with readers.”

The cast of the “ Golden Dustman ” is taken from the day bill of the time, Sadler’s Wells, June 16th, 1866, under the management of Mr. W. H. C. Nation:

JOHN HARMON ..	..	..	Mr. Thos. Swinbourne.
ROGUE RIDERHOOD ..	..	..	Mr. W. McIntyre.
BRADLEY HEADSTONE ..	..	..	Mr. Charles Warner.
SILAS WEGG ..	..	..	Mr. George Belmore.
EUGENE WRAYBURN ..	..	..	Mr. F. Barsby.



## Dickens and the Drama

MR. BOFFIN	..	..	..	Mr. Barrett.
MR. WILFER	..	..	..	Mr. W. H. Courtley.
LIZZIE HEXHAM	..	..	..	Miss Ada Dyas.
BELLA WILFER	..	..	..	Miss Fanny Gwynne.
LAVINIA WILFER	..	..	..	Miss Ada Harland.
MRS. WILFER	..	..	..	Mrs. Poynter.
MRS. BOFFIN	..	..	..	Mrs. Bishop.

Of this production, the late Joseph Knight in the *Sunday Times* wrote that it reflected "the highest credit on the discrimination and liberality of his (Mr. Nation's) management." During the same year, Mr. Nation transferred the play to Astley's Theatre with Mr. Edward Atkins as Bradley Headstone, and Mr. James Fernandez, Silas Wegg. The novel was also dramatised for the Britannia Theatre, as the "Dustman's Treasure," July 15th, 1866, with the following cast :—

GAFFER HEXHAM	..	..	..	Mr. W. R. Crauford.
RIDERHOOD	..	..	..	Mr. Robert Bell.
JOHN HARMON	..	..	..	Mr. T. G. Drummond.
EUGENE WRAYBURNE	..	..	..	Mr. R. Leslie.
MR. BOFFIN	..	..	..	Mr. J. Parry.
HEADSTONE	..	..	..	Mr. W. Morton.
SILAS WEGG	..	..	..	Mr. Joseph Reynolds.
MR. WILFER	..	..	..	Mr. W. Newham.
MR. VENUS	..	..	..	Mr. E. Harding.
LIZZIE HEXHAM	..	..	..	Miss Sophie Miles.
MRS. BOFFIN	..	..	..	Mrs. Newham.
MRS. WILFER	..	..	..	Mrs. Morton.
BELLA WILFER	..	..	..	Miss F. Jones.

Another version entitled "Found Drowned ; or,

## “Our Mutual Friend”

Our Mutual Friend,” was played at the Opera Comique, December 26th, 1870, with the following cast :

JOHN HARMON .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	} Mr. George F. Rowe.
ROGUE RIDERHOOD .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	
SILAS WEGG .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	Mr. W. MacIntyre.
BOFFIN .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	Mr. Sam Emery.
BRADLEY HEADSTONE .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	Mr. John Nelson.
LIZZIE HEXHAM .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	Miss Ernstone.
CHARLIE HEXHAM .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	Miss Emily Pitt.
MRS. BOFFIN .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	Mrs. Manders.
BELLA WILFER .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	Miss Rose Lisle.
LAVINIA .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	Miss Tilly Earle.
R. W.'s BETTER HALF .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	Mrs. Holston.

This was by George Fawcett Rowe, in which, it will be seen, he took the characters of John Harmon and Rogue Riderhood. Mr. William MacIntyre, a very firm actor, who was great as Black Mullins, was a capable Silas Wegg ; Mr. Sam Emery a droll Boffin ; and John Nelson a powerful Bradley Headstone. Mr. Rowe afterwards appeared at the Haymarket in his own play of “ Brass,” already referred to, and at Drury Lane. He died September 4th, 1889, after a long and painful illness.

Another play founded on the book was performed at the Amphitheatre, Leeds, in 1867.

### “THE GOLDEN DUSTMAN.”

BRADLEY HEADSTONE .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	Mr. Reginald Moore.
EUGENE WRAYBURN .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	Mr. George Stretton.
JOHN HARMON .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	Mr. W. H. Sharpe.

## Dickens and the Drama

ROGUE RIDERHOOD	..	..	Mr. Geo. Blythe.
MR. BOFFIN	..	..	Mr. Harry Chester.
SILAS WEGG	..	..	Mr. Arthur Williams.
GAFFER HEXHAM	..	..	Mr. Peter Bradley.
MR. VENUS	..	..	Mr. E. W. Garden.
MR. WILFER	..	..	Mr. Montague.
LIZZIE HEXHAM	..	..	Miss Mattie Reinhardt.
MRS. BOFFIN	..	..	Mrs. Lomax.
BELLA WILFER	..	..	Miss Bella Fossette.
LAVINIA WILFER	..	..	Miss Rosine Power.
MRS. WILFER	..	..	Mrs. G. Blythe.

When this was brought to London, and revived by Mr. William Holland at the Surrey Theatre in 1878, Mr. Arthur Williams was again the Silas Wegg.

It was during the writing of "Our Mutual Friend" that Charles Dickens met with two really serious mishaps, from which he never properly recovered. During the summer of 1864, and whilst on a trip to Paris, he had a sunstroke, which greatly alarmed his friends. For many hours he was in a state of collapse, but in due course recovered and returned home. On Saturday, June 10th, 1865, he wrote to John Forster: "I was in the terrific Staplehurst accident, yesterday, and worked for hours amongst the dying and the dead. I was in the carriage that did not go over, but went off the line, and hung over the bridge in an inexplicable manner. No mere words can describe the scene.

## “Our Mutual Friend”

I am away to Gads.” He felt the effects of this experience in the railway smash for a long time, and there is no doubt that “Our Mutual Friend” suffered in skill through his illness, for the book was thrown back more than once, and he had to postpone all work for a time. Dickens spoke thus of the accident in his “Postscript in lieu of Preface” (dated September 2nd, 1865), which accompanied the last number of the story: “On Friday, the ninth of June, in the present year, Mr. and Mrs. Boffin (in their manuscript dress of receiving Mr. and Mrs. Lammle at breakfast), were on the South Eastern Railway with me, in a terribly destructive accident. When I had done what I could to help others, I climbed back into my carriage—nearly turned over a viaduct, and caught aslant upon the turn—to extricate the worthy couple. They were much soiled, but otherwise unhurt. The same happy result attended Miss Bella Wilfer on her wedding-day and Mr. Riderhood inspecting Bradley Headstone’s red neckerchief as he lay asleep. I remember with devout thankfulness that I can never be much nearer parting company with my readers for ever, than I was then, until there shall be written against my life the two words with which I have this day closed this book—The End.”

## CHAPTER THE LAST

### “THE MYSTERY OF EDWIN DROOD”

WHEN Dickens started on his last task—the task that was never to be completed—he most emphatically stated that he was going to write the “mystery” of Edwin Drood and not the history. John Forster, in his “Life of Charles Dickens,” explains that Dickens’s fancy for the tale was expressed in a letter written in the middle of July, 1869. “What should you think of the idea of a story beginning this way: Two people, boy and girl, or very young, going apart from one another, pledged to be married after many years—at the end of the book. The interest to arise out of the tracing of their separate ways, and the impossibility of telling what will be done with that impending fate.” This first thought was abandoned; but it left a strong influence on the tale as it was begun afterwards. “Edwin Drood” was originally to be published in twelve monthly parts with illustrations. Unfortunately it closed with number six only partly written. The story to me, in the opening

## “The Mystery of Edwin Drood”

chapters, is not quite like the Dickens of say “David Copperfield.” The old manner of using odd and out-of-the-way names was still followed, but the style of narrative is distinctly different—though the power and charm remain. Longfellow wrote, when the news of the death of the great novelist was flashed all over the world, “I hope his book is finished. It is certainly one of the most beautiful works, if not the most beautiful of all. It would be too sad to think the pen had fallen from his hand and left it incomplete.”

But alas! it was left incomplete, and though many writers have tried to elucidate the mystery, nobody has done so, or ever will satisfactorily, for the simple reason that only Dickens himself knew how he intended to carry it through. A book was published a few years ago called “Clues to Dickens’s ‘Mystery of Edwin Drood,’” by Mr. J. Cuming Walters, but it was all conjecture, of course.

Mr. Andrew Lang and Mr. William Archer among other clever writers took the matter up and gave their opinions on the subject in the newspapers, the former replying to Mr. Cuming Walters in a small book entitled “The Puzzle of Dickens’s Lost Plot.” Mr. Comyns Carr definitely planned, as far as he himself is concerned, a more or less decisive

## Dickens and the Drama

conclusion in his dramatic version—not the first naturally that has been presented. This Sir Herbert Beerbohm Tree first produced at Cardiff, November 21st, 1907, and later at His Majesty's Theatre, January 4th, 1908.

Before giving John Forster's version of what Dickens really had in his mind in regard to the development of the "mystery," I may state that there were many "endings" supplied by American and other writers at the time of the novelist's death. Here is a list of works that were issued in the States from 1870 until 1878, "The Cloven Foot; being an adaptation of the English novel, 'The Mystery of Edwin Drood,' to American scenes, characters, customs, and nomenclature," by Orpheus C. Kerr: New York, 1870.

"The Mystery of Mr. E. Drood," by Orpheus C. Kerr. The *Piccadilly Annual*, December, 1870. This was evidently brought out in book form later, for we find a work with the same title, called "An Adaptation." "O. C. Kerr" was generally considered to be a humorist—he certainly perpetrated several small works of a quaint, half-philosophical nature—though we do not appreciate the idea of burlesquing a dead writer's unfinished tragedy.

"John Jasper's Secret; A sequel to Charles

## “The Mystery of Edwin Drood”

Dickens's unfinished novel, ‘The Mystery of Edwin Drood.’” This was issued in 1871, from a Philadelphia firm. Next we have “The Mystery of Edwin Drood, Part the Second, by the Spirit Pen of Charles Dickens, etc.” Brattleboro, 1873. If the author of this last perpetration knew how Dickens laughed Spiritualism, particularly the American brand, to scorn in the pages of *Household Words*, he would have saved himself the trouble he must have taken over this concoction. Finally we have, “A Great Mystery Solved; being a sequel to “The Mystery of Edwin Drood,” by Gillan Vase. Three volumes. London, 1878, which is perhaps the best of the series. All these were, of course, unauthorised, it having been distinctly stated by Messrs. Chapman and Hall, in a letter to the *Times* in the summer of 1870, which I quote, that the book would remain unfinished.

“SIR,—“ We find that erroneous reports are in circulation respecting ‘The Mystery of Edwin Drood,’ the novel on which Mr. Dickens was at work when he died. It has been suggested that the tale is to be finished by other hands. We hope you will allow us to state in your columns that Mr. Dickens has left three numbers complete, in addition to those already published, this being one-half of



## Dickens and the Drama

the story as it was intended to be written. These numbers will be published, and the fragment will so remain. No other writer could be permitted by us to complete the work which Mr. Dickens has left."

Although Wilkie Collins was very angry with John Forster for the way in which he prepared and wrote his "Life of Charles Dickens," yet we must remember that the two men were inseparable friends, and the Master almost invariably consulted Forster in his labours and frequently divulged his plots as he saw them in their chrysalis state and as they grew.

Forster says, speaking of the last novel, "I first heard of the later design (of the story) in a letter dated 'Friday, the 6th August 1869,' in which, speaking with the usual unstinted praise he bestowed always on what moved him in others, of a little tale he had received for his journal, he spoke of the change that had occurred to him for the new tale by himself. 'I laid aside the fancy I told you of, and have a very curious and new idea for my new story. Not a communicable idea (or the interest of the book would be gone), but a very strong one, though difficult to work.'"

"The story," adds Forster, "I learnt immediately afterward was to be that of the murder

## “The Mystery of Edwin Drood”

of a nephew by his uncle, the originality of which was to consist in the review of the murderer's career by himself at the close, when its temptations were to be dwelt upon as if, not the culprit, but some other man were the tempted. . . . The last chapters were to be written in the condemned cell, to which his wickedness, all elaborately elicited from him as if told of another, had brought him. Discovery of the murderer, of the utter uselessness of the murder for its object, was to follow hard upon the commission of the deed ; but all discovery of the murder was to be baffled till towards the close, when by means of a gold ring, which had resisted the corrosive effects of lime into which he had thrown the body, not only the person murdered was to be identified, but the locality of the crime, and the man who committed it.”

It will be recollected that the ring taken by Edwin Drood to be given to his betrothed only if their engagement went on, was brought away by him at their last interview. Rosa was to marry Tartar, and Crisparkle the sister of Landless, who was himself, it is conjectured, to have perished in assisting Tartar to finally unmask and seize the culprit.

It is curious to note that in drawing up the agreement for publication of the novel, Mr. Ouvry, his solicitor, had, by Dickens's wish, inserted a

## Dickens and the Drama

clause, thought to be needless, but found to be sadly prophetic and pertinent. It was the first time such a clause had been added to any one of his agreements :—

“That if the said Charles Dickens shall die during the composition of the said work of *The Mystery of Edwin Drood*, or shall otherwise become incapable of completing the said work for publication in twelve monthly parts as agreed, it shall be referred to John Forster, Esqre., one of Her Majesty’s Commissioners in Lunacy, or, in the case of his death, incapacity, or refusal to act, then to such person as shall be named by Her Majesty’s Attorney-General for the time being to determine the amount which shall be repaid by the said Charles Dickens, his executors or administrators for so much of the said work as shall not have been completed for publication.”

Had some sort of premonition occurred to Dickens that the end was near ?

The last page of “Edwin Drood” was written in the Swiss Châlet presented to Dickens by his friend Charles Fechter, the great Anglo-French actor, in the afternoon of his last day of consciousness. He was late in leaving his favourite workshop, as he called the Châlet ; and was then very depressed, tired, and preoccupied. It was not,” say his

## “The Mystery of Edwin Drood”

sister-in-law and his eldest daughter in their volume, ‘The Letters of Charles Dickens,’ “until they were seated at the dinner-table that a striking change in the colour and expression of his face startled his sister-in-law (Miss Hogarth), and on her asking him if he was ill, he said, ‘Yes, very ill; I have been very ill for the last hour.’ ” He would not have a doctor. “No, he would go on with his dinner, and go afterwards to London.”

It was so evident now that he was very seriously ill that Miss Hogarth begged him to lie down.

“Yes, on the ground,” he said, very distinctly—these were the last words he spoke, and he slid from his sister-in-law’s arm and fell upon the floor.

Charles Dickens remained unconscious all through the night of June 8th, 1870, and until ten minutes past six of the next day, when the watchers saw a shudder pass over him, heard him give a deep sigh, saw one tear roll down his cheek, and his soul went forth into eternity.

A correspondent of *T. P.’s Weekly* wrote, in August, 1907 :

“Seeing that anything connected with Dickens is of interest just now, perhaps your readers might like to know of an interesting rencontre that I

## Dickens and the Drama

had two years ago with one George Belcher, who was Dickens's coachman at the time of the great novelist's death. He it was who picked up 'the Master' when the fatal seizure took place, and, with the assistance of Runt, the gardener, carried him upstairs, and put the horse in to drive to Strood for the doctor. I was returning from the Liege Exposition at the time, and a crowded boat and a night passage were not conducive to making the most of this opportunity, but one incident my fellow-passenger related I recall. The family were returning to town, and it was a question of selling one of the horses. Belcher had received an offer for the animal, and although he knew the Master did not like being disturbed at his work, thought it sufficiently important to approach him in his study. 'After vainly trying to attract his attention,' says Belcher, 'I commenced, "I beg your pardon, sir." "Well, what is it?" says the Master. "Oh, it's about the horse, sir," "Damn the horse," says he, and you may be sure I made myself scarce, as I knew I ought not to have disturbed him at his work. Next morning, when I apologised for disturbing him, he said, "Oh, that's all right, Belcher. Now, what about the horse?" and so the matter was arranged.' My friend is, I believe, still living in the back part of Belgium, where

## “The Mystery of Edwin Drood”

he was intending settling down to spend his remaining years, and I can supply his address to any one connected with the Dickensonian Society if they think it worth while to follow up this ‘find.’ ”

Before going into particulars concerning Mr. Comyns Carr’s version of “Edwin Drood,” it will be well to consider some earlier attempts at the dramatisation of the incomplete story. I have before me as I write a printed copy of a play by Walter Stephens entitled, “The Mystery of Edwin Drood,” published by Messrs. Chapman and Hall, Piccadilly. No cast of the characters is given, but I find that the play was produced at the Surrey Theatre, November 4th, 1871. The *Referee* of January 26th, 1908, speaking of this drama, says, “It was a wild and whirling piece of work, chiefly remarkable for the fact that Henry Neville played John Jasper, and, if I remember rightly, Bob Brierly on the same evening. Jasper having murdered Edwin, was thenceforth shadowed by Landless disguised as Datchery. After many alarums and excursions he finally swallowed cold poison and perished miserably at the feet of all concerned.” The theatre at the time was licensed to Mr. E. F. Edgar. This is in truth a very powerful four-act drama, and follows out Dickens’s

## Dickens and the Drama

suggested intentions, as foreshadowed above, very closely.

As already stated "The Mystery of Edwin Drood," was produced at the Surrey Theatre, November 4th, 1871, with the following cast:—

### THE MYSTERY OF EDWIN DROOD

EDWIN DROOD .. ..	Mr. George Warde.
JOHN JASPER .. ..	Mr. Henry Neville.
NEVILLE LANDLESS .. ..	Mr. E. F. Edgar.
THE REV. SEPTIMUS CRISPARKLE .. ..	Mr. E. Butler.
DURDLES .. ..	Mr. John Murray.
GREWGIOUS .. ..	Mr. George Yarnold.
BAZZARD .. ..	Mr. W. Goodwin.
DATCHERY .. ..	Mr. F. Paul.
DEPUTY .. ..	Miss Julia Daly.
ROSA BUDD .. ..	Miss Maria Jones.
HELEN LANDLESS .. ..	Miss M. Hayes.
MRS. CRISPARKLE .. ..	Mrs. Edgar.
MRS. TOPE .. ..	Mrs. Watson.

On May 1st, 2nd, and 3rd, 1876, The Wandering Thespians gave Mr. Walter Stephens' play at the Mirror Theatre, Holborn. I mention this because I observe that Mr. Charles G. Allan was the Hiram Grewgious, and I fancy it is the same Mr. Allan who has long been favourably known on the boards of our West End theatres, especially at the Haymarket, and with Sir Herbert Tree.

Another "Mystery of Edwin Drood," was by

## “The Mystery of Edwin Drood”

G. H. Macdermott, chiefly known to fame as the singer of the great war song, “We don’t want to fight, but by Jingo if we do.” It was presented at the Britannia Theatre on July 22nd, 1872. Of this the *Referee* also has a word to say :

“The other Drood drama I remember was concocted by the late G. H. Macdermott, then a struggling young East-End actor-of-all-work, filling up his time as a playwright, and was played at the Britannia. The Mystery, according to Macdermott panned out in this wise. Jasper, having, as he supposed, for ever ‘removed’ Drood from his path, Landless was presently accused of the murder. Here ended Act I. In Act II. Grewgious’s clerk Bazzard disguised himself as a detective by the name of Datchery, and with the assistance of Durdles anon fastened the crime on Jasper, who revealed his guilty secret in a trance. The play ended by Drood turning up alive, which so astonished Jasper that he fell dead at his nephew’s feet. Jasper was finely played by the ‘Brit.’s’ popular tragedian, Joseph Reynolds ; the still-surviving G. B. Bigwood enacted Durdles ; and Macdermott contented himself with the part of Bazzard, *alias* Datchery—a fine ‘fat’ creation, in which the adapter had taken particularly good care of himself and of which, indeed, he was always very proud.”



## Dickens and the Drama

### "THE MYSTERY OF EDWIN DROOD."

by

G. H. MACDERMOTT.

*Britannia Theatre, July 22nd, 1872.*

DATCHERY	..	..	..	Mr. G. H. Macdermott.
EDWIN DROOD	..	..	..	Mr. Chas. Reeve.
JOHN JASPER	..	..	..	Mr. J. Reynolds.
DEAN OF CLOISTERHAM			..	Mr. T. Hyde.
LANDLESS	..	..	..	Mr. E. Newbound.
DURDLES	..	..	..	Mr. G. B. Bigwood.
DEPUTY	..	..	..	Miss Julia Summers.
GREWGIOUS	..	..	..	Mr. John Parry.
CRISPARKLE	..	..	..	Mr. W. H. Pitt.
ROSA BUDD	..	..	..	Miss L. Macdonald.
HELEN LANDLESS	..	..	..	Miss M. A. Bellair.
OPIUM SAL	..	..	..	Miss Jane Coveney.
MRS. CRISPARKLE	..	..	..	Miss L. Rayner.

Another drama was consummated, called "Alive or Dead," at the Park Theatre, Camden Town, by Robert Hall, May 3rd, 1880.

EDWIN DROOD	..	..	..	Mr. W. Howell.
GREWGIOUS	..	..	..	Mr. F. C. Kirk.
JOHN JASPER	..	..	..	Mr. George Byrne.
DURDLES	..	..	..	Mr. C. Cruikshanks.
CRISPARKLE	..	..	..	Mr. W. Vincent.
LANDLESS	..	..	..	Mr. J. C. Emmerson.
DEPUTY	..	..	..	Mr. H. Selby.
JUSTICE SETTLEM	..	..	..	Mr. Keefe.
ROSA BUDD	..	..	..	Miss Stella Brereton.
HELEN LANDLESS	..	..	..	Miss Alice Raynor.
OPIUM SAL	..	..	..	Miss Bella Cuthbert.

I repeat a statement I have seen in print more

## “The Mystery of Edwin Drood”

than once, which is to the effect that “Edwin Drood” was dramatised by the late Charles Dickens junior (eldest son of the great novelist), and the late Joseph Hatton. The story was concluded on the authority of Charles Dickens himself, who before his death discussed the relation of the mystery with his son. The forecast of the conclusion, more or less communicated to Mr. Luke Fildes, R.A., for the purpose of illustration, agreed with the *dénouement* of the piece. The manuscript of this play still exists in the family, and it was at one time hoped that the late Charles Warner would have taken the character of Jasper. The piece was paragraphed as the next production at the Princess’s Theatre as far back as March, 1880, in the *Theatre Magazine*, but somehow arrangements all fell through. The play was advertised as by Charles Dickens and Joseph Hatton.

When the “Mystery of Edwin Drood” was announced for performance at His Majesty’s Theatre, a regular controversy arose over the points which the torso of the novel leaves uncertain. There was quite a small literature on the subject, and in addition to the publications I have mentioned there were “Did Jasper kill Drood?” and “Who was Datchery?” but perhaps the most important were Mr. Cuming Walter’s “Clues to the Mystery of

## Dickens and the Drama

Edwin Drood," which caused a great sensation at the time, and Mr. Andrew Lang's reply to it, called, "The Puzzle of Dickens's Last Plot," also "Keys to the Drood Mystery," by Mr. Edwin Charles. Of course each writer solves the "mystery" according to his own taste, belief, and inclination. All these books were published before Sir Herbert's production, and doubtless suggested the play.

In the *Daily Chronicle*, during December, 1907, there was much discussion on the subject, and one of the writers on the paper thus expressed himself in regard to the "Mystery of Edwin Drood." "So far as the absolutely certain points are concerned, one may recall that John Jasper, choir-master of Cloisterham Cathedral, and addicted to opium smoking, did obviously in Dickens's narrative intend to murder his own nephew, Edwin Drood. It was practically stated that this intention was the result of Jasper's fierce and hopeless passion for sweet young Rosa Bud, to whom Edwin was betrothed.

"In the same way no one has doubted that Jasper is supposed to have prepared for the murder by a certain strange tour of the cathedral vaults by night with old Durdles, the stonemason, from whom he learned all about the action of quicklime, which would 'destroy everything but metal.' It is evident also that on a fateful Christmas Eve Jasper

## “The Mystery of Edwin Drood”

fomented a quarrel between Edwin and Neville Landless—an excellent young fellow—so that if the murder came off suspicion should rest on Neville.

“On that very night, it will be remembered, in the midst of a wild storm, Edwin Drood vanished, after leaving Jasper’s rooms in company with Neville. Jasper, stranger in manner than ever, and sinking deeper and deeper in his opium habits, does all he can to incriminate Neville. Then Edwin Drood’s watch and chain are found, in the river. Helena Landless, Neville’s ‘gypsy-like’ sister, believes defiantly in her brother’s innocence. Neville is arrested, tried, acquitted, and reads law in London.

“There now arrived at Cloisterham a quaint old person called Datchery, apparently some one in disguise, who announces himself as a ‘single buffer living on his means,’ and shows a curious interest in Jasper. At this tantalising point the story abruptly finishes, cut short by Dickens’s own death.

“Such is a rough outline of the main points of evidence. Did Jasper murder Edwin Drood? As showing the baffling conflict of possibilities, it may be noted that volume upon volume has already been issued putting forward more or less feasible theories.”

## Dickens and the Drama

That the unsolved "Mystery of Edwin Drood" should have created such a stir on the death of Dickens was only natural, seeing that the well-beloved novelist had become a personal part of the readers of the reading world. Ever since the issue of the last fragment written by the novelist on the day of his fatal seizure, speculation has been rife as to the probable trend the story was to have taken in Dickens's mind. Says an authority on the matter, "Shortly after the death of Dickens rumour had it that Wilkie Collins had been asked to complete the book, and that he had promised to do so. So persistent did this rumour become that Messrs. Chapman and Hall, the publishers of the story, found it necessary to state publicly in the *Times* that the statement was without foundation." This letter I have already given in extenso. Later, Wilkie Collins issued a manifesto to the same effect. Wilkie Collins never attempted to finish the story, yet notwithstanding his avowed determination, an edition of the sequel, entitled, "John Jasper's Secret," is still current in America, bearing on the title-page the names of Wilkie Collins and Charles Dickens the younger, and on the back of the volume an embossed portrait of the author of "A Woman in White." As a matter of fact, "John Jasper's Secret, a Sequel to

## “The Mystery of Edwin Drood”

Charles Dickens's unfinished novel ‘The Mystery of Edwin Drood,’ ” to give its full title, was written by a New York journalist, Henry Morford, with the assistance of his wife, both of whom visited England for the purpose. There were eighteen illustrations to this precious fraud, and the work duly appeared in book form in Philadelphia, and in London, but with no statement as to authorship. Subsequent editions appeared, bearing the names of Wilkie Collins and Charles Dickens the younger, as already stated. That this is a shameful falsehood, Wilkie Collins's letter in 1878, in which he said, “I was asked to finish the story, and positively refused,” sufficiently emphasises.

Apart from the deliberate continuations there have been several attempts by inference. Prominent among these must figure that by the late R. A. Proctor, the astronomer: “Watched by the Dead: A Loving Study of Dickens's Half-told Tale,” the purport of which is sufficiently indicated in the title.

How all these solutions and completions differ from each other may be gathered from the following summary in the *Chronicle* :—

“By the authors of ‘John Jasper's Secret’—that Jasper threw Edwin down from the cathedral tower, that Edwin was found alive at the bottom

## Dickens and the Drama

by Durdles, and that Helena Landless, disguised as a boy went to the opium-den in London frequented by Jasper, and overheard his confession.

“By R. A. Proctor—that Jasper partially strangled Edwin, and put him with quick-lime into a vault, and that Edwin was rescued afterwards by Durdles.

“By J. C. Walters—that Jasper did murder Edwin, and that his guilt was exposed by Helena Landless, disguised as Datchery.

“By Andrew Lang—that Jasper attempted the murder, but ‘bungled it,’ and that Edwin escaped, returning disguised as Datchery. [This, as I have already intimated, was a rejoinder to Mr. Walter’s work.]

“It is in the face of all these efforts on the part of close and keen students of Dickens that one may recognise the extreme cleverness of Mr. Comyns Carr’s solution in the play at His Majesty’s Theatre. It is, of course, that Jasper did not even attempt the murder, but went through the whole intended business in an opium trance, and afterwards thought he had actually done it, Edwin Drood having overheard his ravings and escaped.

“This, in any case, as Mr. Carr in all modesty claimed, is the only theory yet advanced that answers every requirement of the murder part of the

## “The Mystery of Edwin Drood”

story. Thus it is on record that Dickens himself described the design of the story as ‘new and incommunicable,’ and that he commissioned Mr. (now Sir) Luke Fildes, who illustrated the book, to sketch the condemned cell at Maidstone, where it was understood Jasper was to confess the crime.” As may be seen, Mr. Carr’s notion allows both for a new and interesting psychological study, and for Jasper’s self-condemnation.

Appended is the full cast of Mr. J. Comyns Carr’s new play, “The Mystery of Edwin Drood,” founded on Charles Dickens’s unfinished novel of that name, at His Majesty’s Theatre, Saturday, January 4th, 1908.

### THE MYSTERY OF EDWIN DROOD.

JOHN JASPER ( <i>Lay Precentor of the Cathedral</i> )	.. ..	Mr. Tree.
EDWIN DROOD ( <i>his nephew and ward</i> )	.. ..	Mr. Basil Gill.
MR. GREWGIOUS ( <i>Rosa Bud’s guardian</i> )	.. ..	Mr. William Haviland.
MR. CRISPARKLE ( <i>Minor Canon of the Cathedral</i> )	.. ..	Mr. Claude Flemming.
NEVILLE LANDLESS ( <i>his pupil</i> )		Mr. Charles Quartermain
THE DEAN OF CLOISTERHAM	..	Mr. Robert H. Atkins.
DURDLES	.. ..	Mr. G. W. Anson.
THE DEPUTY	.. ..	Mr. Frank Stanmore.
A LASCAR	.. ..	Mr. Henry Morrell.
CONGO JACK	.. ..	Mr. Thomas Weguelin.
A SAILOR	.. ..	Mr. A. Corney Grain.
ROSA BUD ( <i>Mr. Grewgious’ ward</i> )	1	Miss Adrienne Augarde.



## Dickens and the Drama

HELENA LANDLESS .. ..	Miss Constance Collier.
MRS. CRISPARKLE ( <i>Mother of the</i> <i>Minor Canon</i> ) .. ..	Miss Cicely Richards.
MISS TWINKLETON ( <i>a School-</i> <i>Mistress</i> ) .. ..	Miss Muriel Alexander.
PRINCESS PUFFER ( <i>Proprietress</i> <i>of an Opium Den</i> ) .. ..	Miss Lydia Rachel.
MRS. TOPE .. ..	Miss Augusta Haviland.
SERVANT TO MRS. CRISPARKLE	Miss Hilda Moore.

ACT I.—Tableau 1. An opium den in the East End of London. Tableau 2. The Cloisters of Cloisterham Cathedral. Tableau 3. A room at Mr. Jasper's.

ACT II.—Tableau 1. Outside the Cathedral. Tableau 2. A room at Mr. Jasper's (six months elapse).

ACT III.—Tableau 1. A room at Mr. Crisparkle's. Tableau 2. The crypt of Cloisterham Cathedral. Tableau 3. A room at Mr. Crisparkle's.

ACT IV.—A room in the infirmary of the county gaol.

Unfortunately the piece failed to attract the public, although it was a magnificent production, and magnificently acted. Indeed, I do not think Sir Herbert Tree ever acted better in his life. It was the weirdest of weird performances and positively thrilling in its intensity and dramatic power. The story, too, as set forth was distinctly and decidedly interesting, and the experiment was well worth the labour and the art spent upon it.

As a matter of record I give the plot from the circular handed to each Press representative on the memorable night of the fascinating performance.

## “The Mystery of Edwin Drood”

### SOME NOTES ON THE PLAY.

“Mr. Carr’s play opens, as Charles Dickens’ novel, with a scene in the East End opium den. John Jasper is discovered in the company of opium-sodden lascars and others. With familiarity to his environment he takes a pipe from the opium hag, Princess Puffer. He dreams and talks in his dreams. His dreams tell secrets. He talks of ‘Ned’ and ‘Cloisterham’ and ‘Rosa.’ The hag listens intently and stores in her memory the words which so frequently recur in his dream wanderings. The uneasy dreams merge into sparkling opium visions of sultans and their palaces, of dancing girls and flashing scimitars, and then slowly he comes back to the wakeful world again. The hag tells him that he has talked in his sleep of his visions, but says no word of his first uneasy mutterings. He leaves her, and the curtain falls on the hag muttering to herself the words ‘Ned, Cloisterham, Rosa.’

“The second scene takes places before the Cathedral at Cloisterham. The service is just over, and the congregation is scattering. Edwin Drood is seen with Rosa Bud, his fiancée, Neville and Helena Landless, Minor Canon Crisparkle, the Dean and others. We learn of the engagement of Edwin and Rosa Bud, and that they are chafing under the fact that the engagement had been imposed on them

## Dickens and the Drama

'by will and bequest' and their coming separation is foreshadowed. We learn also of the sombre passion of Jasper for Rosa, of her shuddering disgust at his presence, and that his mind is obsessed by the intention of Drood's murder. From Durdles' garrulous chatter we see him learning the means by which he shall do his work and hide it.

"The intense interest in the drama begins in the second act. Jasper, Drood and Neville Landless sup together on that wild eventful Christmas Eve. All seem good-will and good-fellowship between them. Then Jasper, slipping aside, pours some powerful powdered drug into his brew of mulled port and ladles it out with eager nervous haste into the others' glasses. A quarrel follows between Drood and Landless—the quarrel over Rosa's picture—and presently the two, reconciled in their half-drugged state, go out to watch the storm upon the river, Landless is seen no more upon that night, but Jasper, brooding over the foul deed he means to do, is startled by Drood's return alone. While the lad sits in a drowsy sleep he steels his nerves to strangle him. He loops his woollen scarf all ready, but resolution fails him. Drood awakes and goes to his bed. Jasper returns to the fire to brood again on his intended crime. The opium hag steals in. She had traced him from London. Jasper again

## “The Mystery of Edwin Drood”

takes the drug and in a delirious dream again, as so often before, enacts by himself an imagined murder of Drood. His cries awake the sleeping lad, who stealing down, to his inexpressible horror, sees and hears enough. He feels they must never meet again. He stealthily goes out. Jasper awakes at dawn with all the horror of the dream upon him, he finds the watch and chain—the metal that lime could not destroy—in the place where, having stolen them from Drood’s sleeping body, he has put them till the morning. Uncertain yet whether he dreams or not, he hastens to the bedroom, finds that Drood is not there, and then, convinced of his crime, rushes down, pale and nerve-shattered, to meet Mr. Crisparkle, and tries to throw suspicion on the luckless Landless.

“Suspicion upon Landless grows, and it is only Mr. Grewgious who scents the true trail. He tells Jasper of the ring which Drood returned to him on the night of his supposed murder, and he frightens Jasper into believing that this ring must be amongst the dust in the vault where Drood’s body in his dream was cast into lime. Surprising Jasper coming out of the vault he holds up the ring, and Jasper taking it for the last evidence of his guilt, falls in a faint. In the next scene he confesses the murder, and finally is found, a dying man, in the Infirmary

## Dickens and the Drama

of the County gaol. There again, in delirium, he is dreaming and shuddering at his crime. Mr. Crisparkle is comforting his last moments, when, as an apparition to him, comes Drood in the flesh. Jasper, with enough return to consciousness to see Drood and Rosa brought to each other again before him, dies, and the curtain falls with these two in forgiveness mourning him."

In conclusion I may state that, almost without exception, the London press hailed the play, if not as a masterpiece, at any rate as a wonderful achievement, and a great success for all concerned. And yet it only ran a little over one month.

# INDEX

NOTE.—*All references to the Plays by Charles Dickens and those based on his works will be found under the heading "Plays;" and the "Theatres" mentioned will be found under that heading only. As Charles Dickens's name will be seen on almost every page, it has not been thought necessary to make extended reference to his cognomen, except in the general instances recorded.*

- A'BECKETT, Gilbert Abbott,  
17, 18, 198, 199  
Abingdon, W. L., 97  
"Actor's Story," An, 196  
Adair, Miss Lilian, 147  
Adamson, Thomas L., 115  
Addie, Mrs., 135  
Addison, E., 44, 90, 179  
—, Miss Fanny, 233, 235,  
236, 241  
—, Miss Carlotta, 68, 69,  
93, 206, 227  
Ainger, Canon, 45  
Ainsworth, W. Harrison, 66,  
185  
Albery, James, 90  
Albert, M., 139  
—, Prince, 18, 22, 27, 31  
Aldridge, Mr., 189  
Alexander, Muriel, 318  
Alexandre, M., 139  
Allan, Charles G., 308  
—, Oswald, 249  
Allen, Fred, 113, 254  
—, F. H., 72, 227  
Allison, Miss, 99  
*All the Year Round*, 58, 269,  
270, 271, 286, 287  
Almar, George, 99, 101, 102,  
164, 238  
Alston, Miss Muriel, 98  
Amalia, Miss, 228  
"American Notes," 13, 184  
Amsterdam, 245  
Andrews, Mr., 176  
Anson, G. W., 110, 317  
Anstead, P., 170  
Antony, Miss Hilda, 195  
Archer, William, 253, 299  
Arnold, Havard, 284  
—, Mrs. Grace, 136  
Arnott, Mr., 289, 290  
Arthur, W., 260  
Ashton, Miss, 146  
Astley, R., 288  
*Athenæum*, 164, 209, 247  
Atkins, Edward, 260, 294  
—, Miss Marian, 225  
—, Robert H., 317  
Attwood, W., 79, 183, 238

# Index

Auber, 88  
 Augarde, Miss Adrienne, 317  
 Austin, H., 8  
 Ayliffe, Mr., 183, 224

BADDELEY CAKE, 35  
 Bailey, Miss, 133  
 Baker, J., 5, 116  
 Balfour, Alfred, 254  
 Ball, Miss, 211  
 Ballad of "Little Nell," 150  
 Balmain, Rollo, 114  
 Bancroft, Lady, 174  
 —, Miss Helen, 113, 255  
 —, Sir Squire, 174  
 "Barnaby Rudge," 159  
 Barnes, J. H., 207  
 Barnett, C. Z., 99, 115, 191  
 —, Morris, 59  
 Barrett, George, 238, 258, 294  
 —, Miss, 215  
 —, Wilson, 244  
 Barrington, Rutland, 92  
 Barrow, E., 8  
 Barrowcliff, Mr., 134  
 Barry, Miss Helen, 227  
 Barsby, Frank, 293  
 Bartlett, G. B., 147  
 Bartley, George, 3, 64  
 Bateman, H. L., 89  
 —, Miss Jessie, 207  
 Bates, Miss Mary, 254  
 Bathurst, F., 169  
 Batson, J. Hastings, 251  
 Bauer, J. G., 110  
 Beaumont, Miss Fanny, 259  
 Beazley, Samuel, 62, 125, 127  
 Beck, Philip, 91  
 Bedford, Duke of, 205  
 —, Paul, 145, 165, 198, 273  
 —, Henry, 251

"Behind the Footlights," 7  
 Belcher, George, 306  
 Belford, William, 89, 258, 288  
 Bell, Robert, 28, 294  
 Bellair, Miss M. A., 310  
 Belmore, George, 68, 90, 134, 146, 204, 216, 238, 293  
 —, Lionel, 243  
 Bellwood, Miss Bessie, 93  
 "Ben was a Hackney Coachman," 76  
 Bender, C., 144, 202  
 Benedict, A. E., 98  
 Benson, W., 255.  
*Bentley's Miscellany*, 98  
 Beresford, J. C., 212  
 Berger, Francesco, 48  
 Berlyn, Ivan, 113, 115, 149, 152, 153  
 Bernard, J., 259  
 Bertollet, M., 139  
 Besmeres, J. Daly, 134  
 Beverley, H., 106, 128, 131, 132  
 Bew, Miss, 17  
 Bigwood, G. B., 309, 310  
 Billington, John, 68, 273  
 —, Mrs., 68, 69  
 Bishop, Alfred, 134, 200  
 —, Miss Kate, 181, 182, 288  
 —, Mrs., 294  
 Blackmore, Edward, 53  
 Blackwood, Miss Emilie, 170  
 —, Miss Virginia, 146, 147, 169, 170, 219, 249, 250  
 Blakeley, W., 146  
 Blanchard, E. L., 68, 90, 108, 162  
 Blande, Miss Edith, 110  
 "Bleak House," 246  
 Blinn, Holbrook, 195, 283

# Index

Blythe, George, 295  
 Bond, Acton, 283  
 Borgeois, Anicet, 279  
 Borthwick, T. C., 112  
 Boucicault, Dion, 203, 205,  
     275  
 Bourchier, Arthur, 206  
 Bournemouth Sanatorium,  
     39  
 Boutin, M., 139  
 Bouverie, Miss Nellie, 230,  
     241  
 Bowman, Miss Empsie, 207  
     —, Miss Nellie, 98  
 Boyce, Mrs. Charles, 278  
 Boyle, Miss Mary, 282  
 "Boz," 2, 56, 58, 62, 83, 98,  
     132, 145, 164, 223  
 Brabant, Miss C., 236  
 Bradbury, J. W., 22, 255  
 Bradley, Peter, 295  
 Bradshaw, Jack, 278  
     —, Mr., 133  
 Brady, Miss, 191  
 Braham, John, 56, 58, 59,  
     60, 61, 116  
 Braid, James, 187  
 Brand, Miss Kate, 113, 253  
     —, Oswald, 72, 113, 253,  
     255  
 Branscombe, W. L., 68, 90  
 "Bravo Rouse," 163  
 Brennan, Miss Maggie, 134,  
     288  
 Brereton, Miss Stella, 240,  
     310  
 Brett, Stanley, 195  
 Bridge, Sir Frederick, 94  
 Brille, Charles, 239  
 British Museum, 168  
 Brodie, Sir Benjamin, 81  
 Brooke, E. H., 135, 240  
     —, Mrs. E. H., 98

Brooke, Gustavus V., 146  
 Brookes, Miss, 80  
 Brooks, Shirley, 218  
     —, Miss Emily, 48  
 Brophie, Miss Annie, 252  
 Brough, Miss Fanny, 93  
     —, Lionel, 108, 109, 179,  
     211  
     —, Robert, 257  
 Brougham, John, 148, 218,  
     225, 226, 227, 233, 237  
     —, Mrs., 227  
     —, W. H., 280  
 Brown, Miss, 168  
 Browne, H. K. (see "Phiz"),  
     140, 267  
 Browning, Oscar, 95  
 Brunton, Master, 132, 188  
     —, Walter E., 190  
 Buckstone, John Baldwin,  
     76, 78, 132, 179  
 Bufton, Miss Eleanor, 288  
     —, J. C., 195  
 Bunsen, Chevalier, 31  
 Burdett Coutts, Baroness,  
     173  
 Burgoyne, Mr., 241  
 Burke, Miss, 291  
 Burnand, Sir Frank C., 92,  
     181, 208, 237, 238, 240  
 Burnett, J. P., 246, 247,  
     253  
 Burnley, T., 280  
 Burton, E., 79  
     —, W. E., 143, 225, 226  
     —, Mrs., 225  
 Butler, E., 211, 308  
     —, E. H., 132, 146  
     —, H., 238  
     —, Miss, 189  
 Byefield, Fred, 133, 278  
 Byrne, G., 93  
 Byron, H. J., 109, 287



## Index

- CALHAEM, Stanislaus, 91, 148,  
     165  
 Calvert, Mrs. Charles, 198  
 Campbell, Duncan, 147  
     —, Mrs., 267, 172  
 Cane, Master, 207  
 Canninge, George, 236  
 Carey, G. P., 251  
 Carlisle, Miss Sybil, 98  
     —, Miss, 211  
*Carlton Chronicle*, 63  
 Carlyle, Thomas, 39, 46, 81,  
     256, 275  
 Carne, Joseph, 241  
 Carpenter, J. E., 230  
 Carr, Comyns, 299, 307, 316,  
     317  
 Carton, Mrs. R. C., 49  
 Cartwright, Charles, 230,  
     232, 242, 243  
     —, Miss Edith, 231, 243  
 Cates, Frank, 170, 219  
 Cattermole, George, 17, 20,  
     140  
 Caulfield, Mrs., 179  
 Cavanagh, L., 243  
 Cave, Joseph Arnold, 171  
 Cavendish, Miss Ada, 248  
 Cecil, Arthur, 92  
     —, Charles, 168  
 Celeste, Madame, 275, 277,  
     278  
 Cervantes, 82  
 Chamberlaine, Edward, 168,  
     169, 219  
 Chambers, H. Kellett, 243  
 Chamier, Frances, 98  
 Chandler, E., 255  
 Chaplin, Miss Ellen, 29, 165,  
     178, 187, 191, 198, 199, 202  
 Chapman and Hall, 67, 112,  
     122, 301, 307  
 Chapman, R., 166  
 Charing Cross Hospital, 89  
 Charles, Fred, 237, 238  
     —, Edwin, 312  
 Chart, H. Nye, 283  
 Charteris, Alice, 252  
 Chartley, Miss, 131  
 Charvay, M., 96  
 Chavigny, Joseph, 270  
 Chester, Harry, 295  
     —, Miss, 165  
 Chicheley, Mr., 79  
 "Chickabary Cove," 112  
 Chilly, M., 139  
 Chippendale, F., 70  
 Christie, Manson and Wood,  
     160  
 Christmas Books, The, 185  
 Christopher Tadpole, 208  
 Clarence, Miss Nellie, 72,  
     152, 255  
 Clark, Mr., 289, 290  
 Clarke, Charley, 114  
     —, C. A., 113, 152  
     —, Creston, 136  
     —, John, 134, 179, 237,  
         267  
     —, John S., 135, 136  
     —, Kinloch, 215  
 Clayton, John, 108, 109, 279,  
     280, 288  
     —, Miss E., 219  
 Clement, Miss Elfrida, 207  
     —, Frank A., 112  
 Clifton, Miss Harriett, 249  
     —, J., 176, 200  
     —, Lewis, 180  
 "Cloven Foot," 300  
 "Coal Hole," 248  
 Cockrill, W., 184  
 Coe, Mr. and Mrs., 29, 30  
 Coffin, Hayden, 284  
 Coghlan, Miss Rose, 134, 288  
 Cohen, Mrs. Isaac, 278

# Index

- Colburn, Henry, 65  
 Coleman, Miss Fanny, 149,  
     225  
     —, John, 270, 271, 275,  
     276, 277  
 Collet, Miss, 101  
     —, Mr., 90  
 Collette, Charles, 93, 231,  
     236, 240, 241, 242, 243  
 Collier, Miss Constance, 98,  
     318  
     —, Hal, 255  
     —, J. W., 176, 239  
 Collingham, George, 112  
 Collins, Frank, 113, 152  
     —, Wilkie, 28, 29, 38, 39,  
     45, 46, 48, 49, 67, 70, 216,  
     217, 248, 269, 282, 302,  
     314, 315  
 Compton, Edward, 49, 250  
     —, Henry, 50  
     —, Mrs., Henry, 29, 49  
     —, Miss, 49  
 Connell, Miss, 207  
 Conway, Miss Annie, 114  
     —, F. B., 70  
     —, Mrs. F. B., 69, 70  
     —, H. B., 235, 236  
     —, Mr., 184  
 Cook, Dutton, 5, 73  
 Cooke, G., 44, 79, 215  
     —, Miss, 143  
     —, J. P., 107  
 Cooper, Frank, 242  
     —, Fox, 142, 275, 278, 285  
     —, Harwood, 224, 237  
     —, Miss Margaret, 200  
 Coote, Berte, 228  
     —, Charles, 149, 253  
     —, Miss Lizzie, 110  
 Corcoran, Leslie, 249  
 Cornwall, Harry, 147, 169,  
     170, 219  
 Costello, Dudley, 17, 28, 29  
 Cottrell, Miss, 128  
 "Course of True Love," 93  
 Courtney, W. H., 131, 143,  
     259, 294  
 Coutts, Compton, 195  
 Coveney, Miss Jane, 239,  
     310  
     —, Miss Harriett, 91,  
     135, 237, 239  
 Cowden - Clarke, Mr. and  
     Mrs., 21, 23, 39  
 Cowell, Miss Lydia, 181, 182,  
     250, 251  
 Cowl, Mr., 198  
 Cowper, J. C., 227, 288  
 Coyne, Edgar, 239  
 Crabtree, Miss Lotta, 148  
 Crane, Mr., 188  
 Crauford, J. R., 182, 280  
     —, W. R., 218, 294  
 Craven, H. T., 203  
 Crellin, H., 90  
 Cremer, Betsy, 245  
 Crichton, H., 170  
 Cripplegate Institute, 94,  
     230  
 Crisp, H., 107, 251  
 Crofton, Cecil, 253  
 Crowe, Miss Sidney, 212  
 Cruikshank, George, 65, 98,  
     104, 107  
 Cruikshanks, Charles, 310  
 Cruise, Miss, 107  
 Crutwell, Mr., 200  
 Crystal Palace, 91  
 Cullen, Mr., 100  
 Cullenford, J., 77, 128, 132,  
     145, 165, 198  
 Cumberland's British The-  
     atre, 142  
 Cuninghame, Peter, 28, 66  
 "Curious Shops," 155

# Index

- Cuthbert, Miss Bella, 267,  
300  
Cympson, E., 171
- Daily Chronicle, The*, 264,  
312, 315  
*Daily Telegraph, The*, 118,  
119, 153, 160
- Dairolles, Miss Adrienne, 250
- Dale, J., 143, 176
- Dallas, J. J., 92, 93
- Dalor, Alfred M., 149
- Dalton, Miss Marie, 206, 236
- Daly, Miss, 80, 191  
—, Mrs. W., 101, 131,  
191  
—, Miss Ellen, 210  
—, Miss Julia, 308  
—, Miss Maria, 227
- Daniel, Miss May, 207  
—, George, 285
- Danks, Miss Maude, 242
- Darwin, Thomas, 242
- d'Aulnoy, Countess, 38
- Davenay, M., 139
- Davenport, A. H., 204  
—, H., 250  
—, Miss Jean, 120  
—, T. D., 9, 118, 119, 120
- Davey, E., 255  
"David Copperfield," 25,  
240, 245
- Davis, Mrs., 110  
—, Mr., 168
- Dawson, Miss, 202  
—, Stewart, 216, 230
- Day, Philip, 237  
—, W. C., 7
- "Death of Nelson," 56
- De Lara, George, 243
- Dene, Miss Dorothy, 253
- Denman, Lord, 81
- Dent & Co., 93
- Denvil, Miss Alice, 279
- Derrick, Lawrence, 254  
—, Leonard, 72
- Derry, Miss Joan, 231, 243
- De Silva, Miss, 283, 284
- De Solla, Henry, 112
- D'Este, Miss, 179  
—, Mrs., 68
- Devonshire, Duke of, 27
- Dexter, Walter, 93, 115,  
171, 230
- Dickens, Mrs., 13, 73, 221  
—, Alfred Tennyson, 48,  
161  
—, Augustus, 8, 17  
—, Charles W., 154  
—, Frederick, 8, 17  
—, John, 8  
—, Miss Fanny, 38, 56  
—, Miss Kate, 39  
—, Miss Letitia, 8
- Dickens, Charles :  
Actor, as an amateur, 11  
"Barnaby Rudge," 185  
"Bleak House," 246  
Christmas Books, *The*, 185  
"David Copperfield," 232  
"Dombey and Son," 221  
Dramas from his Works,  
73  
Dramatist, as a, 55  
Early Days, 1  
"Great Expectations,"  
285  
"Hard Times," 256  
"Little Dorrit," 262  
Many Performances, 22  
"Martin Chuzzlewit," 173  
"Master Humphrey's  
Clock," 140  
"Mystery of Edwin  
Drood," *The*, 298  
"Nicholas Nickleby," 117

# Index

- Dickens, Charles—*continued*  
 "Old Curiosity Shop,"  
 The, 140  
 "Oliver Twist," 97  
 "Pickwick Papers," 73  
 "Tale of Two Cities," A,  
 267  
 Dickens, Charles, the younger,  
 48, 75, 102, 148, 211, 233,  
 247, 252, 260, 311, 314,  
 315  
 "Dickensian," 158, 244  
 "Did Jasper kill Drood?"  
 311  
 Dilley, Joseph J., 180  
 Dillon, Charles, 172  
 Dinaux, Prosper, 138  
 "Dinner at Poplar Walk,"  
 A, 2  
 "Dirty Dick's," 287  
 Dixie, Mr., 190  
 Dobell, E. H., 114  
 —, Frederick, 279  
 Dodsworth, Charles, 251  
 "Dombey and Son," 25  
 D'Orsay, Lawrence, 251  
 Doughty, Mr., 168  
 Douglas, John, 240  
 —, Miss Nell, 243  
 —, Richard, 240  
 —, Mr., 259  
 "Dramatic List," The, 238  
 Drane, A., 227  
 Drummond, Miss Dolores,  
 247, 248, 249, 257  
 —, T. G., 218, 294  
 Dudley, Miss Lilian, 251  
 Dugue, Ferdinand, 279  
 Dunbar, Miss Hilda, 219  
 Duncan, Miss Emily, 135  
 Dunn, Mr., 76, 133  
 Dumas, Alexandre, 269  
 Duval, M., 96  
 Dwyer, T. C., 112  
 Dyas, Miss Ada, 291, 294  
 —, Edward, 90  
 EARLE, Miss Jessie, 234  
 Eastland, H., 251  
 Eaton, W., 18  
 Eburne, W. H., 273  
*Echo, The*, 158  
 Eddystone Lighthouse, 42  
 Edgar, E. F., 230, 307, 308  
 —, Mrs., 308  
 —, Miss, 133  
 Edmonds, T. W., 288  
 —, Master, 288  
 Edouin, Miss Eliza, 259  
 —, Miss Rose, 215, 259  
 —, Willie, 215  
 Edves, Mr., 70  
 Edwards, Mr., 177  
 Edwin, Mr., 289  
 Egan, Miss, 203, 239  
 —, Pierce, 81, 83, 87  
 Egg, Augustus, 20, 29, 47  
 Eldred, Joseph, 205, 236  
 Elliot, George, 146, 205  
 Ellis, Walter, 212  
 Elliston, J. F., 255  
 Elphick, Miss, 239  
 Elphinstone, James, 260  
 Emeric, Harry, 113  
 Emery, Samuel, 109, 112,  
 134, 136, 175, 201, 204,  
 227, 228, 233, 234, 295  
 —, Miss Winifred, 241  
 Emmerson, J. C., 310  
 Emperor Frederick, 57  
 Emson, Frank E., 93, 112  
 English, George, 200, 249  
 "Era Almanack," The, 163  
*Era, The*, 136, 163, 165, 215,  
 267, 275  
 Ernstone, Miss, 205, 235, 295

# Index

- Eschborn, Fraulein, 268  
 Esmond, Miss Georgina, 93  
 Esperanto, 95  
 Evans, Mr., 17  
*Evening Standard*, 155  
 Everard, Walter, 237  
 Everill, Frederick, 283  
 Eversfield, Miss, 169  
 Eversleigh, Miss Blanche,  
     212  
 Ewell, Miss Caroline, 136,  
     146, 211, 233, 235, 242  
 Eylders, Heer, 245  
 Eyre, Miss Sophie, 230, 241  
 Eytinge, Miss Rose, 110  
  
 FABER, Father, 81  
 Fairlie, Francis, 248  
 Falconer, Mrs. Edmund, 238  
 Fane, Miss Margery, 207  
 Farnie, H. B., 293  
 Farquhar, Gilbert, 280  
 Farren, Miss Ellen, 89, 91,  
     136, 179, 203, 206, 211  
     —, William, 163, 181  
 "Father and Daughter,"  
     123  
 Fawcett, Charles, 228  
 Fawn, James, 237  
 Fechter, Charles, 68, 69, 304  
 Fenton, A., 72  
     —, C. H., 165  
 Fernandez, James, 134, 227,  
     236, 237, 239, 260, 294  
 Ferrand, Frederick, 270, 280  
 Fields, J. T., 33  
*Figaro in London*, 116  
 Fildes, Sir Luke, R.A., 311,  
     317  
 Findon, B. W., 149  
 "Fine Old English Gentle-  
     man," 80  
 Fischer, Trant, 114  
  
 Fish, Mr., 89  
 Fisher, David, 91, 146, 236,  
     273  
 Fitzgerald, Percy, 95  
 Fitzjames, Miss, 162, 184  
 Fitz Roy, Mr., 169, 239  
 FitzWilliam, Mrs., 77, 78,  
     202, 213  
 Flemming, Claude, 317  
     —, W., 162  
 Fletcher, Mr., 18  
 Flint, William Hurst, 153  
 Flockton, J. P., 247  
 Florence, Mr. and Mrs. W. J.,  
     228, 229  
 "Follow the Drum," 80  
 Foote, Barrington, 242  
     —, Miss Lydia, 50, 135,  
     237  
 Forbes, Mr., 100  
 Forest, Master, 202  
 Forester, Mr., 59, 60, 62  
 Forman, Mr., 188  
 Forrester, Henry, 165, 277  
 Forster Library, 64  
     —, Miss, 202  
     —, John, 1, 3, 9, 11, 18,  
         20, 26, 28, 34, 35, 51, 58,  
         64, 66, 67, 81, 104, 105,  
         106, 127, 128, 187, 198,  
         201, 218, 260, 269, 298,  
         300, 302, 304  
 Fortescue, Miss, 17, 21, 106,  
     114, 162, 163, 176, 198  
     —, Mr., 238  
 Fosbroke, Mrs., 128, 132, 145  
 Fossette, Miss Bella, 295  
 Foster, Miss M., 249  
 Fox, George E., 91  
 Frampton, Miss, 202  
 France, Mr., 101  
 Frances, Miss Ada, 255  
 Francis, Miss Amy, 114

# Index

- Francks, Miss H., 231  
*Frazer's Magazine*, 138, 185  
 Frederick, Emperor, 51  
 Freeborn, Mr., 132, 176, 189, 198  
 French Revolution, 275  
 French's, Limited, 108, 226  
 Furtado, Charles, 91
- GADSHILL, 44  
 Galer, Eliot, 281  
 Garden, E. W., 146, 295  
 Gardner, Lady, 163  
 —, Mr., 57  
 Garnet-Vayne, Miss Fay, 152  
 —, Miss Isla, 152  
 Garnett, Master, 152  
 Garrick, Mrs., 176  
 Gascoigne, Mr. and Mrs. H., 152  
 Gem, T. H., 92  
 Gemier, M., 96  
 George, Miss, 128, 132  
 Gibbons, Miss, 255  
 Gideon, Johnnie, 278  
 Gilbert, Sir W. S., 288  
 —, Master, 258  
 —, Mr., 290  
 Gilchrist, Miss Constance, 228  
 Gill, Basil, 98, 317  
 Gillmore, Miss Nellie, 113  
 Gilray, Arthur, 14  
 Giradot, E., 251  
 Glennaire, Mr., 198  
 Glover, Stephen, 230  
 Goethe, 30  
 Gold, Miss Sadie, 255  
 Goldmark, Carl, 207  
 Goldsmith, Mr., 190  
 Goodwin, W., 308  
 Gordon, Mr. and Mrs., 168  
 —, Miss Harriett, 259
- Gordon, Miss Kathleen, 254  
 —, Walter, 44  
 Gough, Miss, 177  
 Gourlay, Miss Louisa, 251  
 Gower, Miss, 114, 128, 131  
 —, Mrs., 145  
 Goy, Andre de, 212  
 Graeme, J., 236  
 Graham, Miss Kate, 147  
 Grahame, J. G., 181  
 Grain, A. Corney, 317  
 Grainger, Miss Jennie, 200  
 Granby, Mr. and Miss, 162  
 Granville, H. Such, 169  
 —, Miss Vera, 207  
 Gras, Anatole, 139  
 Gray, Alfred, 98  
 —, Charles, 72  
 —, Mr., 177  
 —, Mrs. Gordon, 114  
 Gray's Inn, 55  
 "Great Expectations," 286  
 "Great Mystery Solved," A, 301  
 "Great Winglebury Duel," 62, 67  
 Green, Mr. and Mrs. E., 133  
 —, Frank W., 249  
 —, R., 100  
 —, Mr., 162, 190  
 Greenwood, Percy, 212  
 Grein, Mrs. J. T., 207  
 Gresham, W. F., 168  
 Grey, Lawrence, 230  
 —, Mrs. Lennox, 179  
 —, Miss May, 114  
 Grieve, Thomas, 29  
 Griffin, L., 145, 254  
 Griffiths, Miss, 235, 236  
 —, Mrs., 239  
 Grimston, Miss Dorothy, 207  
 "Grip," the Raven, 160, 161  
 Grossmith, George, 89

# Index

Grosvenor, Miss B., 243  
 Groves, Miss, 176  
 Guild of Literature and Art,  
     27  
 Gwynne, Miss Fanny, 294

HALL, H., 79, 80, 182, 183,  
     215  
     —, Mrs. H., 80  
     —, Mrs. S. C., 62  
     —, Robert, 310  
 Halliday, Andrew, 134, 146,  
     160, 227, 233  
 Hallier, Miss Ruby, 212  
 Halton, Joseph, 192, 200, 311  
 Hamilton, Mrs. E., 80  
     —, Claude, 70  
     —, George, 240  
     —, James, 176, 229, 230  
 Hammond, Miss, 259  
     —, Mrs., 80  
     —, W. J., 10, 78, 79, 223  
 Hanbury, Charles, 97  
 Hanover Square Rooms 27,  
 Harcourt, Charles, 211  
 Hardacre, Miss Mary, 72,  
     255  
 Harden, Robert, 19  
 Harding, Albert, 152  
     —, E., 144, 294  
     —, Miss E., 198  
     —, Lynn, 97  
     —, Rudge, 254  
 Hardy, Right Honourable  
     Gathorne, 111  
 Harland, Miss Ada, 294  
 Harley, John Pritt, 10, 57,  
     59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 67  
 Harper Brothers, 174  
 Harris, Augustus, 234  
     —, Miss Nelly, 247  
     —, Mrs., 162

Harrison, Miss Bessie, 242  
     —, Miss Fanny, 278  
     —, Stanley, 243  
 Harry, F. J., 115, 207  
 Hart, Mr., 99  
 Harvey, Martin, 269, 283,  
     284  
 Harwood, John, 172  
     —, Robb, 242, 254  
 Hastings, Miss, 252  
 "Haunted Man," The, 25,  
     212, 213  
 Haviland, Miss Augusta, 318  
     —, William, 317  
 Hawkins, Henry, 25  
     —, Miss Iris, 93  
     —, Mr., 190  
 Hawthorn, Miss Grace, 112  
 Hayes, Miss, 308  
 Haynes, T. P., 93, 98  
 Hearn, Arthur, 158  
 Heffer, Miss Emily, 135  
 Henderson, Mr., 133  
 Hendrie, Ernest, 216, 253  
 Hemsley, A., 255  
 Herbert, J., 176  
     —, Miss Louisa, 215  
     —, Mr., 258  
 Hersee, Master, 195  
 Heslop, Mr., 101, 131, 191  
 Hibbert, Miss Louise, 247  
 Hicks, N. T., 144  
     —, Mrs., 191  
     —, Miss O., 188  
     —, Seymour, 192, 195  
 Higgie, Thomas, 164, 167,  
     168, 174, 175  
     —, Mrs., 168  
 Hill, Miss Caroline, 280  
     —, Miss Marion, 90  
     —, W. J., 134  
 Hinton, Miss, 17  
 "History of Our Times," 34

# Index

- Hitchenson, J., 133, 143  
Hodson, Miss Henrietta, 108  
Hogarth, Mrs., 221  
—, Miss, 25, 305  
—, William, 103  
Holland, Will, 72  
—, William, 295  
Hollingshead, John, 162, 211,  
228, 295  
Hollingsworth, Mr., 57  
" Holly Tree," 214  
Holme, Miss Myra, 228  
Holmes, Mr., 132, 188  
Holston, Mrs., 295  
Holsworth, 287  
Honey, George, 187-189  
Honner, Robert, 23, 190  
—, Mrs. R., 104, 105,  
203, 211  
Hood, Thomas, 164  
Horne, R. H., 28, 30, 66  
Horncastle, H., 130  
Horsman, Charles, 165  
—, Mrs., 166  
*Household Words*, 25, 38, 58,  
213, 256, 271, 287, 301  
Howard, Miss Bella, 149  
—, Cecil, 112  
—, Eardley, 284  
—, Miss May, 72, 255  
—, Henry, 133  
—, John, 133, 227, 258,  
278  
—, J. C., 251  
—, Miss H., 71  
—, Mrs., 143  
Howe, J. B., 249  
Howell, W., 310  
Hudson, Mr., 198  
Hudspeth, Miss, 135  
—, Miss Marie, 136  
Hughes, Fred, 228  
—, Mrs. H., 191  
Hullah, John, 58, 60  
Hunt, Henry, 281  
—, Leigh, 21  
Huntley, F., 224  
"Hurrah for the Red, White,  
and Blue," 80  
"Hurrah for the Road," 80  
Hurst, Terry, 249  
  
" I CARE not for Spring," 94  
Imas, Mr., 76  
Inchbald, Mrs., 25  
Innes, Herbert, 284  
Irish, F. W., 135  
Irving, Sir Henry, 60, 90,  
108, 109, 160, 227, 276  
—, Joseph, 233, 234  
—, Mrs. Joseph, 146  
" Ivanhoe," 123  
" Ivy Green," The, 94  
  
JACKSON, Harry, 244  
James, David, 149  
—, Mr., 133  
—, William, 279  
Jaye, H., 168  
Jecks, Miss Clara, 135  
Jeffery, Lord, 186, 208  
Jefferson, Joseph, 139, 204,  
226, 242  
Jerrold, Douglas, 17, 21, 28,  
45, 47, 157  
—, W. B., 17  
" Jim Crow," 80  
" John Jasper's Secret," 300,  
314, 315  
Johnson, J. T., 190  
—, Sam, 277, 283  
—, T. B., 204  
—, Mrs., 80  
—, Mr., 132, 177, 187



# Index

Johnstone, J. B., 109, 170,  
214, 215  
—, Mrs., 239  
—, James, 238  
Jolly, Miss, 211  
Jones, Clingan, 200  
—, E., 149  
—, Miss F., 294  
—, Miss Maria, 308  
—, Mr., 77, 188, 203  
—, T. Arthur, 283  
Jonson, Ben, 16, 18, 20  
Jordan, Mr., 146  
Josephs, Miss Patty, 234  
"Journal of a London Play-  
goer," 39  
Joyce, Walter, 91  
Julian, L., 114

KEAN, Edmund, 78, 248  
Kearns, Sidney, 113, 152  
Keeley, Robert, 128, 176,  
177, 183, 201, 202, 209,  
210  
—, Mrs., 104, 106, 128,  
130, 131, 132, 137, 148,  
176, 178, 183, 202  
—, Miss Louisa, 204  
—, Miss Mary, 202  
Kelly, Miss Frances, 16, 17  
—, Miss Kate, 204, 273  
Kemble, Charles, 3  
—, Henry, 253  
Kenney, James, 21, 22  
Kent, Charles, 54  
Kenworthy, Miss, 21  
Kerr, Orpheus C., 300  
"Keys to the Drood  
Mystery," 312  
"Killarney," 76  
Kimber, Mr., 168  
Kimberley, 242  
King, J., 176

King, Miss, 162  
Kinloch, Mr., 176, 267  
Kirk, F. C., 310  
Kitton, F. G., 7, 18, 32, 42,  
52, 286  
Klein, Von H. Chr. L., 182  
Knebworth, 25  
Knight, Arthur, 92  
—, Charles, 256  
—, Joseph, 294  
Knowles, Sheridan, 107

LACY, Mrs. A. H., 169  
—, Miss, 203  
—, Thomas Hailes, 81, 107,  
168, 174, 175, 277, 278  
Laidlaw, Miss, 215, 273  
Lamb, Charles, 17  
Lambert, Mr., 198  
Lampson, Arthur Locker,  
96  
Landeck, Ben, 242  
Lander, Charles, 118, 120  
—, George, 147  
—, Mrs. General, 120  
Lane, W. E., 251  
Lang, Andrew, 299, 312, 316  
La Porte, Miss, 239  
Larkin, Miss Sophie, 181, 182  
Lavis, Miss T., 149  
Lawler, Mr., 190  
Lawrence, Gerald, 243  
—, Mr., 280  
Laws, Mrs., 259  
Leclercq, Miss Rose, 238  
Lee, Miss Ada, 254  
—, Henry, 168  
—, Miss Jennie, 79, 98,  
145, 188, 235, 246, 247,  
248, 249, 254, 267  
—, John, 78  
—, Miss Kate, 247, 254  
—, Mrs. G., 133, 176

# Index

- Lee, Mrs., 189  
 —, Miss M. A., 132  
 —, Miss, 145, 203  
 Leech, John, 17  
 Leeson, Miss Winifred, 255  
 Le Fanu, G. Brinsley, 7  
 Leigh, Arthur S., 113  
 —, Mrs. H., 89, 200, 206,  
     228  
 —, H., 134, 280  
 —, Percival, 17  
 Lelachere, Mrs., 215  
 Lemaître, Frédérick, 43, 51  
 Lemoine, Gustave, 138  
 Lemon, Mark, 16, 17, 18, 19,  
     20, 21, 28, 29, 30, 35, 47,  
     67, 198, 213, 214  
 —, Mrs. Mark, 25  
 Lennard, Horace, 148  
 Leslie, Charles Robert, 18  
 —, Fred, 136  
 —, Miss Maude, 98  
 —, Mr., 187  
 —, R., 294  
 Lessing, Miss Madge, 242  
 Lestocq, W., 182  
 Letchworth, Mr., 231  
 "Letters of Charles  
     Dickens," 305  
 Levis, Miss Dora, 255  
 Lewis, Leopold, 90  
 —, Miss, 131, 179, 289  
 —, Mrs., 68, 101  
 —, Mr., 191  
 Ley, J. W. T., 94, 219, 220  
 "Life of Charles Dickens,"  
     239, 286, 298  
 Lightfoot, Master, 187  
 Linden, E. C., 152  
 Lingham, R. H., 170  
 Lingley, A., 284  
 Linley, George, 42, 150  
 Lipton, Master Thomas, 207  
 Liske, Miss, 200  
 Lisle, Miss Rose, 295  
 Liston, Victor, 251  
*Literary Gazette*, 99  
 "Little Dorrit," 262-268  
 Lloyd, Bert, 113  
 —, Florence, 195  
 —, H., 107  
*Lloyd's Newspaper*, 45  
 Logan, Miss Katie, 147  
 Lomax, Mrs., 295  
 Long, Mrs., 259  
 Lord Chief Justice of  
     England, 25  
 Lord Mayor's Cripples' Fund,  
     93  
 Lorimer, Miss B., 252  
 Loseby, Miss Constance, 211  
 Lotta, Miss, 148  
 Love, Miss, 239  
 Lyon, Thomas, 145, 203, 277  
 Lyons, Edmund D., 230, 241  
 —, R. C., 251  
 Lytton, Sir Edward Bulwer,  
     20, 25, 26, 28, 83, 120, 276  
 MACARTHEY, D., 78  
 McCarthy, Justin, 33  
 —, Justin Huntley, 275  
 Macaulay, Lord, 31  
 Macdermott, George Hast-  
     ings, 309, 310  
 McDonald, Mr., 145  
 Macdonald, T., 310  
 Macintosh, William, 280  
 MacIntyre, William, 237, 240,  
     240, 241, 293, 295  
 Mackay, Joseph, 148  
 Mackenzie, Sir Alexander,  
     207  
 MacLachan, Mr., 254  
 Maclean, John, 89, 179, 181,  
     205, 211

# Index

- MacMillan, Messrs., 262  
*MacMillan's Magazine*, 45, 106  
 Macnamara, Mr., 136  
 Macready, William Charles, 12, 13, 14, 68, 105, 163, 198  
 Macrone, Mr. and Mrs., 65, 66  
 MacVicars, Frank, 254  
 Maltby, Alfred, 93  
 Manders, Tom, 143, 172, 177  
 —, Mrs., 177, 295  
 Manners, Miss, 172  
 Manning, F., 251  
 Manor, Miss Kate, 90, 236, 288  
 Marchant, F., 218  
 Marion, Miss, 261  
 Marlborough, Miss B., 169, 170  
 Marler, H., 164  
 "Marquis of Brinvilliers," 208  
 Marriott, Miss, 284  
 —, Miss Kathleen, 115, 207  
 Marshalsea Prison, 262  
 Marston, Henry, 191  
 —, Mrs., 204  
 —, Miss, 206  
 —, Dr. Westland, 28  
 "Martin Chuzzlewit," 173-184  
 Martin, Miss, 101, 131  
 Marzials, Sir Frank T., 292  
 Mason, Walter, 91  
 Massey, Miss Helen, 251  
 "Master Humphrey's Clock," 140-201  
 Mathews, Charles, 3, 19, 33, 175  
 Matthews, Frank, 106, 175  
 Matthews, Mrs. Frank, 188, 189, 198  
 Matz, B. W., 50, 243  
 Maurey, Max, 243, 244  
 May, Ackerman, 95  
 Mayhew, Henry, 17, 20  
 Maynard, George, 132, 145, 176, 188  
 —, Miss, 188  
 Maypole, Miss Sophie, 114  
 Mead, Thomas, 239  
 Meadows, Drinkwater, 176, 178, 201, 210  
 Measor, Miss Adela, 98  
 Meeker, H., 70  
 Mellon, Miss Ada, 241  
 Mellor, Miss Rachael, 169  
 Mélosville, M., 212  
 Melton, Mrs. Alfred, 68, 91, 93, 135, 165, 192, 193, 194  
 —, Mr. and Mrs. H., 165  
 Melville, Charles, 79, 161  
 —, Mrs., 80  
 Merivale, Herman C., 279  
 Merridew, T., 148  
 Mewte, Miss, 48  
 Mildmay, Miss Annie, 207  
 Miles, Miss Sophie, 294  
 Miller, Miss Edith, 212  
 —, Miss Emily, 147  
 Mills, Frank, 206  
 —, Miss Kate, 98, 216  
 Milton, Miss Maud, 250  
 "Miscellaneous Papers, Plays, and Poems," 27-50  
 "Misnar, the Sultan of India," 7  
 Mitford, Miss Mary Russell, 31, 80  
 Monckton, Lady, 253  
 Moncrieff, W. T., 74, 78, 81, 83, 87, 88, 89, 120, 126, 164  
 Monkhouse, Harry, 93

# Index

- Montague, Miss Emmeline, 49  
 —, Miss, 255  
 —, H. J., 50, 227  
 —, H. T., 298  
 —, W., 227, 239  
 Monte, H., 219  
 "Monte Cristo," 273  
 Montesole, Max, 98  
 Montreal, 12  
 Moore, Miss Louisa, 179  
 —, Miss Nelly, 108  
 —, Miss, 162  
 —, Gerald, 249  
 —, Miss Hilda, 318  
 —, Reginald, 205, 295  
 —, Thomas, 66  
 —, Wyke, 205  
 Mordaunt, J., 109  
 Moreland, F., 273  
 Morford, Henry, 14  
 Morley, Professor Henry, 39  
*Morning Chronicle*, 2, 4  
 Morrell, Henry, 317  
 —, T., 100  
 Morrison, T., 191, 200  
 Mortimer, J., 250  
 Morton, Mr., 143  
 —, Mrs., 294  
 —, Thomas, 152  
 —, W., 294  
 Mott, Miss, 187  
 Mouncer, Master, 187  
 "Mr. Minns and His Cousin," 2  
 Mudie, George, junior, 195  
 Muir, Miss Emily, 89  
 Munden, Miss May, 242  
 Munyard, Mr., 178, 198  
 Murray, Miss Alma, 98  
 —, Dominick, 50  
 —, Leigh, 209  
 —, Mrs., 200  
 Murray, W. H., 107  
 "Mystery of Edwin Drood," 299, 300, 301, 304, 309, 311, 312, 113  
 NATION, W. H. C., 58, 134, 208, 212, 261, 293, 294  
 Neilson, Miss Naomi, 72  
 Nelson, John, 233, 234, 295  
 —, Mrs., 134  
 Neville, Charles, 211  
 —, Henry G., 50, 68, 135, 267, 307, 308  
 Newbound, E., 146, 310  
 Newham, Mrs., 219, 294  
 —, W., 294  
 "Nice Young Maidens," 80  
 "Nicholas Nickleby," 117-139  
 Nicholls, Harry, 79, 93, 112, 242, 279  
 Nicholson, Clarke, 168  
 Nicol, Miss, 107  
 Norris, Miss, 247  
 Norton, Bruce, 239  
 —, Master, 136  
 Notcutt, Oliver, 112  
 Nott, Miss Cicely, 237  
 Nottage, Lord Mayor, 160  
 —, Mrs., 161  
 "Now Rest, ye Merry Gentlemen," 80  
 O'BRIEN, James, 251  
 —, Miss Kate, 251  
 Occidental Tavern, 248  
 Odell, E. J., 90, 92  
 "Oh, dear, What Can the Matter Be," 80  
 "Old Curiosity Shop," 153, 154, 155  
 "Oliver Twist," 97-116  
 O'Neil, 145

# Index

- O'Neil, Miss, 128, 132  
 Opie, Mrs., 123  
 Orkney, Countess, 228  
 Osbaldistone, F., 176  
 "Othello," 8  
 "Our Miscellany," 257  
 "Our Village," 32  
 Ouvry, Mr., 303  
 Owen, Master, 100  
 Owen, Master, 100  
 —, Reginald, 97  
 Oxberry's "Budget of  
 Plays," 172  
 Oxenford, John, 111
- PAGAN, Miss I. M., 93, 94, 184  
 Paget, Mrs. Vernon, 254  
 Palmer, Miss Ada, 231  
 —, E., 182  
 Park, H., 279  
 Parker, S., 71  
 Parry, C., 288  
 —, J., 59, 60, 63, 177,  
 239, 294, 310  
 Parry, Mrs. J., 172  
 Parselle, Mr., 215, 289, 290  
 Parsloe, C. T., 71  
 Pateman, Robert, 93, 110,  
 135, 148, 149, 253  
 Paul, F., 308  
 Paulton, T. G., 151, 152  
 —, Tom, 113  
 Paxton, Sir Joseph, 30  
 Payne, E. B., 212  
 Payne, T., 215  
 Peake, Richard Brinsley,  
 210, 211  
 Pearce, G., 133  
 Pearce, Mrs., 145  
 Pearson, H., 204  
 —, Mrs. W., 57  
 Pemberton, T. Edgar, 18, 48,  
 49, 82, 88, 189, 235, 280, 281
- "Penny Pickwicks," 75  
 "Pepper's Ghost," 213  
 Pérey, Charles, 139  
 "Peter Parley's Penny  
 Library," 142  
 Petifer, Miss, 80  
 Peveril, C., 236  
*Philadelphia Morning Post*,  
 229  
 Phillips, Alfred, 110  
 —, R., 68  
 —, Watts, 165, 269, 270,  
 271, 272, 273, 274  
 Phipps, J., 149.  
 "Phiz," 140  
 "Pic Nic Papers," 65, 66  
 "Pickwick Abroad," 75  
 "Pickwick Papers," 1, 56,  
 58, 62, 73, 74, 75, 80, 83,  
 91, 103, 152, 197  
 "Pickwick," set to music, 95  
 Pigott, Edward, 48  
 —, W. H., 310  
 Pinero, Lady, 228  
 Pink, Wal, 116  
 Pinkerton, Percy, 208  
 Pitt, Cecil, 133  
 —, Dibdin, 133  
 —, Miss Emily, 295  
 —, W. H., 133, 278  
 Planché, James Robinson,  
 37, 38  
 PLAYS—  
 "Alchemist," The, 22  
 "Alive or Dead," 310  
 "All for Her," 279, 280  
 "Amateurs and Actors,"  
 10  
 "An Angel on Earth," 149  
 "Animal Magnetism," 23  
 "Ark on the Sands," 240  
 "Bardwell v. Pickwick," 88,  
 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 204

# Index

## Plays—continued

- "Barnaby Rudge," 141,  
159, 160, 161, 162, 163,  
164, 165, 166, 167, 171,  
172
- "Bataille de la Vie," La,  
212
- "Battle of Life," 208,  
211, 212
- "Beggar's Bush," 22
- "Bells," The, 90, 109
- "Belles of the Kitchen,"  
135
- "Bleak House," 192, 246,  
249, 250, 252, 254
- "Blue Jackets," The, 102
- "Boarding House," The,  
125, 127
- "Born with a Caul," 238
- "Bouquetierre des Inno-  
cents," 279
- "Brass," 234, 295
- "Bumble," 112
- "Bumble's Courtship,"  
122
- "Captain Cuttle," 228
- "Chevalier de la Maison  
Rouge," 269, 273, 274
- "Chimes," The, 197, 198
- "Christmas Carol," A, 5,  
15, 95, 185, 186, 187,  
189, 190, 191, 196, 197,  
198, 199, 200
- "Christmas Chimes," 200
- "Christmas Story," A, 72
- "Clari, the Maid of Milan,"  
8, 9, 10
- "Comfortable Lodgings,"  
20
- "Country Girl," The, 172
- "Cricket on the Hearth,"  
The, 200, 201, 202, 203,  
206, 207, 208

## Plays—continued

- "Dan'l Peggotty," 243
- "David Copperfield," 33,  
54, 81, 157, 232, 237,  
239, 243, 244, 245
- "Dead Heart," The, 269,  
270, 271, 272, 273, 274,  
276
- "Dead Witness," The, 214
- "Deaf as a Post," 13
- "Deal Boatman," 237,  
239
- "Delicate Intentions," 59
- "Dick Swiveller," 150, 151
- "Dolly Varden," 168, 169,  
171, 172
- "Dombey and Son," 221,  
222, 224, 225, 228, 231
- "Dot," 203, 204, 205, 206
- "Do-the-Boys Hall," 134
- "Dustman's Treasure,"  
294
- "Edwin Drood," 230, 299,  
300, 301, 307, 308, 309,  
310, 312, 313
- "Elder Brother," The, 18
- "Em'ly," 242
- "Em'ly; or, The Ark on  
the Sands," 242
- "Eugene Aram," 123
- "Every Man in His  
Humour," 15, 17, 18,  
20, 21
- "Fagin," 115
- "Fortunes of Smike," 131
- "Fortunio," 35, 37, 38
- "Found Drowned," 294
- "Freedom," 234
- "French Refuge," The, 62
- "Frozen Deep," The, 35,  
36, 38, 45, 46, 47, 48,  
50, 51, 52, 53, 269, 282
- "Gabriel Grub," 91

# Index

## Plays—*continued*

- "Genevieve; or, the  
Reign of Terror," 275
- "Gentleman in the Next  
House," 95
- "Gipsy Farmer," 214
- "Golden Dustman," 293
- "Gradgrind's System,"  
261
- "Grandfather's Little  
Nell," 151
- "Great City," 291
- "Great Expectations,"  
286, 287, 288, 289, 291
- "Hard Times," 256, 257  
258, 260
- "Haunted Man," The,  
213, 214
- "Heart's Delight," 227,  
230
- "Holly Tree," The, 214
- "Holly Tree Inn," 214,  
215, 216
- "House of Dombey," The,  
230
- "How we Live in Lon-  
don," 214
- "Hunchback," The, 3
- "Hunted Down," 291
- "Identity; or, No Tho-  
roughfare," 69, 70
- "Infant Phenomenon,"  
The, 130
- "Is She His Wife?" 62
- "Jack Sheppard," 112,  
179
- "Jack the Giant Killer,"  
246
- "Jim the Penman," 253
- "Jingle," 90
- "Jo," 247, 248, 249, 250,  
253
- "Jo, the Waif," 252

## Plays—*continued*

- "Jo v. Jo," 249
- "Joe, the Waif," 250
- "Klein Dorrit," 268
- "Kristnaska Sonorado,"  
95
- "L'Abime," 69
- "Lady Dedlock's Secret,"  
252
- "Lamplighter," The, 64,  
65, 66
- "Lancashire Lass," A, 109
- "Lighthouse," The, 38,  
39, 40, 42, 43, 44, 53
- "Little Dorrit," 91, 262,  
265, 268
- "Little Em'ly," 169, 233,  
234, 235, 236, 240, 241
- "Little Em'ly's Trials,"  
240
- "Little Nell," 42, 147
- "Little Nelly," 147, 169
- "Little Paul," 230
- "Little Silverhair," 215
- "Lost Em'ly," 240
- "Lottery Ticket," 62
- "Love, Law and Physick,"  
11, 21, 22
- "Marchioness," The, 149
- "Martin Chuzzlewit," 13,  
173, 174, 175, 177, 178,  
180, 182, 183, 184
- "Married Bachelors," 10
- "Master Humphrey's  
Clock," 140, 142, 143,  
201
- "Meg's Diversion," 203
- "Merry Wives of Wind-  
sor," 22
- "Message from the Sea,"  
171, 216
- "Micawber," 217, 218,  
219, 243

# Index

## Plays—*continued*

- "Mighty Dollar," 228
- "Miss Gwilt," 248
- "Money," 22
- "Move on," 250, 251
- "Mr. Gradgrind's System," 261
- "Mr. Nightingale's Diary," 27, 33, 34, 67
- "Mrs. Gamp's Party," 182
- "Mrs. Gamp's Tea and Turn Out," 178
- "Mrs. Harris," 182
- "Mrs. Jarley's Far-famed Waxworks," 147
- "My Unknown Friend," 288
- "Mystery of Edwin Drood," The, 230, 299, 300, 301, 307, 308, 309, 310, 312, 313
- "Nancy Sikes," 109, 110
- "Nell; or, The Old Curiosity Shop," 146
- "Nicholas Nickleby," 9, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 74, 95, 101, 118, 120, 121, 128, 129, 131, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140, 260, 265
- "Nicolas Nickleby," 138
- "Notso Bad as We Seem," 26
- "Old Curiosity Shop," The, 91, 140, 141, 142, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 157, 164, 169, 196
- "Old Toll House," 171
- "Oliver Twist," 97, 98, 99, 101, 103, 104, 105, 106, 108, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, 279

## Plays—*continued*

- "Oliver Twisted," 116
- "Only Way," The, 269, 277, 283, 284
- "Our Boys," 149
- "Our Mutual Friend," 292, 293, 295, 296
- "O'Thello," The, 8
- "Ourselves," 181
- "Passing of Paul Dombey," 231
- "Patrician's Daughter," 13, 14, 15
- "Paul Pry," 20
- "Pecksniff's Pupil," 184
- "Pickwick," 10, 78, 90, 96, 120
- "Pickwick Club," 78, 81
- "Pickwickians; or, the Peregrinations of Sam Weller," 81, 83, 88
- "Pickwick," set to music, 95
- "Pip's Patron," 291
- "Poor Jo," 249
- "Poor Nell," 151
- "Poor Stroller," The, 270
- "Rent Day," The, 22
- "Rip Van Winkle," 204, 242
- "Roland for an Oliver," A, 11
- "Sam Weller," 124
- "Sam Weller; or, the Pickwickians," 78
- "Sarah Gamp's Tea and Turn Out," 178
- "Sarah's Young Man," 135
- "School for Scheming," The, 205
- "Serjeant Buzfuz," 90
- "Seven Poor Travellers," 213, 214



# Index

## Plays—*continued*

- "1790; or, A Tale of Two Cities," 281
- "Strange Gentleman," The, 10, 56, 57, 58, 59, 63, 67
- "Sydney Carton," 284
- "Tale of Two Cities," A, 25, 159, 211, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284
- "Tartuffe Junior," 182
- "Three Fingered Jack," 107
- "Tom and Jerry," 81, 82
- "Tom Thumb," 35, 59
- "Tom Pinch," 180, 182
- "Town and Todgers," 184
- "Trotty Veck," 198
- "True Story Told in Two Cities," 281
- "Turning the Tables," 21
- "Two O'clock in the Morning," 11, 18
- "Two Puddifoots," 163
- "Two Roses," 90
- "Ulysses," 163
- "Uncle Dick's Darling," 287
- "Under the Sea," 260
- "Used up," 33
- "Village Coquettes," 58, 59, 60, 64
- "Virginus," 146
- "Weller Family," The, 93
- "What Women Will Do," 244
- "Widow's Story," The, 214
- "Yankee Notes for English Circulation," 184
- Plunkett, Miss, 168
- Pocock, Isaac, 87
- Pollock, Lady, 42
- , Walter Herries, 9, 42
- Pollock's "Juvenile Drama," 115, 116
- Polytechnic, 213
- Poole, John, 20
- Portsmouth, Duchess of, 154
- Potter, Basil, 215, 238
- Pouran, M., 215
- Powell, Frederick, 284
- , Master, 215
- , Miss Jessie, 288
- Power, Mr., 107
- , Miss Rosine, 295
- Poynter, Mrs., 146, 235, 294
- Price, E., 247
- , Miss Nancy, 242
- "Prins," Le, 245
- Pritchard, Mr., 68
- Private theatres, 5
- theatricals, 8
- Proctor, Professor, R.A., 315, 316
- Prosper, Mlle., 139
- Punch*, 17, 180, 181, 238
- Purdon, Richard, 136
- "Puzzle of Dickens's Last Plot," 312
- Pyne, Miss E., 170
- QUARTERMAINE, Charles, 317
- Queen, A., 70
- Queen Victoria, 22, 27, 30, 31, 45, 47, 53, 88
- RACHEL, Miss, 318
- Racine, Mlle., 139
- Radcliffe, Delmé, 25
- Rae, J. B., 247

## Index

- Rainsforth, Miss, 59, 60  
 Ranoë, 183  
 Raphael, John N., 96, 244  
 Rayburn, Miss Florence, 249  
 Raymond, Alfred, 239, 278  
   —, Mrs. R. M., 168  
   —, Oliver, 226  
 Rayne, Cecil, 144  
 Rayner, Alfred, 200  
   —, Miss Alice, 310  
   —, Miss L., 310  
 "Recollections and Experiences," 210  
 "Recollections of Contemporaries," 13  
 "Recollections of Writers," 23  
 Rede, William Leman, 76  
   —, Mrs. W. Leman, 131  
 Redford, Mr., 107  
 Reed, Miss A., 279  
   —, German, 45  
   —, S. 169  
 Reeve, Charles, 200, 310  
   —, H. C. M., 207  
   —, John, 76, 78  
 Reeves, Jerrold, 224  
*Referee*, The, 307, 308  
 Regnier, M., 282  
 Reid, S., 170  
 Reinhardt, Miss Mattie, 235, 295  
 Rennell, Charles, 151, 240, 242  
 Restall, Master, 207  
 Retty, Fraulein, 268  
 Reynolds, G. W. M., 75  
   —, Joseph, 177, 294, 309, 310  
   —, J., 177, 218  
 Rhoys, Herbert, 250  
 Rice, Charles, 147  
 Richards, Miss Cicely, 181, 182, 318  
 Richardson, A., 17  
   —, Miss A., 260  
   —, Mr., 168, 227  
   —, T. W., 260  
 Rignold, Miss Jane, 147  
 Righton, Edward, 92, 134, 287, 288  
 Rihll, Louis, 207  
 Riviere, Henry, 285  
 Rivers, H. J., 279  
   —, Miss Kate, 236  
   —, Miss, 78  
 Roberts, Arthur, 92  
   —, David, 29  
   —, George, 114  
   —, J., 79, 183, 223, 234  
 Robertshaw, Jerrold, 206  
 Robertson, Miss Agnes, 204  
   —, Miss Fanny, 234, 247, 256  
   —, J. W., 170  
   —, T. W., 174  
 Robins, W. R., 165  
 Robson, Frederick, 44, 51, 162  
   —, Mat, 163  
 Roby, Soane B., 284  
 Rochester, Miss Betty, 114  
 Roe, Bassett, 112  
 Rogers, Miss, 165, 177  
   —, Samuel, 142  
 Rogerson, Mr., 234, 238  
   —, T. W., 147  
   —, Whit, 147  
 Romer, Robert, 25, 68, 131, 215, 258, 273  
 Rorke, Miss Kate, 230, 241, 280  
 Rose, Edward, 111  
 Roselle, Miss Julia, 241  
 Rosier, J. A., 241  
 Ross, Charley, 93  
   —, J. D., 243  
   —, Mr., 100

# Index

- Rouse ("Bravo") Thomas, 163  
 Rowe, George Fawcett, 234, 235, 236, 295  
 Royce, E. W., 235  
 Royer, Mr., 177  
 Royston, Arthur, 231  
 —, J., 90  
 Russell, Henry, 94  
 —, Howard, 148, 253, 254  
 —, Lord John, 19  
 Ryan, Belville, 70  
 —, Redmond, 178  
 —, Miss Winnie, 152  
 Ryder, John, 107, 108
- SABINE, Miss Ellen, 48  
 Saint, Ernest M., 139  
 St. Clair, Miss Jessie, 147  
 St. Maur, Harry, 146, 234  
 "St. Patrick's Day," 76  
 Sala, George Augustus, 58  
 —, Madame, 57, 58, 62  
 Salter, Mr., 16  
 Samuels, Mr., 70  
 Sanders, Mr., 76, 176, 188, 198  
 Sanger, Lord George, 147  
 Santon, Miss, 134  
 Sarjient, Miss E., 243  
 Saunders, Miss Charlotte, 107  
 —, Miss, 107  
 Saville, A., 133  
 —, E. F., 100  
 —, Miss Eliza, 205  
 —, J. F., 132, 145  
 —, Miss Kate, 277, 278  
 —, Mrs. E. F., 278  
 Scarbrow, Mr., 133  
 Schoenthan, Franz, 268  
 Schouwburg, Heer, 245  
 Scott, Clement, 166, 238, 249
- Scott, Master, 188  
 —, Shafto, 291  
 —, Sir Walter, 123  
 Seaman, Mr., 176  
 Searle, Cyril, 109, 110  
 —, Miss Minnie, 152  
 —, W., 162, 183  
 Sedger, John, 152  
 Sefton, Mrs., 289  
 Selby, Charles, 161, 162  
 —, H., 310  
 —, Mrs., 162  
 Selwynne, C., 243  
 Seymour, Mrs., 99  
 Shakespeare, 20, 86, 96  
 Sharpe, W. H., 295  
 —, Miss, 131  
 Shaw, George Bernard, 264  
 —, Miss, 128  
 —, Mr., 187  
 Shelton, George, 97, 295  
 Shepherd, E., 165  
 —, Richard, 109  
 Shine, J. L., 228  
 Shore, J. G., 135, 165, 215  
 —, Mrs. Teignmouth, 230  
 —, W. Teignmouth, 207  
 Sidney, Master, 68  
 —, Miss Minnie, 90  
 —, Miss Nellie, 207  
 —, Miss, 145  
 —, S., 218  
 —, W., 151  
 —, Mr., 57, 251  
 Siever, Miss M., 231  
 Simons, Harry, 136, 179  
 —, Miss H., 204  
 Simpson, Miss I., 239  
 —, J. Palgrave, 252, 253, 279  
 —, J. W., 238  
 —, Mr., 100  
 Skerrett, 107

# Index

- "Sketches by Boz," 66, 68,  
     91, 103  
 "Sketches and Travels in  
     London," 232  
 Sleath, Herbert, 283  
 Smith, Albert, 74, 182, 201,  
     208  
     —, C. F., 68  
     —, C. J., 135, 179, 198, 273  
     —, E. T., 145  
     —, H. Reeves, 216, 280, 241  
     —, Miss Julia, 57  
     —, Miss, 57, 59, 60  
     —, O., 76, 77, 106, 107,  
         128, 130, 131, 165, 187,  
         188, 189, 198, 202, 213  
     —, S., 162, 187  
     —, W., 100  
 Smithson, 218  
 Soane, George, 95  
 Solomon, Edward, 92, 208  
 Somers, Mr., 215  
 Somerset, C. W., 253  
 "Song of the Wreck," 43  
 Sotheby's, 52  
 Soutar, Robert, 89, 91, 179,  
     200  
 Southgate, S. Yates, 99  
 Spinney, Frank, 92  
 Spree, Heer, 245  
     —, Heer Marius, 245  
 Squire, Tom, 92  
 Stacey, W., 168  
 Staff, Frank, 115  
 Stanfield, Clarkson, 29, 51,  
     40, 44  
 Stanley, Miss Alma, 254  
 Stanmore, Frank, 97, 98,  
     317  
 Stannard, Miss B., 241  
 Staunton, Mr., 176  
 Steele, Miss, 247  
 Steinberg, Miss Amy, 240  
 Stephens, Mrs., 134  
     —, Walter, 30, 307  
     —, W. H., 108, 260  
 Stephenson, Frank, 251  
     —, C. H., 110, 204  
     —, Mrs. C. H., 241, 249  
 Sterling, W. H., 76, 168  
 Sterne, Laurence, 82  
 Stevens, C. E., 147  
     —, Miss Marie Lorraine,  
         115  
     —, Mr., 215  
 Stewart, D., 218  
 Steyne, Charles, 247  
 Stillwell, J., 253  
 Stilt, Mr., 190, 191, 235  
 Stimson, Fred J., 148  
 Stirling, Edward, 97, 128,  
     129, 132, 137, 145, 164,  
     174, 175, 182, 184, 186,  
     187, 189, 190, 202, 211  
     —, Mrs., 99  
 Stoel, Heer, 245  
 Stoker, Mrs., 68  
     —, Miss, 177  
 Stone, Frank, 17, 20, 28, 39  
 Stone, Marcus, 53, 286  
 Storey, Fred, 242  
 "Story of the Goblins who  
     stole a Sexton," 19, 91  
 Stoye, J. D., 89, 205, 206  
 Strange, W., 76  
 Strickland, Miss Agnes, 66  
     —, R., 59  
 Stuart, Charles, 254  
     —, Miss Edith, 135, 260  
     —, Mrs., 273  
 Summers, Miss Julia, 310  
 Surrey, H. V., 113  
     —, Mr., 152  
 Sutherland, Miss, 146  
     —, W. R., 72, 254  
 Sylvia, Mlle., 139

# Index

Syms, Algernon, 279  
 Swan, Charles, 240  
 Swinbourne, Thomas, 293

"TALES of the Genii," 7  
 Talfourd, Thomas Noon, 66  
 Tapping, A. B., 231, 243  
 Taverner, H. T. (*see also*  
*under* Theodore Taylor,  
 and Introduction), 9, 10  
 Tavistock House, 35, 37, 38,  
 45, 51, 161  
 Taylor, J. G., 135, 179, 200,  
 212, 241, 277, 283  
 —, Miss M., 178  
 —, Theodore (*see* H. T.  
 Taverner and Introduc-  
 tion), 9, 10, 58, 140, 218,  
 239, 262, 293  
 —, Tom, 277, 283, 284  
 —, T. P., 223, 224  
 Teesdale, H. R., 136  
 Telbin, W., 29, 51  
 Tempest, H. T., 168  
 Tenniel, Sir John, 28  
 Ternan, Miss Ellen, 48  
 —, Miss Maria, 48  
 —, Mrs., 48  
 Terriss, William, 134  
 Terry, Daniel, 87  
 —, Edward, 92, 93, 109,  
 196, 206, 212, 216, 235  
 —, Miss Ellen, 146  
 —, Miss Florence, 146  
 —, Miss Marion, 280  
 Tesseyman, Charles, and  
 Brother, 156, 157, 158  
 Thackeray, William Make-  
 peace, 36, 38, 139, 156,  
 185, 198, 231  
*Theatre Magazine*, 110, 181,  
 311  
*Theatrical Times*, 21, 222

## THEATRES—

Adelphi Theatre, 68, 76,  
 91, 100, 101, 104, 128,  
 131, 145, 164, 179, 184,  
 192, 198, 203, 204, 211,  
 213, 214, 242, 272, 284  
 Adelphi Theatre, Liver-  
 pool, 212  
 Alexandra Opera House,  
 Sheffield, 251  
 Alexandra Theatre, Cam-  
 den Town, 109  
 Alexandra Theatre, Liver-  
 pool, 234  
 AmbigueComiqueTheatre,  
 Paris, 138, 139  
 American Theatre, San  
 Francisco, 166  
 Amphitheatre, Leeds, 295  
 Amphitheatre, Liverpool,  
 138  
 Amsterdam Theatre, 245  
 Apollo Theatre, 284  
 Aquarium Theatre, West-  
 minster, 147, 169  
 Astley's Theatre, 134, 147,  
 169, 190, 212, 219, 260,  
 293, 294  
 Avenue Theatre, 92, 171  
 Bath Saloon Theatre,  
 Sheffield, 281  
 Bower Saloon, 202  
 Bijou, Bayswater, 212  
 Birmingham Town Hall,  
 196  
 Brighton Aquarium, 171  
 Britannia, Theatre, 218,  
 293, 294, 309  
 Brixton Theatre, 208  
 Broadway Theatre, New  
 Cross, 115  
 Burton's Theatre, New  
 York, 225, 226

# Index

## Theatres—*continued*

Camberwell Palace, 284  
 Charing Cross Theatre, 58  
 City of London Theatre, 78, 99, 117, 133, 202, 203, 211  
 Coburg Theatre, 117  
 Comedy Theatre, 92  
 Coronet Theatre, 284  
 County Theatre, Kingston-on-Thames, 243  
 Court Theatre, 134, 288  
 Covent Garden Theatre, 3, 64, 100, 117, 147  
 Crown Theatre, 153  
 Crystal Palace, 91  
 Drury Lane Theatre, 13, 35, 93, 100, 117, 127, 145, 234, 237, 253, 291, 295  
 East Opera House, 166  
 Elephant and Castle, 114  
 Empire Theatre, 284  
 Empress Theatre, Brixton, 114  
 English Opera House, 162, 163  
 Free Trade Hall, Manchester, 48  
 Gaiety Theatre, 88, 89, 90, 91, 136, 198, 205, 211, 287  
 Gallery of Illustration, 45, 47  
 Globe Theatre, 89  
 Grand Guignol, Paris, 243  
 Grand Theatre, Islington, 113, 149, 152, 255  
 Grecian Theatre, 240, 279  
 Haymarket Theatre, 20, 21, 30, 50, 117, 203, 215, 234, 253, 295

## Theatres—*continued*

Her Majesty's Theatre, 215  
 His Majesty's Theatre, 97, 150, 300, 311, 317  
 Imperial Hofburg Theatre, Vienna, 268  
 Imperial Theatre, Westminster, 236  
 Kelly's (Miss) Theatre, (Royalty), 21  
 King's Theatre, Hammer-smith, 171, 243  
 King's Theatre, Waltham-stow, 114  
 Lyceum Theatre, 50, 89, 127, 162, 174, 175, 177, 182, 201, 203, 208, 209, 271, 275  
 Lyceum Theatre, New York, 237  
 Lyceum Theatre, Rochester, 230  
 Lyric Theatre, 250  
 Marylebone Theatre, 110, 117, 133, 171, 225  
 Metropolitan Music Hall, 284  
 Mirror Theatre, Holborn, 279, 308  
 New Boston Theatre, America, 166  
 New Theatre, Cambridge, 95  
 Novelty Theatre (Kingsway), 113  
 Odeon Theatre, Paris, 243, 244  
 Oliver Theatre, Lincoln, Winnipeg, 244, 245  
 Olympic Theatre, 50, 100, 110, 112, 117, 118, 146, 163, 172, 178, 203, 236, 285

# Index

## Theatres—*continued*

Opera Comique Theatre,  
148, 167, 252, 295  
Opera House, Aberdeen,  
252  
Opera House, Leicester,  
281  
Park Theatre, Camden  
Town, 147, 169, 240,  
250, 310  
Pavilion Theatre, 99, 102,  
115, 200  
Pier Pavilion Theatre, St.  
Leonards, 149  
Polytechnic, 213  
Prince of Wales's Theatre,  
174  
Prince of Wales's Theatre,  
Birmingham, 219  
Prince of Wales's Theatre,  
Liverpool, 247  
Prince of Wales's Theatre,  
Wolverhampton, 151  
Princess's Theatre, 165,  
166, 167, 203, 311  
Punch's Playhouse, 183  
Queen Victoria's Own  
Theatre, 117  
Queen's Theatre (Long  
Acre), 108, 109  
Queen's Theatre, Man-  
chester, 242  
Queen's Theatre, Mon-  
treal, 9, 11  
Queen's Theatre (Totten-  
ham Street), 172, 174,  
175, 177, 203  
Royal Pantheon, 7  
Royalty Theatre, 16, 17  
Sadler's Wells Theatre,  
104, 117, 191, 204, 221,  
223, 240, 293  
St. James's Theatre, 10,

## Theatres—*continued*

18, 56, 58, 62, 63, 66,  
99, 116, 162, 163, 182,  
216  
St. George's Hall, 45  
Savoy Theatre, 89  
Scala Theatre, 174  
Standard Theatre, 203,  
239, 240  
Strand Theatre, 4, 74, 97,  
120, 135, 164, 168, 183,  
203, 214, 215, 223, 238,  
246, 249, 262, 265, 268  
Surrey Theatre, 99, 100,  
102, 105, 117, 131, 133,  
146, 168, 169, 190, 203,  
219, 221, 239, 246, 249,  
295, 307, 308  
Terry's Theatre, 208, 216,  
248  
Theatre Française, Paris,  
282  
Theatre Historique, Paris,  
275  
Theatre Royal—  
Belfast, 81  
Blackburn, 214  
Bradford, 151, 169, 230  
Brighton, 136, 151, 240  
Bristol, 151  
Cardiff, 300  
Cork, 81  
Edinburgh, 107  
Greenwich, 249  
Hull, 133  
Manchester, 166  
Margate, 255  
Norwich, 81, 151  
Nottingham, 204  
Oxford, 179  
Richmond, 120  
St. Helens, 149  
Sheffield, 214

# Index

## Theatres—*continued*

Southampton, 280  
 Windsor, 252  
 Worthing, 137  
 York, 147  
 Toole's Theatre, 58  
 Vaudeville Theatre, 180,  
 181, 195, 196  
 Vaudeville Theatre, Paris,  
 212  
 Victoria Theatre, 117, 133,  
 142, 174, 175, 176, 203,  
 278, 285  
 Waldorf Theatre, 97  
 Walworth Institute, 109  
 Weimar Theatre, 31  
 Winter Garden Theatre,  
 New York, 104  
 "There's nae Luck about  
 the House," 62, 80  
 Thiemig, Herr, 268  
 Thomas, Miss Agnes, 242  
 —, Allen, 242  
 —, E. W., 93  
 —, F., 249  
 Thompson, Miss Lydia,  
 215  
 —, Miss, 162, 215  
 —, Mr., 184  
 Thomson, Miss Sybil, 114  
 —, Miss A., 166  
 Thorne, Miss Eliza, 258  
 —, Tom, 180, 181  
*Times*, The, 102, 108, 269,  
 301  
 Tilbury, Mr., 168  
 Titheradge, Miss Madge,  
 207  
 Toole, John Lawrence, 21,  
 89, 91, 108, 109, 112, 190,  
 191, 192, 200, 204, 205,  
 206, 207, 211, 213, 219,  
 220, 273, 279, 287

*T.P.'s Weekly*, 305  
 Topham, Mr., 28  
 "Toujours Gai," 80  
 Townshend, Chauncey Hare,  
 286  
 —, W. T., 202  
 "Tramp, Tramp," 80  
 Traylett, Mrs., 168  
 Tree, Sir Herbert Beerbohm,  
 97, 98, 99, 111, 253, 299,  
 308, 312, 316, 317, 318  
 Trent, Gilbert, 280  
 Trevelyan, Miss Hilda, 98  
 Trollope, George, 97  
 Turner, Godfrey, 4, 5  
 —, H. J., 239  
 —, Miss, 202  
 —, J., 176  
 —, Mrs., 202  
 Turnour, Miss, 162  
 Turtle, Miss, 198  
 Tyars, Frank, 283  
 Tyrrell, Mr., 224

"UNDER the Earth," 260  
 "Used up," 34  
 Usher, Mrs., 176

VALE, 190  
 Valli-Valli, Miss, 216  
 Vanburgh, Miss Violet, 206  
 Vance, G., 112  
 Vase, Gillan, 310  
 Vaughan, H., 89, 179, 205,  
 234, 237  
 Vayne, Garnet, 113, 114,  
 152  
 —, Miss Fay Garnett,  
 114  
 —, Gwennie Garnett, 113,  
 154  
 —, Miss Isla Garnett,  
 113



# Index

Venne, Miss Lottie, 92  
 Verner, Miss Mabel, 279  
 Vernon, Miss Eva, 114  
 —, Frank, 283  
 —, Miss, 247  
 —, Mrs., 227  
 Vezin, Herman, 135  
 Vicary, Miss Ellen, 243  
 Victor, Miss M. A., 93  
 Victoria, Queen, 22, 27, 30,  
 31, 45, 47, 53, 88  
 Villiers, Frederick, 165,  
 277  
 "Villikins and his Dinah,"  
 36  
 Vincent, E., 279  
 —, G., 179  
 —, W., 310  
 —, Miss E., 133, 176  
 Vining, F., 175, 210  
 —, G., 201  
 —, H., 165, 166  
 —, J., 176, 277, 278  
 —, Mrs. G., 48  
 —, Mrs. H., 166  
 Vivash, Miss Aimee, 152  
 —, Miss Amy, 114  
 "Vive le Roi," 80  
 "Voice from the Wave," A,  
 230  
 Vokes, Family, 135  
 Vollaie, John, 109  
 Volmer, Herr, 268

WALKER, George, 243  
 —, W. C., 76  
 Wallace, Vincent, 76  
 Walter, J. Cuming, 299,  
 316  
 Walworth Institute, 109  
 Ward, Miss Ada, 249  
 —, Miss Ethel, 243

Warde, George, 308  
 Warden, H., 239  
 Wareham, George, 152  
 Warlow, W., 133  
 Warner, Miss Grace, 284  
 —, Charles, 234, 293,  
 311  
 Warren, T. Gideon, 110,  
 240  
 "Watched by the Dead,"  
 315  
 Watson, Mrs., 308  
 Watt, Basil H., 98  
 Watt's Charity, 213  
 Waugh, Arthur, 115  
 Waye, Mr., 198, 215  
 "We don't want to Fight,"  
 309  
 "We won't go Home till  
 Morning," 80  
 Webb, Charles, 176  
 —, Hugh, 113, 152  
 —, John, 114  
 —, Miss Oliph, 147  
 Webster, Benjamin, 68, 178,  
 184, 192, 203, 214, 242,  
 270, 271, 272, 273, 274,  
 275, 276, 283  
 —, John, 58, 99, 128  
 —, Miss Lizzie, 207, 284  
 Weguelin, Mr., 317  
 Weir, Charles, 113  
 Welch, James, 112, 251  
 Wellington, Duke of, 31  
 — House Academy, 7  
 "We're a' Noddin'," 80  
 Werf, Tine V. d., 245  
 Westcott, Martyn, 95  
 Westland, Marston, 13, 14  
 Westminster Abbey, 54  
 Weston, George, 234  
 "What are the Wild Waves  
 saying?" 229, 230

# Index

- Wheatcroft, Nelson, 219  
 White, J. Fisher, 97  
 Whitman, Mrs., 71  
 "Who was Datchery?"  
     311  
 Whyte, H., 114  
 Widdicomb, Henry, 172,  
     239  
     —, W. H., 168  
 Wieland, George, 145  
 Wigan, Alfred, 99, 175, 176,  
     275  
     —, Horace, 50, 178, 179,  
     280, 286  
     —, Mrs. Alfred, 176  
 Wilkins, John, 172  
 Wilkinson, Mr., 78, 106, 128,  
     131, 132, 145, 165, 198  
 Willard, Edward S., 182  
 Willes, John, 241, 280  
 Williams, Arthur, 92, 112,  
     200, 205, 230, 241, 295  
     —, Bransby, 93, 115, 195,  
     196  
     —, Charles, 133, 177, 224  
     —, H., 170  
     —, Montague, 211  
 Williamson, W. H., 78  
 Willis, Bertie, 112  
 Wills, Freeman, 282  
 Wilmot, Charles, 247, 248,  
     249  
 Wilshire, Miss, 189  
 Wilson, Mr., 131  
 Wilton, Miss Emma, 266  
     —, F., 218, 278  
     —, Mr. and Mrs., 133  
 Winn, E. Lewis, 115  
 Winslow, A., 113  
 "Woman in White," The,  
     314  
 Wood, Arthur, 134, 230, 236,  
     241  
 Wood, Benjamin, 213  
     —, F. Motley, 112  
     —, G. Murray, 146, 147,  
     168, 169, 219, 240, 250  
     —, John, 166  
     —, Mrs. John, 166, 204  
     —, Miss Winifred, 72,  
     152  
 Woolgar, Miss (Mrs. Alfred  
     Mellon), 176, 187, 202, 204,  
     213, 273  
 Woollidge, Mrs., 176, 187,  
     188, 189, 202, 210  
*World, The*, 257  
 Worrell, Mr., 178, 198, 257  
 Woulds, Mrs., 133  
 Wren, G., 70  
 Wrench, W., 78  
 Wright, Edward, 55, 99, 106,  
     131, 145, 165, 178, 187,  
     188, 189, 198, 213  
     —, Miss Fanny, 170, 219  
     —, Miss Victoria, 212  
 Wrighten, Miss, 177  
 Wrightson, Miss, 172  
 Wyatt, Frank, 148  
 Wycherley, William, 172  
 Wyndham, Sir Charles, 91,  
     107  
     —, Miss, 44  
 YARNOLD, George, 110, 176,  
     202, 278, 279, 208  
     —, Mrs. E., 219  
 Yates, Edmund, 104, 107,  
     183, 210, 211, 257, 291  
     —, Frederick, 76, 104,  
     106, 128, 130, 145, 164,  
     165  
     —, Mrs. Frederick, 42, 77,  
     106, 165  
     —, George, 200, 249

## Index

Yates, Miss May, 231	Young, Mr., 100, 131
Young, A., 79	Younge, R., 175
——, Master, 100	Vorke, Leonard, 72, 255
——, Miss Charlotte, 42, 150	
——, Miss, 29, 133	
——, Mrs., 77	"ZANONI," 276

THE END





248

92 D54\$fi

**Carnegie Institute of Technology  
Library  
Pittsburgh, Pa.**

DEMOS

3 8482 00250 4021

UNIVERSAL  
LIBRARY



138 248

UNIVERSAL  
LIBRARY